

A first course in mathematics

Alexandru Buium

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS, UNIVERSITY OF NEW MEX-
ICO, ALBUQUERQUE, NM 87131, USA

E-mail address: `buium@math.unm.edu`

INTRODUCTION

Aim of the course. The students in this course will be asked to “temporarily forget” all the “mathematics” they ever knew. This course will then systematically rebuild Mathematics from scratch with no other prerequisite except language. What will have been achieved through this exercise is a critical reevaluation of the main concepts of Mathematics.

Historical remarks. Mathematics has evolved throughout history as a growing body of statements about figures, numbers, and functions; the problems involving these concepts were studied using methods of Geometry, Algebra, and Calculus, respectively. The concepts as well as the methods above are closely intertwined. In the 20th century Mathematics eventually came to be seen as part of Logic; and Logic, in its turn, came to be seen as a body of statements about language. The historical development of Mathematics and Logic may be roughly summarized as follows.

1. Geometry and Algebra were established fields of inquiry around the 4th century BC in ancient Greece. Due to the earlier discovery (by the Pythagoreans) that integer numbers cannot account for relations among certain geometric quantities (such as the side and the diagonal of the square) Algebra and Geometry were essentially viewed, up until modern times (17th century), as irreducible to each other.

2. Algebra and Geometry were unified (in that Geometry was “reduced” to Algebra) through the work of Descartes and Fermat (17th century) who invented analytic geometry and through subsequent work of Euler, Lagrange (18th century), and Plücker, Möbius, Riemann (19th century).

3. Calculus was invented by Leibniz and Newton in the late 17th century. In the beginning it relied on intuitive (and hence imprecise) concepts.

4. Calculus was reduced to Algebra (which was viewed as relying on more precise concepts) through the work of Cauchy, Weierstrass, etc., (19th century).

5. The concepts of Algebra were reduced to the (naive) concept of set through the work of Cantor, Dedekind, Russell (late 19th and early 20th century). Cantor’s Set Theory was not a theory in the sense of Logic and his concepts were soon discovered to lead to contradictions (as in Russell’s paradox).

6. Logic was first developed by Aristotle (4th century BC). It essentially stayed unchanged for the next two thousand years until the work of Boole (19th century) and especially Frege (19th century) and Russell (early 20th century).

7. The concept of set was reduced to Logic first through the work of Frege, Russell, and Whitehead and eventually by Zermelo and Fraenkel (early 20th century) who put forward a system of axioms (the *ZFC* axioms) for Set Theory which made the latter a theory in the technical sense of Logic; in this theory paradoxes such as Russell’s do not directly arise anymore (although it is possible that similar paradoxes or other types of paradoxes might occur in ways that have not yet been discovered; if this is the case new foundations of Mathematics will need to be

found!). Other systems of axioms (cf. von Neumann, Gödel, etc.) were proposed which we will ignore here.

8. A mirror of Logic itself was constructed within Set Theory (in the early 20th century); this mirror is referred to as Mathematical Logic (not to be confused with Logic). The major theorems in this area belong to Gödel, Turing, Tarski, Cohen, Robinson, Matjasevich, etc.

Plan of the course. In this course the order of exposition of the various topics will sometimes be quite different from the historical order of their development; this is inevitable if one wants to avoid logical circularities. We begin with Logic (as a prerequisite for Mathematics; this prerequisite could be called *pre-mathematical Logic*). This will occupy the first 6 chapters. The rest of the course will be devoted to Mathematics. We will introduce Set Theory as one example of a theory within Logic and we define Mathematics as being identical to Set Theory. We then show how the concepts of Algebra can be defined within Set Theory and how the concepts of Geometry and Calculus can be defined within Algebra. We end by very briefly explaining how the concepts of Mathematical Logic can be defined within Set Theory. In each of these fields (Logic, Set Theory, Algebra, Geometry, Calculus, Mathematical Logic) we will merely scratch the surface of the subject.

Philosophical remarks. Although the above account of Mathematics is generally accepted today there are different ways of interpreting this account from the viewpoint of the philosophy of Mathematics and Logic. Roughly speaking philosophy asks questions about existence (ontology), knowledge (epistemology), and value (axiology). We will ignore, in this course, the epistemological and axiological problems related to Mathematics but we will implicitly make a statement about the ontological status of Mathematics. Ontology distinguishes between particulars (or concrete entities) and universals (or abstract entities). Examples of particulars are the referents of words such as: planet Earth, Caesar, the Holy Grail, etc. Examples of universals are the referents of words such as: whiteness, dog, man, set, relation, circle, number, function, space, time, movement, causality, natural law, justice, the good, the beautiful, etc. One of the most debated problems of ontology is the existence of universals. (The existence of particulars is a different, less debated problem which we shall ignore here.) Very roughly speaking there are three doctrines in the modern philosophy of Mathematics: Platonism, intuitionism, and formalism. They more or less correspond to the three classical viewpoints on universals: realism, conceptualism, and nominalism. Realism holds that universals exist and their existence is independent of the mind. Conceptualism holds that universals exist but their existence is in the mind only. And nominalism declares that universals do not exist in any form. In this course we adopt a nominalist (or formalist) point of view on Logic and Mathematics. It is the minimalist position from the ontological point of view so it requires the least amount of background “faith”: only words and the rules governing their use are being taken for granted. The theorems of formalist Mathematics are the same as the theorems of Platonist Mathematics; what is different in these two approaches is not the mathematical content but the interpretation of this content. The theorems of intuitionist Mathematics, on the other hand, are different from those of formalist or Platonist Mathematics; arguably, this places intuitionism outside today’s mainstream mathematics.

Platonism has been the standard position among working mathematicians of all times and some of the great logicians (e.g., Russell, Gödel) are associated with it. Formalism and intuitionism came late on the scene; they were the result of a critical reevaluation of the foundations of mathematics that took place in the late 19th and early 20th century. Formalism was initiated by Hilbert (who names Kant as a precursor) while intuitionism was initiated by Brouwer (and also invokes the Kantian tradition). There is more than one way to present the formalist view. In particular the presentation in this course differs from the classical viewpoint of Hilbert in a number of key aspects; we will not go into explaining these differences here. We will also say nothing more here about intuitionism. Suffices to note that what mainly distinguishes formalism from both Platonism and intuitionism is the desire to eliminate the “human element” from Mathematics: for the formalist, Mathematics must not invoke “intuitions” (instinctive beliefs, to use a phrase of Russell’s) but instead it should be checkable by a machine. (Even if human brains are considered machines the above distinction is still meaningful because we ask that “checking” be done by “following explicitly stated rules” and hence should not involve “intuitions” which may be based on “unconscious rules”.)

One should note here an important limitation of formalism. To explain it one needs to distinguish between Mathematics (by which we always understand here Mathematics as an already constituted theory in the sense of Logic) and the Mathematical Practice (by which we understand the invention/discovery and application of Mathematics). The formalist concentrates on Mathematics viewed as a theory but is forced to ignore Mathematical Practice because the latter involves intuition in an essential way. (The word “discovery” applied to Mathematics does not necessarily imply Platonism; it can be viewed as standing for “uncovering” statements via Logic guided by intuition.) Accordingly, this course will entirely ignore Mathematical Practice and will concentrate on the exposition Mathematics as a theory.

The modern philosophy of Mathematics (with its Platonist, intuitionist, and formalist variants) originates in the work of Frege and Russell who initiated what is referred to as logicism. The logicist position held that Mathematics is simply Logic supplemented by some extra axioms; in this view Mathematics and Logic are expressed in one and the same language. This position underwent substantial changes in subsequent developments of Logic. In particular the formalist approach of this course will postulate a whole variety of languages and a whole variety of relations between such languages (translations, reference, disquotation, etc.) Logic and Mathematics will be formulated in two different languages: Logic will be formulated in (what we shall call) *Metalinguage* while Mathematics will be formulated in (what we shall call) an *object language*. Mathematical Logic being part of Mathematics will be formulated in the same object language as Mathematics. Hence Logic and Mathematical Logic will be formulated in two different languages and their only possible interaction is through a (somewhat imperfect and arguably problematic) translation. A consequence of this is that the theorems of Mathematical Logic will not be seen as (directly) referring to Mathematics at all.

Other approaches. We will make no attempt to compare our approach here with other approaches to Logic and Mathematics usually encountered in textbooks. Let us just mention, however, that one of the approaches frequently used in the available literature starts with a form of realist conception of set theory and an assumed knowledge of some simple mathematics, including the acceptance of the

integers as a realist entity; then one builds Logic using realist set theory and the integers; finally one builds Mathematics using Logic. This approach involves some degree of ontological inconsistency in that formalism is grounded in realism. There is also a degree of circularity in that some Mathematics is assumed in the construction of Logic and Logic is then assumed in the construction of Mathematics. One of the main aims of this course was to avoid this type of inconsistency and circularity.

Contents

Chapter 1. Languages	9
Chapter 2. Metalanguage	21
Chapter 3. Syntax	27
Chapter 4. Tautologies	31
Chapter 5. Theories	37
Chapter 6. Examples	49
Chapter 7. ZFC	59
Chapter 8. Sets	65
Chapter 9. Maps	73
Chapter 10. Relations	79
Chapter 11. Operations	85
Chapter 12. Integers	91
Chapter 13. Induction	95
Chapter 14. Rationals	101
Chapter 15. Combinatorics	105
Chapter 16. Sequences	113
Chapter 17. Reals	119
Chapter 18. Topology	123
Chapter 19. Imaginaries	127
Chapter 20. Arithmetic	129
Chapter 21. Groups	133
Chapter 22. Vectors	139
Chapter 23. Matrices	141
Chapter 24. Determinants	151

Chapter 25. Polynomials	157
Chapter 26. Congruences	161
Chapter 27. Geometry	165
Chapter 28. Limits	173
Chapter 29. Series	177
Chapter 30. Trigonometry	181
Chapter 31. Calculus	183
Chapter 32. Categories	187
Chapter 33. Models	199
Appendix 1	203
Appendix 2	213
Bibliography	225
Index	227

CHAPTER 1

Languages

In this course Mathematics will be identified with Set Theory. Theories are viewed as “finite” sequences of sentences written on a physical medium (paper, computer) using a “finite” collection of symbols. By addition of new symbols and sentences to a theory one obtains a new theory called an *extension* of the old theory. The formation of sentences and theories is governed by (“general” or “pre-mathematical”) Logic (not to be confused with Mathematical Logic which we view as part of Mathematics).

Logic starts with the logical analysis of natural languages. To explain this we will introduce here two languages: English (which is one of many natural languages such as Chinese, Japanese, French, German, etc.) and Formal (which is one of many possible formalized/artificial languages; Tarski called it the *Standard language*). We shall then examine the interconnections between these two languages. The approach we present here was pioneered by Frege, Russell, Whitehead, Tarski, etc. There are significant differences among their theories; and our presentation is not identical to any of their theories. Rather, our presentation is a simplified (or minimalistic) version of the core of their theories.

EXAMPLE 1.1. Let us start with a discussion of English.

The English language is the collection L_{Eng} of all English words (plus separators such as parentheses, commas, etc.). We treat words as individual symbols (and ignore the fact that they are made out of letters). Sometimes we admit as symbols certain groups of words. One can use words to create strings of words such as

0) “*for all not Socrates man if*”

The above string is considered “syntactically incorrect.” The sentences in the English language are the strings of symbols that are “syntactically correct” (in a sense to be made precise later). Here are some examples of sentences in this language:

- 1) “*Socrates is a man*”
- 2) “*Caesar killed Brutus*”
- 3) “*The killer of Caesar is Brutus*”
- 4) “*Brutus killed Caesar and Socrates is a man*”
- 5) “*Brutus is not a man or Caesar is a killer*”
- 6) “*If Brutus killed Caesar then Brutus is a killer*”
- 7) “*Brutus did not kill Caesar*”
- 8) “*A man killed Caesar*”
- 9) “*If a man killed another man then the first man is a killer*”
- 10) “*A man is a killer if and only if that man killed another man*”

In order to separate sentences from a surrounding text we put them between quotation marks (and sometimes we write them in italics). So quotation marks do not belong to the language but rather they lie outside the language; they belong to *Metalanguage*, as we shall explain. Checking syntax presupposes a partitioning of L_{Eng} into various categories of words; no word should appear in principle in two different categories, but this requirement is often violated in practice (which may lead to different readings of the same text). Here are the categories:

- variables: “*something, someone, a thing, an entity, x, y, z, ...*”
- constants: “*Socrates, Brutus, Caesar, ...*”
- functions: “*the killer of, ...*”
- predicates: “*is a man, is a killer, killed, ...*”
- connectives: “*and, or, not, if...then, if and only if*”
- quantifiers: “*for all, there exists*”
- equality: “*is, equals*”
- separators: parentheses “(,)” and comma “,”

The above categories are referred to as *logical categories*. (They are quite different from, although related to, the *grammatical categories* of *nouns, verbs*, etc.)

Constants and variables stand for singular terms (objects, concrete entities). Constants are names of specific objects (proper nouns or phrases that stand for proper nouns) while variables are names for non-specific (generic) objects. The article “the” generally indicates a constant; the article “a” generally indicates that a quantifier is implicitly assumed.

Predicates say/affirm something about one or several objects; if they say/affirm something about one, two, three objects, etc., they are unary, binary, ternary, etc. (So roughly unary predicates correspond to intransitive verbs; binary predicates correspond to transitive verbs.) “Killed” is a binary predicate; “is a killer” is a unary predicate. Predicates are sometimes called *relations* or *relational symbols*.

Functions have objects as arguments but do not say/affirm anything about them; all they do is refer to (or name, or specify, or point towards) something that could itself be an object. Functions will sometimes be called *functional symbols*. Again they can be unary, binary, ternary, etc., depending on the number of arguments. “The father of” is a unary functional symbol. “The son of ... and ...” is a binary functional symbol (where the two arguments stand for the mother and the father and we assume for simplicity that any two parents have a unique son.)

Connectives connect/combine sentences into longer sentences; they can be unary (if they are added to one sentence changing it into another sentence, binary if they combine two sentences into one longer sentence, ternary, etc.). The connective “and” is called *conjunction*. The connective “or” is called *alternation*. The connective “not” is called *negation*. The connective “if...then...” is called *implication* or *conditional*. The connective “if and only if” is called *equivalence* or *biconditional*. One can consider yet another connective called *disjunction* which is “either ... or...”; the relation between alternation and disjunction is that “A or B” is the same as “either A or B or both”; and similarly “either A or B” is the same as “A or B but not both.”

Quantifiers specify quantity and are always followed by variables.

Separators separate various parts of the text from various other parts.

In order to analyze a sentence using the logical categories above one first looks for the connectives and one splits the sentence into simpler sentences; alternatively

sentences may start with quantifiers followed by variables followed by simpler sentences. In any case, once one identifies simpler sentences, one proceeds by identifying, in each of them, the constants, variables, and functions applied to them (these are the objects that one is talking about), and finally one identifies the functions (which say something about the objects). The above type of analysis (called *logical analysis*) is quite different from the *grammatical analysis* based on the grammatical categories of *nouns*, *verbs*, etc.

EXAMPLE 1.2. A concise way of understanding the logical analysis of English sentences as above is to create another language L_{For} (let us call it *Formal*) consisting of the following symbols:

- variables: “ x, y, \dots ”
- constants: “ S, B, C, \dots ”
- functions: “ \downarrow, \dots ”
- predicates: “ m, k, \dagger ”
- connectives: “ $\wedge, \vee, \neg, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow$ ”
- quantifiers: “ \forall, \exists ”
- equality: “ $=$ ”
- separators: parentheses “ $(,)$ ” and comma “ $,$ ”

Furthermore let us introduce a rule (called *symbol translation*, given by a dictionary) that attaches to each symbol in Formal a symbol (or possibly several symbols) in English as follows:

- “ x, y, z, \dots ” are translated as “*something, a thing, an entity, \dots*” (or simply by “ x, y, z, \dots ”)
- “ S, B, C ” are translated as “*Socrates, Brutus, Caesar*”
- “ \downarrow, \dots ” are translated as “*the killer of, \dots*”
- “ m, k, \dagger ” are translated as “*is a man, is a killer, killed*”
- “ $\wedge, \vee, \neg, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow$ ” are translated as “*and, or, not, if..then, if and only if*”
- “ \forall, \exists ” are translated as “*for all, there exists*”
- “ $=$ ” is translated as “*is*” or “*is a equal to*”

Consider the following sentences in Formal:

- 1') “ mS ”
- 2') “ $C \dagger B$ ”
- 3') “ $\downarrow (C) = B$ ”
- 4') “ $(B \dagger C) \wedge mS$ ”
- 5') “ $(\neg(mB)) \vee kB$ ”
- 6') “ $(B \dagger C) \rightarrow (kB)$ ”
- 7') “ $\neg(B \dagger C)$ ”
- 8') “ $\exists x(x \dagger C)$ ”
- 9') “ $\forall x((mx \wedge (\exists y(my \wedge \neg(x = y) \wedge (x \dagger y))) \rightarrow kx)$ ”
- 10') “ $\forall x(kx \leftrightarrow (mx \wedge (\exists y(my \wedge \neg(x = y) \wedge (x \dagger y))))$ ”

Sometimes one writes “ $m(S)$ ” instead of “ mS .” Also one can write “ $\dagger(C, B)$ ” or “ $\dagger CB$ ” instead of “ $C \dagger B$.”

One says that the English sentences 1)-10) above are *translations* of the Formal sentences 1')-10'). One also says that the Formal sentences 1')-10') are *translations* (called *formalizations*) of the English sentences 1)-10).

REMARK 1.3.

a) The above formalizations are obtained in two steps.

The first step in formalization (called *paraphrasing*) consists in replacing 8), 9), 10) by the following sentences, respectively:

8") "*There exists something such that that something is a man and that something killed Caesar*" or simply "*There exists x such that x is a man and x killed Caesar.*"

9") "*For all x if x is man and there exists a y such that y is a man, y is different from x and x killed y then x is a killer*",

10") "*For all x one has that x is a killer if and only if x is a man and there exists y such that y is a man, x is not y , and x killed y* "

One also says that 8), 9), 10) are *analyzed* as 8'), 9'), 10'), respectively; or that 8'), 9'), 10') are the *logical forms* of 8), 9), 10), respectively.

For English paraphrasing is achieved by using a list of syntactic schemes (which are given in the grammar of the English language with an eye on formalization and which we are not going to record here. One such scheme is, for instance, passing from "All A are B " to "For all x if x is A then x is B ". Another scheme is passing from "Some A are B " to "There exists x such that x is A and x is B ." Another scheme is passing from "No A is B " to "It is not the case that that there exists x such that x is A and x is B ." (Schemes of this type were first considered by Russell.)

The second step in formalization is a "word for word translation" (i.e. replacement of symbols one by one; certain permutations of words are allowed as in "If P then Q " translated as " $P \rightarrow Q$ " where "if" and "then" are replaced by \rightarrow which is placed between P and Q .). Since every sentence in English may be paraphrased in several ways every sentence in English can have several translations into Formal.

b) One could have paraphrased 1) by

1") "*Socrates belongs to the totality of all men.*"

or even

1'") "*Socrates belongs to the totality of all things that are men.*"

Then one could treat "*belongs to*" as a binary predicate which could be translated in Formal by " \in " and one could treat "*the totality of all (things that are) men*" as a constant which could be translated in Formal by " M ." Then the translation of 1") or 1'") into Formal would be

1'") $S \in M$

Paraphrasing a unary predicate (such as "*is a man*") by a binary predicate plus a constant (as in "*belongs to the totality of all (things that are) men*") is, however, dangerous. Indeed, if one performs this replacement without special care one is led to contradictions. For instance if one paraphrases the unary predicate "*does not belong to itself*" by a binary predicate plus a constant (as in "*belongs to the totality of things that do not belong to themselves*") then one is led to Russell's paradox (as we shall see later). Therefore, it is advisable to paraphrase sentences of the form 1) by sentences of the form 1') and not by sentences of the form 1'"). Later, in

Set Theory, an axiom (the separation axiom) will be introduced that specifies what paraphrases of the the kind we considered here are allowed.

c) The word “*exists*” which has the form of a predicate (because it is a verb) is instead considered (most of the time) as part of a quantifier. Sentences like “*philosophers exist*” and “*philosophers are human*” have a totally different logical structure. Indeed “*philosophers exist*” should be paraphrased as “*there exists something such that that something is a philosopher*” or simply “*there exists x such that x is a philosopher*”; on the other hand “*philosophers are human*” should be paraphrased as “*for all x if x is a philosopher then x is a human.*” The fact that “*exist*” should not be viewed as a predicate was recognized already by Kant, in particular in his criticism of the “ontological argument.”

d) The verb *to be* (as in “*is, are,...*”) can be: i) part of a predicate (as in “*is a man*”) in which case we say “*is*” is a *copula*; ii) part of equality (as in “*is equal, is the same as*”); iii) part of a quantifier (as is “*there is*”, an equivalent translation of \exists).

e) If $P(x)$ is translated, for instance, as “ *x is blue*” a sentence of the form “*There exists a unique x such that x is blue*” is paraphrased as “*There exists x such that x is blue and for all y if y is blue then $y = x$* ”; so the formalization of these sentences is the following:

$$\exists x(P(x) \wedge \forall y(P(y) \rightarrow (y = x)))$$

f) Consider the sentences “*The sky is blue*” and “*Blue is a color*”. In the first sentence “*The sky*” is a constant and is the subject of the predicate “*is blue*”. In the second sentence “*Blue*” is a constant and is the subject of the predicate “*is a color*”. Recall now that the definition of *substance* in Aristotle involves a syntactic component asking that a substance be never able to be part of a predicate. (This has been upheld by the scholastics and later by Leibniz.) There is an ontological component of their definition of substance. Ignoring the ontological component Aristotle would say that “*The sky*” is a substance (because it cannot be part of a predicate, as one cannot say that a subject “*is sky*”) but “*Blue*” is not a substance (because, although it can sometimes be the subject of a predicate as in “*Blue is a color*,” it can also be part of a predicate as in “*The sky is blue*”); similarly “*color*” is not a substance.

g) All of our discussion of English and Formal above is itself expressed in yet another language which needs to be distinguished from English itself and which we shall call *Metalanguage*. We will discuss Metalanguage in detail in the next chapter (where some languages will be declared *object languages* and others will be declared *metalanguages*). The very latter sentence is written in Metalanguage; and indeed the whole course is written in Metalanguage.

REMARK 1.4. (Naming) It is useful to give names to sentences. For instance if we want to give the name P to the English sentence “*Socrates is a man*” we can write the following sentence in Metalanguage:

$$P \text{ equals } \text{“}Socrates \text{ is a man.} \text{”}$$

So neither P nor the word *equals* nor the quotation marks belong to English; and “*Socrates is a man*” will be viewed in Metalanguage as one single symbol. One can give various different names to the same sentence. In a similar way one can give

names to sentences in Formal by writing a sentence in Metalanguage:

$$Q \text{ equals } "m(s)."$$

Alternatively one can write

$$Q = "m(S)"$$

where = is equality in metalanguage.

REMARK 1.5. (Definitions) One can add new predicates or constants to a language by, at the same time, recording certain sentences, called *definitions*. This will be addressed carefully in the chapter on Theories. As an example for the introduction of a new predicate in English we can add to English the predicate "*is an astrochicken*" by recording the following sentence:

Definition. Something is an astrochicken if and only if it is a chicken and also a space ship.

Here are alternative ways to give this definition:

Definition. An astrochicken is something which is a chicken and also a space ship.

Definition. Something is called *astrochicken* if it is a chicken and also a space ship.

Similarly, if in Formal we have a binary predicate \in and two constants c and s then one could introduce a new predicate ϵ into Formal and record the definition:

$$\textit{Definition. } \forall x(\epsilon(x) \leftrightarrow ((x \in c) \wedge (x \in s))).$$

The two definitions are related by translating \in , c , s , and ϵ as "*belongs to*," "*chicken*," "*space ships*," and "*is an astrochicken*," respectively. The word *astrochicken* is taken from a lecture by Freeman Dyson.

In a similar way one can introduce new functions or new constants; we will come back to this in the Chapter on Theories .

In the above discussion we encountered 2 examples of languages that we described in some detail (English and Formal) and one example of language (Metalanguage) that we kept somehow vague. Later we will introduce other languages and make things more precise. We would like to "define" now languages in general; we cannot do it in the sense of the present Remark because definitions in our sense here require a language to begin with. All we can do is describe in English what the definition of a language would look like. So the remark below is NOT a definition in the sense of our Remark here.

REMARK 1.6. (Description in English of the concept of language) A *first order language* (or simply a *language*) is a collection L of symbols (assumed to be "inscribed" in a "physical" medium such as paper or papyrus or computer or brain and assumed to possibly grow in time) with the following properties. The symbols in L are divided into 8 categories called *logical categories*. They are: variables, constants, functions, predicates, connectives, quantifiers, equality, and separators. Some of these may be missing. Finally we assume that the only allowed separators are parentheses (,) and commas; we especially ban quotation marks "... " from the

separators allowed in a language (because we want to use them as parts of constants in Metalanguage). As already mentioned we assume that the list of variables and constants may grow in time indefinitely: we can always add new variables and constants. The requirement that a physical medium be involved makes the collection “finite” in space in a naive sense; there is a technical sense of “finite” in Mathematics which will be explained much later.

Examples of (first order) languages (in the sense adopted here) are: natural languages (such as English, Chinese, French, German), formalized languages (such as Formal and its variants), Metalanguage (which uses variants of natural languages), Argot (which uses combinations of natural languages and formalized languages, see below), sign languages, Braille, etc. More general languages (which go beyond the ones we are describing here) are: higher order languages (in which one can “quantify over predicates”), “programming languages” (used to write computer programs), “deeper/internal” languages (as postulated, for instance, in Chomsky’s theory), etc.

Given a language L one can consider a collection L^* of strings of symbols (also inscribed in a physical medium hence “finite” in space and also allowed to grow in time). There is an “obvious” way (which will be explained later) to define a *syntactically correct* string in L^* ; such a syntactically correct string will be called a *sentence*. The collection of sentences in L^* (at every moment in time) is denoted by L^s . (We sometimes say “sentence in L ” instead of sentence in L^* .) As in the examples above we can give names P, \dots to the sentences in L ; these names P, \dots do NOT belong to the original language. A translation of a language L into another language L' is a rule that attaches to every symbol in L a symbol (or several symbols) in L' ; we assume constants are attached to constants, variables to variables, etc. Due to syntactical correctness the above type of replacement (supplemented by some allowed permutations of words) attaches to sentences P in L sentences P' in L' ; such a process is called *word for word translation* (or *symbol for symbol translation*) and it is too rigid to be useful. More general concepts of translation need to be considered; they are given by syntactic schemes that depend of the pair of languages L, L' ; for instance if L is a natural language and L' is Formal then one first replaces sentences A in L by sentences B in L which are *paraphrases* of A and then one translates B symbol for symbol into sentences B' into Formal; B' is declared to be a translation of A (and A to be a translation of B'). Paraphrasing is performed following syntactic rules given in the grammar of L . Translations and reference are required to satisfy the following condition. If L and L' are equipped with reference (which is always the case but sometimes ignored) and if P is a sentence in L whose translation in L' is P' then we impose the condition that P and P' have *the same reference*. Two sentences in a language will be said to have the same *meaning* if they have the same translations in every other available language. In other words the meaning of a sentence is the collection of all its available translations in all the given languages. We view meaning as having various degrees of clarity: the more translations available the more definite the meaning. We impose the condition that if a sentence is a paraphrase of another sentence then the two sentences have the same meaning; in the practice of natural languages this condition is only approximately satisfied. Adopting this syntactic concept of meaning circumvents the subtle “problem of meaning” in the philosophy of language; for the purposes of our course this approach will be sufficient.

REMARK 1.7. (Syntax/semantics/reference/inference/truth in languages)

Syntax deals with rules of formation of “correct” sentences. We will examine these rules in detail in a subsequent chapter.

Semantics deals with meaning which was commented upon earlier.

Reference (or universe of discourse) is “what sentences are about.” For a “realist” words in English may refer to the physical or imaginary worlds (including symbols in languages which are also viewed as physical entities); e.g., the English word “*Socrates*” refers to the “*physical man Socrates*”; the words “*the word Socrates*” refers to the “*physical word Socrates*” as written on a piece of paper, say; and the word “*Hamlet*” refers to something in the imaginary world. For an internalist (like, say, Kant but also Russell) the “physical man Socrates” should be replaced by the “phenomenal” (as opposed to the “noumenal” Socrates) or by the “idea” of Socrates (which can be considered as a physical sign in an “internal language”). Metalanguage, on the other hand, refers to other languages such as English or Formal; so the universe of discourse of Metalanguage consists of other languages; such a reference will be called *linguistic reference*. Reference to things other than languages will be called *non-linguistic reference*. Sentences in Formal can be attached a reference once they are translated into English, say; then they have the same reference as their translations.

Inference is a process by which we accept indicative sentences based on other indicative sentences that are already accepted; see the comments below on indicative sentences. There is a whole array of processes that may qualify as inference from belief to mechanical proof.

We could also ask if the sentences $1), \dots, 10), 1'), \dots, 10')$ are “true” or “false.” We will not define *truth/falsehood* for sentences in any of our languages. Indeed a discussion of truth would complicate our analysis beyond what we are ready to undertake; on the other hand dropping the concepts of truth and falsehood will not affect, as we shall see, our ability to develop Mathematics. To see the difficulties in handling the concept of truth let us consider the sentence “The cat is on the mat” from the viewpoint of the most commonly held theory of truth, the correspondence theory. According to the correspondence theory of truth, truth is the correspondence between sentence and fact. (This position essentially goes back to Aristotle.) In our case we have the sentence “The cat is on the mat” which we call S . But do we have a fact F which could be in a relation of “correspondence” to S ? It seems that F cannot be expressed independently of S so the second term, F , of the correspondence reduces to the first, S . This seems to make the correspondence theory of truth circular. (We could try to express F by taking a picture P of the cat lying on the mat but this would then raise the question as to how to describe the situation in the picture P other than by stating S . We could also try to express F by stating a sentence S' in a different language such as French, say; but this would reduce F to S' and we have the same problem as before.) There are many other theories of truth which can (and have been) advanced: the coherence theory of truth, Tarski’s semantic theory of truth, deflationist theories, etc. We will ignore this issue in what follows.

REMARK 1.8. (Correspondences between languages) Translations are an example of correspondence between languages. Other examples of correspondences between languages are *linguistic reference* (a text referring to another text) and *disquotation* (dropping quotation marks).

REMARK 1.9. (Fixed number of constants) English and Formal are examples of languages. Incidentally in these languages the list of constants ends (there is a “fixed number” of constants). But it is important to not impose that restriction for languages. If instead of English we consider a variant of English in which we have words involving arbitrary many letters (e.g., words like “man,” “superman,” “supersuperman,” etc.) then we have an example of a language with “any number of constants.” There is an easy trick allowing one to reduce the case of an arbitrary number of symbols to the case of a fixed number of symbols; one needs to slightly alter the syntax by introducing one more logical category, an *operator* denoted, say, by $'$; then one can form constants c', c'', c''', \dots starting from a constant c ; one can form variables x', x'', x''', \dots from a variable x ; and one can do the same with functions, predicates, etc.; we will not pursue this in what follows.

REMARK 1.10. (Alternative translations) We already gave an example of translation of Formal into English. The translation given there for connectives, quantifiers, and equality is called the *standard translation*. But there are alternative translations as follows.

Alternative translations of \rightarrow into English are “*if ... then ...*,” “*implies*,” or “*by...it follows that*,” or “*since...we get*,” etc.

An alternative translations of \leftrightarrow into English are “*is equivalent to*,” “*if, and only if*.”

Alternative translations of \forall into English are “*for all*,” or “*for every*,” or “*for each*.” Sometimes one translates \forall as “*for any*,” although the latter may lead to confusion. E.g., the sentence “if any of the elements of A is even then not all elements of A are odd” needs to be paraphrased as “if there exists x in A such that x is even then it is not the case that for all y in A , y is odd”; so “*any*” (usually followed by “*of*” and not preceded by “*for*”) sometimes paraphrases “*there exists*.” In view of this ambiguity one should avoid using “*for any*” as a paraphrase of \forall . On the other hand one often uses sentences of the form “Let x be any A that has property P . Then x has property Q .” This is always paraphrased as “For every x if x is A and x has property P then x has property Q .” So “*any*” (without “*for*”) can also paraphrase “*for every*.”

Alternative translations of \exists into English are “*for some*” or “*there is an/a*.” And, as we saw before, there are cases when “*any*” (usually followed by “*of*” and not preceded by “*for*”) is properly used in the translation of \exists , as in the sentence “if any of the elements of A is even then not all elements of A are odd” considered above.

REMARK 1.11. (Other connectives and quantifiers). English has other connectives (such as “*before*,” “*after*,” “*but*,” “*in spite of the fact that*,” etc.). Some of these we will ignore; others will be viewed as interchangeable with others; e.g., “*but*” will be viewed as interchangeable with “*and*” (although the resulting meaning is definitely altered). Also English has other quantifiers (such as “*there exists a unique*,” “*many*,” “*most*,” “*quite a few*,” “*half*,” “*for at least three*,” etc.). In Formal “*there exists a unique*” is formalized as $\exists!$ and is often used in mathematical texts. For instance the sentence

“*There is a unique person who killed Caesar*”

can be paraphrased as

“*There is a unique x such that x killed Caesar*”

and can be formalized as

“ $\exists!x(x \dagger C)$.”

The quantifier “there exists a unique” can be “eliminated” i.e., one can paraphrase sentences containing it by sentences that only contain “there exists” and “for all.” For instance the above sentence can be paraphrased as

“*There exists x such that x killed Caesar and for all y if y killed Caesar then $y = x$.*”

and formalized as

“ $(\exists x(x \dagger C)) \wedge (\forall y((y \dagger C) \rightarrow (y = x)))$ ”

REMARK 1.12. (Texts) Let us consider the following types of objects:

- 1) symbols (e.g., $x, y, B, C, \dagger, k, \dots, \in, \downarrow, \dots, \wedge, \vee, \neg, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow, \forall, \exists, =, (,)$);
- 2) collections of symbols (e.g., the collection of symbols above, denoted by L);
- 2') strings of symbols (e.g., $\exists x \forall y(x \in y)$);
- 3) collections of strings of symbols (e.g., L^*, L^s encountered above or theories T to be encountered later);
- 3') strings of strings of symbols (such as the proofs to be encountered later).

In the above, collections are unordered while strings are ordered. The above types of objects (1, 2, 2', 3, 3') will be referred to as *texts*. Texts should be thought of as concrete (physical) objects, like symbols written on a piece of paper or papyrus, words that can be uttered, images in a book or in our minds, etc. We assume we know what we mean by saying that a symbol belongs to (or is in) a given collection/string of symbols; or that a string of symbols belongs to (or is in) a given collection/string of strings of symbols. We will not need to iterate these concepts. We will also assume we know what we mean by performing some simple operations on such objects like: concatenation of strings, deleting symbols from strings, substituting symbols in strings with other symbols, “pairing” strings with other strings, etc. These will be encountered and explained later. Texts will be crucial in introducing our concepts of Logic. Note that it might look like we are already assuming some kind of Logic when we are dealing with texts; so our introduction to Logic might seem circular. **But actually the “Logic” of texts that we are assuming is much more elementary than the Logic we want to introduce later; so what we are doing is not circular.**

For the next exercises one needs to enrich Formal by new symbols as needed. The translations involved will not be word for word.

EXERCISE 1.13. Find formalizations of the following English sentences:

- 1) “*I saw a man.*”
- 2) “*There is no hope for those who enter this realm.*”
- 3) “*There is nobody there.*”
- 4) “*There were exactly two people in that garden.*”
- 5) “*The cat is on the mat.*”
- 6) “*A cat is on the mat.*”
- 7) “*If two lines have two points in common then the lines coincide.*”

8) “For every line and every point not belonging to the line there is a unique line passing through the point and not meeting the first line.

Sentence 2 above is, of course, a paraphrase of a line in Dante. Sentences 7 and 8 are axioms of Euclidean geometry.

EXERCISE 1.14. Find formalizations of the following English sentences:

1) “The movement of celestial bodies is not produced by angels pushing the bodies in the direction of the movement but by angels pushing the bodies in a direction perpendicular to the movement.”

2) “I think therefore I am.”

3) “Since existence is a quality and since a being cannot be perfect if it lacks one quality it follows that a perfect being must exist.”

4) “Since some things move and everything that moves is moved by a mover and an infinite regress of movers is impossible it follows that there is an unmoved mover.”

Hints: The word “but” should be paraphrased as “and”; “therefore” should be paraphrased as “implies” and hence as “if...then”; “since...it follows” should be paraphrased, again, as “implies.”

The sentence 1 above paraphrases a statement in one of Feynman’s lectures on gravity. The sentence 2 is, of course Descartes’ “cogito ergo sum.” The sentence 3 is a version of the “ontological argument” (considered by Anselm, Descartes, Leibniz, Gödel; cf. Aquinas and Kant for criticism). See 6.3 for more on this. The sentence 4 is a version of the “cosmological argument” (Aquinas).

REMARK 1.15. (Indicative/declarative/imperative/interrogative sentences) All sentences considered so far were indicative (they make a statement that, in natural languages, can be qualified as true or false). Natural languages have other types of sentences: declarative (making a pronouncement like: “We define this to be that”), imperative (giving a command like: “Lift this weight!”) and interrogative (asking a question such as: “Is the electron in this portion of space-time?”). “Indicative” and “declarative” are sometimes viewed as synonyms but it is useful to distinguish between the two. Indeed, indicative and declarative sentences may have the same form but different ways of being interpreted/translated. E.g. “I pronounce you husband and wife” can be interpreted as declarative (if the sentence is meant to institute a new state of affairs, in this case the state of affairs in which this unmarried couple becomes a married couple) but it can also be interpreted as indicative (if the sentence describes what I am doing at this moment.) Another, simpler example: “I want to go” can be declarative (expressing an intension, in which case it does not make sense to ask if the sentence is true or not) or indicative (when one understands this sentence in a way that allows it to be false as in the case when I do not actually want to go in spite of what I am saying). In principle, from now on, we will only consider indicative sentences in our languages. An exception to this is the language called *Argot*; see below.

REMARK 1.16. (Argot) For a language L (such as Formal) we may introduce a new language called *argotic* L (or simply *Argot*), denoted sometimes by L_{Argot} . Most mathematics books, for instance, are written in such a language. The language L_{Argot} has as symbols all the symbols of English together with all the symbols of a language L , to which one adds other categories of symbols such as:

- *imperative phrases expressing commands*: “consider,” “assume,” “let...be,” “let us...,” etc.)

- *declarative phrases expressing intension*: “we want to show,” “we need to show,” “we seek a contradiction,” etc.

Examples of sentences in Argot are

- 1) “Since $(s \in w) \rightarrow (\rho(s))$ it follows that $\rho(t)$ ”
- 2) “Let c be such that $\rho(c)$.”
- 3) “We want to show that $\rho(c)$.”

We will not insist on explaining the syntax of Argot which is rather different from that of both English and Formal. Suffices to note that the symbols in Formal do not appear between quotation marks inside sentences of Argot; loosely speaking the sentences in Argot often appear as obtained from sentences in Metalanguage via disquotation.

CHAPTER 2

Metalinguage

In the previous chapter we briefly referred to *linguistic reference* as being a correspondence between two languages in which the first language \widehat{L} “talks about” a second language L as a language (i.e., it “talks about” the syntax, semantics, etc. of L). We also say that \widehat{L} refers to (or has as universe of discourse) the language L . Once we have fixed L and \widehat{L} we shall call L the *object language* and \widehat{L} the *metalinguage*. (The term *metalinguage* was used by Tarski in his theory of truth; but our metalinguage differs from his in certain respects, cf. Remark 2.4 below. Also this kind of correspondence between \widehat{L} and L is reminiscent of Russell’s theory of types of which, however, we will say nothing here.)

Metalinguages and object languages are similar structures (they are both languages!) but we shall keep them separate and we shall hold them to different standards, as we shall see below. Sentences in metalinguage are called *metasentences*. If we treat English and Formal as object languages then all our discussion of English and Formal was written in a metalinguage (which is called *Metalinguage*) and hence consists of metasentences. Let’s have a closer look at this concept. First some examples.

EXAMPLE 2.1. Assume we have fixed an object language L such as English or Formal (or several object languages L, L', \dots). In what follows we introduce a metalinguage \widehat{L} . Here are some examples of metasentences in \widehat{L} . First some examples of metasentences of the type we already encountered (where the object language L is either English or Formal):

- 1) x is a variable in the sentence “ $\forall x(x \in a)$.”
- 2) P equals “*Socrates is a man.*”

Later we will encounter other examples of metasentences such as:

- 3) $P(b)$ is obtained from $P(x)$ by replacing x with b .
- 4) Under the translation of L into L' the translation of P is P' .
- 5) By ... the sentence $P \vee \neg P$ is a tautology.
- 6) c is a constant
- 7) The string of sentences P, Q, R, \dots, U is a proof of V .
- 8) V is a theorem.
- 9) If P, \dots, T is a proof then T is a theorem.
- 10) If x is a variable then x is a term.

The metasentences 1, 3, 6 are explanations of syntax in L (see later); 2 is a definition (referred to as a notation or naming); 4 is an explanation of semantics

(see later); 5 is part of a metaproof; and 7, 8 are claims about inference (see later). 9 and 10 are axioms in metalanguage (metaaxioms).

Here are the symbols in \widehat{L} .

First we postulate that **there are no variables and no quantifiers in metalanguage**. (The reason for this will be explained below.) Next we have:

- constants: “Socrates,” “Socrates is a man,” “ \wedge ,” “=,” $L, L^*, L^s, \dots, P, Q, R, \dots$,
- functions: the variables in, the translation of, the proof of, $\wedge, \vee, \neg, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow, \exists x, \forall x, \dots$
- predicates: is translated as, occurs in, is obtained from...by replacing...with..., is a tautology, is a proof,..., follows from, by ... it follows that..., by ... one gets that,...
- connectives: and, or, not, if...then, if and only if, because,...
- equality: is, equals,...
- separators: parentheses, comma, period.

REMARK 2.2. Note that names of sentences in the object language become constants in metalanguage. The texts of the object language, appearing between quotation marks, also become constants in metalanguage. The connectives of the object language become functions in metalanguage. The symbols “ \wedge, \dots ” used as constants, the symbols \wedge, \dots used as functions, and the symbols *and, ...* viewed as connectives should be viewed as different symbols (normally one should use different notation for them).

REMARK 2.3. The above metalanguage can be viewed as a *MetaEnglish* because it is based on English. One can construct a *MetaFormal* metalanguage by replacing the English words with symbols including:

- connectives: $\&$ (for and), \Rightarrow (for if...then), \Leftrightarrow (for if and only if)
- equality: \equiv (for is, equals)

We will not proceed this way, i.e., we will always use MetaEnglish as our metalanguage.

REMARK 2.4. What Tarski called *metalanguage* is close to what we call *metalanguage* but not quite the same. The difference is that Tarski allows metalanguage to contain the symbols of original object language written *without* quotation marks. So for him (but not for us), if the language is Formal, then the following is a metasentence:

$$\text{“}\forall x\exists y s(x, y)\text{” is true if and only if } \forall x\exists y s(x, y)$$

Allowing the above to be a metasentence helped Tarski introduce his conditions that *truth in a language* should satisfy (the Tarski *T* scheme); we will not discuss this here but see the Chapter on Models.

REMARK 2.5. (Syntax/semantics/reference/inference/truth in metalanguage versus object language)

The syntax of object languages will be regulated by metalanguage. On the other hand metalanguage has a syntax of its own which is simpler (e.g. there are no variables and quantifiers) and we keep less precise than that of object languages so that we avoid the necessity of introducing a metametalanguage which regulates it; that would prompt introducing a metametametalanguage that regulates the metametalanguage, etc. The hope is that metalanguage, kept sufficiently loose

from a syntactic viewpoint, can sufficiently well explain its own syntax without leading to contradictions. The very text you are reading now is, in effect, metalanguage explaining its own syntactic problems. The syntactically correct texts in metalanguage are referred to as metasentences. Definitions in metalanguage are called *metadefinitions*. It is crucial to distinguish between words in sentences and words in metasentences which are outside the quotation marks; even if they look the same they should be regarded as different words.

In terms of semantics sentences in object languages are assumed to have a meaning derived from (or rather identified with) translations into other languages but we will generally ignore this meaning. On the other hand, metasentences have a metameaning derived from their own translations into other languages; we shall assume we understand their metameaning and we shall *not* ignore it.

Metasentences have a reference (which could be called *metareference*): they always refer to sentences in the object language. On the other hand we will generally ignore the reference of sentences in object language.

The “double standard” approach towards object languages and metalanguage is necessary if one wants to avoid the introduction of metametalanguages, etc.; it is reasonable because the metameaning and metareference of metasentences in metalanguage is much simpler than the meaning and reference of sentences in object language. Referring to written words as mere words is a much more straightforward business than referring to what the words refer to.

Metasentences, as well as sentences in object language, are assumed to have no truth value (it does not make sense to say they are true or false).

For instance the metasentences

- a. The word “*elephants*” occurs in the sentence “*elephants are blue.*”
- b. The word “*crocodiles*” occurs in the sentence “*elephants are gray.*”

can be translated into the “metalanguage of letter searches” (describing how to search a word in a sentence, say). Both metasentences have a metameaning. Intuitively we are tempted to say that (a) is true and (b) is false. As already mentioned we do not want to introduce the concepts of *true* and *false* in this course. Instead we infer sentences in object language, respectively, metasentences; inference of sentences in object languages will be called *proof* or *deduction* and will be “mechanical” (will not involve semantics); inference of metasentences in metalanguage will be called *metaproof* or *showing* or *checking* and will involve a certain degree of semantics (for instance of the words “if” and “then” but not “for all” and “there exists”).

For example we agree that (a) above can be metaproved; also the negation of (b) can be metaproved (checked by showing). Metaproof is usually based on a translation into a “computer language”: for instance to metaprove (a) take the words of the sentence “*elephants are blue*” one by one starting from the right (say) and ask if the word is “*elephants*”; the third time you ask the answer is yes, which ends the metaproof of (a). A similar discussion applies to some other types of metasentences; e.g., to the metasentences 1-7 in Example 2.1. The metaproof of 5 in Example 2.1 involves, for instance, “showing tables” whose correctness can be checked by inspection by a machine. (This will be explained later.) The situation with the metasentence 8 in Example 2.1 is quite different: there is no method (program) that can decide if there is a metaproof for 8; neither is there a method

that can find a metaproof for 8 in case there is one. But if one already has a proof of T in 8 then checking that the alleged proof is a proof can be done mechanically and this provides a metaproof for 8. Most metaproofs consist in checking that a definition applies to a given metasentence. The rules governing the latter would be spelled out in metametalanguage; we will not do this here.

The different standards adopted for object language and metalanguage are based on the following “balance” principle best expressed in a table as follows:

	object language	metalanguage
quantification	present	absent
syntactic structure	strong	weak
semantic structure	weak	strong
ability to infer	strong	weak
ability to refer	weak	strong
truth	undefined	undefined

REMARK 2.6. Since P, Q are constants in metalanguage and $\wedge, \vee, \dots, \exists x$ are functions in metalanguage one can form syntactically correct strings

$$P \wedge Q, \dots, \exists x P$$

in metalanguage, etc. If

P equals “ $p\dots$ ”

Q equals “ $q\dots$ ”

where p, \dots, q, \dots are symbols in the object language then we introduce the rule (“metaaxiom”)

$$P \wedge Q \text{ equals } “(p\dots) \wedge (q\dots)”$$

The above should be viewed as one of the rules allowed in metaproofs. Similar obvious rules can be given for \vee, \exists , etc. Note that the parentheses are many times necessary; indeed without them the string $P \vee Q \wedge R$ would be ambiguous. We will drop parentheses, however, each time there is no ambiguity. For instance we will never write $(P \vee Q) \wedge R$ as $P \vee Q \wedge R$. Note that according to these conventions $(P \vee Q) \vee R$ and $P \vee (Q \vee R)$ are still considered distinct.

REMARK 2.7. Assume we are given a metadefinition:

P equals “ $p\dots$ ”

Then we say P is a *name* for the sentence “ $p\dots$ ” We impose the following rule for this type of metadefinition: if two sentences have the same name they are identical (as strings of symbols in the object language; identity means exactly the same symbols in the same order and it is a physical concept). Note on the other hand that the same sentence in the object language can have different names.

In the same spirit if

$P(x)$ equals “ $p\dots x\dots$ ”

is a metadefinition in metalanguage then we will add to the object language a new predicate (still denoted by P) by adding, to the definitions of the object language, the following definition:

$$\forall x(P(x) \leftrightarrow (p\dots x\dots)).$$

So the symbol P appears once as a constant in metalanguage and as a predicate in the object language. (We could have used two different letters instead of just P but it is more suggestive to let P play two roles.) This creates what one can call a *correspondence* between part of the metalanguage and part of the language. This correspondence, which we refer to as *linguistic reference*, is not like a translation between languages because constants in metalanguage do not correspond to constants in the object language but to sentences (or to new predicates) in the object language. In some sense this linguistic reference is a “vertical” correspondence between languages of “different scope” whereas translation is a “horizontal” correspondence between languages of “equal scope.” The words “vertical” and “horizontal” should be taken as metaphors rather than precise terms.

REMARK 2.8. (Disquotation) There is a “vertical” correspondence (called *disquotation* or *deleting quotation marks*) that attaches to certain metasentences in metalanguage a sentence in the object language (or Argot). Consider for instance the metasentence in MetaEnglish

1) From “*Socrates is a man*” and “*all men are mortal*” it follows that “*Socrates is mortal*.”

Its disquotation is the following sentence in English:

2) *Since Socrates is a man and all men are mortal it follows that Socrates is mortal.*

Note that 1 refers to some sentences in English whereas 2 refers to something (somebody) called Socrates. So the references of 1 and 2 are different; and so are their meaning (if we choose to care about the meaning of 2 which we usually don’t).

If P equals “*Socrates is a man*,” Q equals “*all men are mortal*,” and R equals “*Socrates is mortal*” then 2 above is also viewed as the disquotation of:

1’) From P and Q it follows that R .

Disquotation is not always performable: if one tries to apply disquotation to the metasentence

1) x is a free variable in “*for all x , x is an elephant*”

one obtains

2) *x is a free variable in for all x , x is an elephant*

which is not syntactically correct.

Disquotation is a concept involved in some of the classical theories of truth, e.g., in Tarski’s example:

“*Snow is white*” is true if and only if *snow is white*.

Since we are not concerned with truth in this course we will not discuss this connection further. For more on this see the Chapter on Models.

We will often apply disquotation without any warning if there is no danger of confusion.

EXERCISE 2.9. Consider the following sentences in English and explain how they are obtained from metasentences in Metalanguage.

- 1) To be or not to be, that is the question.
- 2) You say yes, I say no, you say stop, but I say go, go, go.
- 3) The sentence you are reading is false.

1 is, of course, from Shakespeare. 2 is from the Beatles. 3 is a form of *liar's paradox*. Hint: 1 and 2 are obtained by disquotation (plus paraphrasing). 3 is obtained by giving a name to 3 and referring to 3 by name. There are many ways to do this.

REMARK 2.10. (Indicative/declarative/imperative/interrogative) All metasentences considered so far were indicative (they state their content). There are other types of metasentences: declarative (“We define this to be...”), imperative (giving a command like: “Prove this theorem!” “Replace x by b in P ,” “Search for x in P ,” etc.) and interrogative (asking a question such as: “What is the value of the function f at 5?,” “Does x occur in P ?,” etc.). The syntax of metasentences discussed above only applies to indicative metasentences. We will only use imperative/interrogative metasentences in the exercises or some metaproofs; these other types of metasentences require additional syntactic rules which are clear and we will not make explicit here.

From now on we will make the following convention. In any discussion about languages we will assume we have fixed an object language and a metalanguage. The object language will simply be referred to as the “language.” So the word “object” will systematically be dropped.

CHAPTER 3

Syntax

We already superficially mentioned syntax. In this chapter we discuss, in some detail, the syntax of Formal (or similar languages). The syntax of English (or other natural languages), Metalanguage, and Argot are similar but more complicated and will not be explicitly addressed here. All the explanations below are, of course, written in Metalanguage.

As we saw a language is a collection L of symbols. Given L we considered the collection L^* of all strings of symbols in L . In this chapter we explain the definition of sentences (which will be certain special strings in L^*). Being a sentence will involve, in particular, a certain concept of “syntactic correctness.” The kind of syntactic correctness discussed below makes L a *first order language*. There are other types of languages whose syntax is different (e.g., second order languages, in which one is allowed to say, for instance, “for every predicate, etc...”; or languages whose syntax is based on grammatical categories rather than logical categories; or computer languages, not discussed in this course at all). First order languages are the most natural (and are entirely sufficient) for developing Mathematics.

In what follows we let L be a collection of symbols consisting of variables x, y, \dots , constants, functions, predicates, connectives $\wedge, \vee, \neg, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow$ (where \neg is unary and the rest are binary), quantifiers \forall, \exists , equality $=$, and, as separators, parentheses $(,)$, and commas. (For simplicity we considered 5 “standard” connectives, 2 “standard” quantifiers, and a “standard” symbol for equality; this is because most examples will be like that. However any number of connectives and quantifiers, and any symbols for them would do. In particular some of these categories of symbols may be missing.) According to our conventions recall that we will also fix a metalanguage \widehat{L} in which we can “talk about” L .

EXAMPLE 3.1. If L has constants a, b, \dots , a functional symbol f , and a binary predicate \square then here are examples of strings in L^* :

- 1) $(x\forall\square\exists aby(\rightarrow$
- 2) $f(f(a))$
- 3) $\exists y((a\square x) \rightarrow (a\square y))$
- 4) $\forall x(\exists y((a\square x) \rightarrow (a\square y)))$

In what follows we will define terms, formulas, and sentences; 1 above will be neither a term, nor a formula, nor a sentence; 2 will be a term; 3 will be a formula but not a sentence; 4 will be a sentence.

For the rule (metaaxiom) below we introduce a unary predicate “*is a term*” into metalanguage.

METAAXIOM 3.2.

- 1) If x is a variable then x is a term. If c is a constant then c is a term.

2) If t, s, \dots are terms and f is a functional symbol then $f(t, s, \dots)$ is a term.

REMARK 3.3. Note that we did not say “all variables are terms” because we cannot use quantifiers in metalanguage; instead we have a metaaxiom as above for each individual variable and each individual constant. This observation will apply again and again when discussing metaaxioms.

REMARK 3.4. Functions may be unary $f(t)$, binary $f(t, s)$, ternary $f(t, s, u)$, etc. When we write $f(t, s)$ we simply mean a string of 5 symbols; there is no “substitution” involved here. Substitution will play a role later, though; cf. 3.14.

EXAMPLE 3.5. If a, b, \dots are constants, x, y, \dots are variables, f is a unary functional symbol, and g is a binary functional symbol, all of them in L , then

$$f(g(f(b), g(x, g(x, y))))$$

is a term. The text above is a metasentence. A metaproof of this is as follows. Since x, y are terms $g(x, y)$ is a term. Hence $g(x, g(x, y))$ is a term. Since b is a term $f(b)$ is a term. So $g(f(b), g(x, g(x, y)))$ is a term, hence $f(g(f(b), g(x, g(x, y))))$ is a term.

For the next metaaxiom we introduce the predicate *is a formula* into metalanguage.

METAAXIOM 3.6.

- 1) If t, s are terms then $t = s$ is a formula.
- 2) If t, s, \dots are terms and ρ is a predicate then $\rho(t, s, \dots)$ is a formula.
- 3) If Q, Q' are formulae then $Q \wedge Q', Q \vee Q', \neg Q, Q \rightarrow Q', Q \leftrightarrow Q'$ are formulae.

Formulae of the form 1) or 2) above are called *atomic formulae*.

Recall our convention that if we have a different number of symbols (written differently) we make similar metadefinitions for them; in particular some of the symbols may be missing altogether. For instance if equality is missing from L we ignore 1.

We introduce a predicate “is in L^f ” into metalanguage and we introduce the metaaxioms: P is a formula if and only if P is in L^f .

REMARK 3.7. Predicates can be unary $\rho(t)$, binary $\rho(t, s)$, ternary $\rho(t, s, u)$, etc. Again, $\rho(t, s)$ simply means a string of 5 symbols $\rho, (, t, s,)$ and nothing else. Sometimes one uses another syntax for predicates: instead of $\rho(t, s)$ one writes $t\rho s$ or ρts ; instead of $\rho(t, s, u)$ one may write ρtsu , etc. All of this is in the language L . On the other hand if some variables x, y, \dots appear in a formula P we sometimes write in metalanguage $P(x, y, \dots)$ instead of P . In particular if x appears in P (there may be other variables in P as well) we sometimes write $P(x)$ instead of P . Formulas of the form $P \rightarrow Q$ are referred to as conditional formulas. Formulas of the form $P \leftrightarrow Q$ are referred to as biconditional formulas.

EXAMPLE 3.8. Assume L contains a constant c , a unary predicate ρ , and a unary functional symbol f . Then the following is a formula:

$$(\forall x(f(x) = c)) \rightarrow (\rho(f(x)))$$

For what follows we need to add a predicate “ x is free in”. If x is free in P we also say x is a free variable in P . Instead of “ x is not free in P ” we sometimes say “ x is bound in P ”.

METAAXIOM 3.9.

- 1) If x appears in the term t or in the term s then x is free in the formula $t = s$.
If x does not appear in s and does not appear in t then x is bound in $t = s$.
- 2) If x appears in the term t or in the term s , etc., and if ρ is a predicate then x is free in the formula $\rho(t, s, \dots)$. If x does not appear in the terms t, s, \dots and if ρ is a predicate then x is bound in the formula $\rho(t, s, \dots)$.
- 3) If x is free in the formula P or in the formula Q then x is free in $P \wedge Q$, $P \vee Q$, $P \rightarrow Q$, $P \leftrightarrow Q$, $\neg P$. If x is bound in the formula P and in the formula Q then x is bound in $P \wedge Q$, $P \vee Q$, $P \rightarrow Q$, $P \leftrightarrow Q$, $\neg P$.
- 4) If P is a formula and x is free in P then $\exists xP$ and $\forall xP$ are formulas and x is bound in $\exists xP$ and in $\forall xP$.
- 5) If P is a formula and x and y are free in P then y is free in $\exists xP$ and in $\forall xP$.
If P is a formula and y is bound in P and x is free in P then y is bound in $\exists xP$ and in $\forall xP$.

Formulas of the form (i.e., which are equal to one of) $\forall xP$, $\forall xP(x)$ are referred to as universal formulas. Formulas of the form $\exists xP$, $\exists xP(x)$ are referred to as existential formulas.

EXAMPLE 3.10.

- 1) x is bound in $\forall y \exists x(\rho(x, y))$. (Metaproof of this: x is bound in $\exists x(\rho(x, y))$ hence bound in $\forall y \exists x(\rho(x, y))$.)
- 2) x is free in $(\exists x(\beta(x))) \vee \rho(x, a)$. (Metaproof of this: x is free in $\rho(x, a)$ so x is free in $(\exists x(\beta(x))) \vee \rho(x, a)$.)
- 3) x is bound in $\forall x((\exists x(\beta(x))) \vee \rho(x, a))$.
- 4) y and z are free in $(\forall x \exists y(\alpha(x, y, z))) \wedge \forall u(\beta(u, y))$.

EXAMPLE 3.11. Let p and q be a ternary and a binary predicate respectively. The following is a formula $(\forall y(\exists x q(x, y))) \rightarrow (\neg p(x, y, z))$. The above text is a metasentence. A metaproof of it is as follows. Since x, y, z are terms $q(x, y)$ and $p(x, y, z)$ are formulas. Hence $\neg p(x, y, z)$ is a formula. Since x is free in $q(x, y)$ we have that $\exists x q(x, y)$ is a formula. Since y is free the latter we get that $\forall y(\exists x q(x, y))$ is a formula. Hence $(\forall y(\exists x q(x, y))) \rightarrow (\neg p(x, y, z))$ is a formula.

EXAMPLE 3.12. Let p and q be a ternary and a binary predicate respectively. Consider the string of symbols $(\forall y(\exists x q(x, y))) \rightarrow \vee(\neg p(x, y, z))$. One cannot metaprove the metasentence “the above is a formula” the way we proceeded in the previous example (the problem being with the symbol \vee). This does not mean that we can metaprove the sentence “the above string is not a formula”; all we have is that we cannot conclude that the above string is a formula.

METADefinition 3.13. A string in L^* is called a *sentence* if it is a formula (i.e., is in L^f) and has no free variables. Sentences are sometimes called *closed formulae*. Formulae that are not closed are called *open*.

To avoid the implicit quantifier in the above formulation one actually needs to introduce predicates of the form “is a formula with variables x, y, z ” (etc.) and replace “no free variables” with “ x is bound, y is bound, and z is bound”, etc.

Note that

- 1) If P is in L^s then P is in L^f ;
- 2) If P is in L^f then P is in L^* ;
- 3) If t is a term then t is in L^* and not in L^f .

METADEFINITION 3.14. If x is a free variable in a formula P one can replace all its free occurrences with a term t to get a formula which can be denoted by $P \frac{t}{x}$. More generally if x, y, \dots are variables and t, s, \dots are terms, we may replace all free occurrences of these variables by t, s, \dots to get a formula $P \frac{ts\dots}{xy\dots}$. A more suggestive (but less precise) notation is as follows. We write $P(x)$ instead of P and then we write $P(t)$ instead of $P \frac{t}{x}$. Similarly we write $P(t, s, \dots)$ instead of $P \frac{ts\dots}{xy\dots}$. We will constantly use this $P(t), P(t, s, \dots)$, etc. notation from now on.

Similarly if u is a term containing x and t is another term then one may replace all occurrences of x in u by t to get a term which we may denote by $u \frac{t}{x}$; if we write $u(x)$ instead of u then we can write $u(t)$ instead of $u \frac{t}{x}$. And similarly we may replace two variables x, y in a term u by two terms t, s to get a term $u \frac{ts}{xy}$, etc. We will not make use of this latter type of substitution in what follows.

EXAMPLE 3.15. If P equals “ x is a man” then x is a free variable in P . If a equals “Socrates” then $P(a)$ equals “Socrates is a man.”

EXAMPLE 3.16. If P equals “ x is a man and for all x , x is mortal” then x is a free variable in P . If a equals “Socrates” then $P(a)$ equals “Socrates is a man and for all x , x is mortal.”

EXERCISE 3.17. Is x a free variable in the following formulas?

- 1) “ $(\forall y \exists x (x^2 = y^3)) \wedge (x \text{ is a man})$ ”
- 2) “ $\forall y (x^2 = y^3)$ ”

Here the upper indexes 2 and 3 are unary functions.

EXERCISE 3.18. Compute $P(t)$ if:

- 1) $P(x)$ equals “ $\exists y (y^2 = x)$ ” and “ t ” equals “ x^4 .”
- 2) $P(x)$ equals “ $\exists y (y \text{ poisoned } x)$ ” and “ t ” equals “Plato’s teacher.”

CHAPTER 4

Tautologies

We start now the analysis of inference within a given language (which is also referred to as deduction or proof). In order to introduce the general notion of proof we need to first introduce tautologies; in their turn tautologies are introduced via certain arrays of symbols in metalanguage called *tables*.

METADEFINITION 4.1. Let T and F be two constants in metalanguage. We also allow separators in metalanguage that are frames of tables. Using the above plus arbitrary constants P and Q in metalanguage we introduce the following strings of symbols in metalanguage (which are actually arrays rather than strings but which can obviously be rearranged in the form of strings). They are referred to as the truth tables of the 5 standard connectives.

P	Q	$P \wedge Q$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	F
F	F	F

P	Q	$P \vee Q$
T	T	T
T	F	T
F	T	T
F	F	F

P	Q	$P \rightarrow Q$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	T
F	F	T

P	Q	$P \leftrightarrow Q$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	F
F	F	T

P	$\neg P$
T	F
F	T

REMARK 4.2. If in the tables above P is the sentence “ $p...$ ” and Q is the sentence “ $q...$ ” we allow ourselves, as usual, to identify the symbols $P, Q, P \wedge Q$, etc. with the corresponding sentences “ $p...$,” “ $q...$,” “ $(p...) \wedge (q...)$,” etc. Also: the letters T and F evoke “truth” and “falseness”; but they should be viewed as devoid of any meaning.

Fix in what follows a language L that has the 5 standard connectives $\wedge, \vee, \neg, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow$ (but does not necessarily have quantifiers or equality).

We introduce a new predicate in metalanguage: “is a string” and “is a Boolean string generated by P, Q, R ”. (Similar predicates “is a Boolean string generated by P, Q ”, “is a Boolean string generated by P , etc.)) We also introduce a new predicates “the formula P belongs to the string S ” and “the string S' is obtained from the string S by adding the formula P ”.

METAXIOM 4.3.

- 1) The string
 P ,
 Q ,
 R

is a Boolean string generated by P, Q, R .

2) If S is a Boolean string generated by P, Q, R and if V', V'' are formulae belonging to S then the string obtained from S by adding any of the formulae

$$V' \wedge V'', V' \vee V'', \neg V', V' \rightarrow V'', V' \leftrightarrow V''.$$

is a Boolean string generated by P, Q, R .

EXAMPLE 4.4. The following is a Boolean string generated by P, Q, R :

P
 Q
 R
 $\neg R$
 $Q \vee \neg R$
 $P \rightarrow (Q \vee \neg R)$
 $P \wedge R$
 $(P \wedge R) \leftrightarrow (P \rightarrow (Q \vee \neg R))$

A metaproof of that is as follows:

$P,$
 $Q,$
 R

is a Boolean string generated by P, Q, R . Then

$P,$
 $Q,$
 $R,$
 $\neg R$

is a Boolean string generated by P, Q, R . Then

$P,$
 $Q,$
 $R,$
 $\neg R,$
 $Q \vee \neg R$

is a Boolean string generated by P, Q, R . Etc. Note that this metaproof involves the semantics of “if” and “then”.

EXAMPLE 4.5. Consider the string

P
 Q
 R
 $T \rightarrow R$
 $\neg R$
 $Q \vee \neg R$
 $P \rightarrow (Q \vee \neg R)$
 $P \wedge R$
 $(P \wedge R) \leftrightarrow (P \rightarrow (Q \vee \neg R))$

The metasentence “The above is a Boolean string generated by P, Q, R ” cannot be metaproved as in the previous example (the problem being that the presence of $T \rightarrow R$ cannot be justified). This does not metaprove the metasentence “the above is not a Boolean string generated by P, Q, R ”; all we have is that we cannot conclude that the above string is a Boolean string generated by P, Q, R .

EXAMPLE 4.6. The following is a Boolean string generated by $P \rightarrow (Q \vee \neg R)$ and $P \wedge R$:

$$\begin{aligned} &P \rightarrow (Q \vee \neg R) \\ &P \wedge R \\ &(P \wedge R) \leftrightarrow (P \rightarrow (Q \vee \neg R)) \end{aligned}$$

REMARK 4.7. The same sentence may appear as the last sentence in two different Boolean strings; cf. the previous examples.

REMARK 4.8. Assume we are given a Boolean string generated by P, Q, R . (When more or less than 3 generators the metadefinition is similar.) One is tempted to give the following metadefinition. The truth table attached to this Boolean string and to the fixed system of generators P, Q, R is a string of symbols (or rather plane configuration of symbols thought of as reduced to a string of symbols) as follows:

P	Q	R	U	...	W
T	T	T	...	...	...
T	T	F	...	...	...
F	T	T	...	...	...
F	T	F	...	...	...
T	F	T	...	...	...
T	F	F	...	...	...
F	F	T	...	...	...
F	F	F	...	...	...

Here note that the 3 columns of the generators consist of all 8 possible combinations of T and F . The dotted columns correspond to the sentences other than the generators and are computed by the following rule. Assume V is not one of the generators P, Q, R and assume that all columns to the left of the column of V were computed; also assume that V is obtained from V' and V'' via some connective \wedge, \vee, \dots . Then the column of V is obtained from the columns of V' and V'' using the tables of the corresponding connective \wedge, \vee, \dots , respectively. The above metadefinition is, however, not correct because it implicitly involves quantifiers. So one has to reject this as a metadefinition and one proceeds, instead, as follows.

METAAXIOM 4.9. One introduces predicates “is a table,” “is a truth table,” and “is obtained from ... by adding a column by the rule...” into metalanguage and one introduces the metaaxiom “if \mathcal{T} is a truth table and \mathcal{T}' is table obtained from \mathcal{T} by a adding a column by the rule above then \mathcal{T}' is a truth table.” We leave the (messy but obvious) details to the reader.

REMARK 4.10. Note that there is a “mechanical procedure” to decide (and check) if a given sentence is a tautology or not.

EXAMPLE 4.11. Consider the following Boolean string generated by P and Q :

$$\begin{aligned} &P \\ &Q \\ &\neg P \\ &\neg P \wedge Q \end{aligned}$$

Its truth table is:

P	Q	$\neg P$	$\neg P \wedge Q$
T	T	F	F
T	F	F	F
F	T	T	T
F	F	T	F

Note that the generators P and Q are morally considered “independent” (in the sense that all 4 possible combinations of T and F are being considered for them); this is in spite of the fact that actually P and Q may be equal, for instance, to $\forall x(p(x))$ and $\exists x(\neg p(x))$, respectively.

We introduce the predicate “the sentence ... is a tautology” into metalanguage and we consider the following:

METAAXIOM 4.12. If S is a Boolean string generated by sentences P, Q, R such that the last sentence in the string is V and the truth table attached to the string and the generators P, Q, R has only T s in the V column then V is a tautology. Same metaaxiom for more or less than 3 sentences.

REMARK 4.13. Note that we did not give above a metadefinition of tautology by asking that there exist a Boolean string ending in S with the S column containing only T s; such a metadefinition would be not correct because it contains quantifiers. In particular, although there is direct way to metaprove that a given sentence is a tautology there is no direct way to metaprove that a given sentence is not a tautology. This can be done in Lathematical Logic but not in the framework of general Logic developed here.

In all the exercises and examples below, P, Q, \dots are names of sentences.

EXAMPLE 4.14. $P \vee \neg P$ is a tautology. To metaprove this consider the Boolean string generated by P ,

$$\begin{array}{l} P \\ \neg P \\ P \vee \neg P \end{array}$$

Its truth table is (check!):

P	$\neg P$	$P \vee \neg P$
T	F	T
F	T	T

This ends our metaproof of the metasentence saying that $P \vee \neg P$ is a tautology.

Remark that if we view the same Boolean string

$$\begin{array}{l} P \\ \neg P \\ P \vee \neg P \end{array}$$

as a Boolean string generated by P and $\neg P$ the corresponding truth table is

P	$\neg P$	$P \vee \neg P$
T	T	T
T	F	T
F	T	T
F	F	F

and the last column in the latter table does not consist of T s only. This does not change the fact that $P \vee \neg P$ is a tautology. Morally, in this latter computation we had to treat P and $\neg P$ as “independent”; this is not a mistake but rather a failed attempt to metaprove that $P \vee \neg P$ is a tautology.

EXAMPLE 4.15. Let S be the sentence $(P \wedge (P \rightarrow Q)) \rightarrow Q$. This sentence is a tautology which is called *modus ponens*. To metaprove this consider the following Boolean string generated by P, Q :

$$\begin{array}{l} P \\ Q \\ P \rightarrow Q \\ P \wedge (P \rightarrow Q) \\ (P \wedge (P \rightarrow Q)) \rightarrow Q \end{array}$$

Its truth table is:

P	Q	$P \rightarrow Q$	$P \wedge (P \rightarrow Q)$	S
T	T	T	T	T
T	F	F	F	T
F	T	T	F	T
F	F	T	F	T

EXERCISE 4.16. Explain how the table above was computed.

EXERCISE 4.17. Give a metaproof of the fact that each of the sentences below is a tautology:

- $(P \rightarrow Q) \leftrightarrow (\neg P \vee Q)$.
- $(P \leftrightarrow Q) \leftrightarrow ((P \rightarrow Q) \wedge (Q \rightarrow P))$.

EXERCISE 4.18. Give a metaproof of the fact that each of the sentences below is a tautology:

- $(P \wedge Q) \rightarrow P$.
- $P \rightarrow (P \vee Q)$.
- $((P \wedge Q) \wedge R) \leftrightarrow (P \wedge (Q \wedge R))$.
- $(P \wedge Q) \leftrightarrow (Q \wedge P)$.
- $(P \wedge (Q \vee R)) \leftrightarrow ((P \wedge Q) \vee (P \wedge R))$.
- $(P \vee (Q \wedge R)) \leftrightarrow ((P \vee Q) \wedge (P \vee R))$.

METADEFINITION 4.19.

- $Q \rightarrow P$ is called the *converse* of $P \rightarrow Q$.
- $\neg Q \rightarrow \neg P$ is called the *contrapositive* of $P \rightarrow Q$.

EXERCISE 4.20. Give a metaproof of the fact that each of the sentences below is a tautology:

- $((P \vee Q) \wedge (\neg P)) \rightarrow Q$ (modus ponens, variant).
- $(P \rightarrow Q) \leftrightarrow (\neg Q \rightarrow \neg P)$ (contrapositive argument).
- $\neg(P \wedge Q) \leftrightarrow (\neg P \vee \neg Q)$ (de Morgan law).
- $\neg(P \vee Q) \leftrightarrow (\neg P \wedge \neg Q)$ (de Morgan law).
- $((P \rightarrow R) \wedge (Q \rightarrow R)) \rightarrow ((P \vee Q) \rightarrow R)$ (case by case argument).
- $\neg(P \rightarrow Q) \leftrightarrow (P \wedge \neg Q)$ (negation of an implication).
- $\neg(P \leftrightarrow Q) \leftrightarrow ((P \wedge \neg Q) \vee (Q \wedge \neg P))$ (negation of an equivalence).

REMARK 4.21. 2) in Exercise 4.20 says that the contrapositive of an implication is equivalent to the original implication.

METADefinition 4.22. A sentence P is a contradiction if and only if $\neg P$ is a tautology.

CHAPTER 5

Theories

As usual this chapter is written in metalanguage. We introduce here theories. Theories are texts usually written in Argot. Recall the language Argot L_{Argot} is obtained from the symbols of English L_{Eng} , plus the symbols of a language L (such as Formal), plus command symbols (such as “let,” “consider,” etc.), plus phrases showing intension (such as “we want to show,” “we need to show,” “we seek a contradiction,” etc.)

First we need to clarify the syntax of Argot. Rather than developing a detailed explanation as for languages such as Formal (see the chapter in Syntax) we just proceed by example.

EXAMPLE 5.1. Here are some sentences in Argot:

- 1) We want to prove U .
 - 2) Assume P .
 - 3) Since P and Q it follows that R .
 - 4) Since $s = t$ we get $P(s) = P(t)$.
 - 5) So R .
 - 6) We know P .
 - 7) There are 2 cases.
 - 8) The first case is A .
 - 9) The second case is B .
 - 10) We seek a contradiction.
 - 11) Let c be such that $P(c)$.
 - 12) Assume there exists c is such that $P(c)$.
 - 13) By P there exists c such that $Q(c)$.
 - 14) This proves P .
- etc.

Here c is a constant in L ; t, s are terms in L ; P, Q, R, U, A, B etc. are sentences in L ; etc. Various variants of the above sentences will be also called *sentences in Argot* (cf. the examples that follow).

In the metaaxioms below we will use various new predicates in metalanguage such as “is a theory,” “is an extension of”, “is labeled as axiom,” “is labeled as theorem,” etc.

METAAXIOM 5.2. A sequence T of sentences labeled as axioms or definitions in L is a theory. If T is a theory and if L' is obtained from L by adding symbols and T' is obtained from T by adding new sentences (labeled as axioms, definitions, or theorems) subject to certain rules to be discussed below then T' is a theory and we say T' is an extension of T .

Here are some clarifications of the above metaaxiom.

AXIOMS. Axioms are of two kinds: general axioms (present in every theory) and specific axioms (specific to the theory we are dealing with); they are given either as a “finite” list or by a rule to form them which may create an indefinitely growing list the members of which can be added at any point in the theory. The general axioms usually include the following axioms; for terms t, t', t'' , functions f , and predicates p we can add at any point in the theory the following:

Axiom. $t = t$
Axiom. $(t = t') \rightarrow (t' = t)$
Axiom. $((t = t') \wedge (t' = t'')) \rightarrow (t = t'')$
Axiom. $(t = t') \rightarrow (f(t) = f(t'))$
Axiom. $(t = t') \rightarrow (p(t) \leftrightarrow p(t'))$

DEFINITIONS. New symbols to L can be added only if, at the same time, Definitions of these symbols are being added; these additions are governed by the following rules:

RULE C. If “*There exists a unique x such that $P(x)$* ” is a Theorem or an Axiom then one can give the following definition of a new constant c :

Definition. $\forall x((x = c) \leftrightarrow P(x))$.

Note that if $P(x)$ equals “ $x = t$ ” where t is a term then the above definition is equivalent to:

Definition. $c = t$.

One sometimes writes $c := t$ or $t =: c$ to indicate that the above is a definition of c .

RULE P. If $P(x)$ is a formula with one free variable one can introduce a new predicate p and the following:

Definition. $\forall x(p(x) \leftrightarrow P(x))$.

Similarly for binary, ternary predicates, etc.

RULE F. If $F(x, y)$ is a binary predicate and the following is a Theorem: “*For all x there exists a unique y such that $F(x, y)$* ” then one can add a functional symbol f and the following:

Definition. $\forall x\forall y((f(x) = y) \leftrightarrow F(x, y))$

Similarly for functions of several variables.

THEOREMS. A theorem can be added to T only if a proof for it is also being supplied right after its statement. The end of a proof is marked by the \square sign or by QED. There are several types of proof: direct proofs, proofs by contradiction, case by case proofs, and combinations of these. All these types are reducible to direct proofs. A sequence of sentences is a direct proof if it constructed by iterating the following rules. (For clarification some extra sentences in Argot may be added such as: “*We know...*,” “*We want to prove...*,” “*Assume the hypothesis...*,” “*We have that...*,” “*We conclude that...*,” etc.) In the rules below we introduce the predicate “is an accepted sentence” in metalanguage. Rules 1-2 below do not involve quantifiers. Rules 3-6 below involve quantifiers and introduce in metalanguage the predicate “*is (called) a (local) existential/universal witness.*” We assume the

theorem to be proved has the form $H \rightarrow C$. The sentence H is called the *hypothesis* and C is called the *conclusion*.

RULE T1. The proof starts with “Assume H . We want to prove C .” At any point in the proof H , as well as all previously proved theorems, all previous definitions, all previous axioms, and all tautologies are declared to be accepted sentences. The proof ends when C is declared to be an accepted sentence.

RULE T2. If at one point in a proof P and Q are accepted sentences and if $(P \wedge Q) \rightarrow R$ is an accepted sentence then at any point later in the proof one is allowed to add the sentence “Since P and Q it follows that R ” to the proof and then one declares R to be an accepted sentence. (If P and Q are equal one just adds “Since P it follows that R .”) Schematically we have

Proof. We have that P We have that Q Since P and Q it follows that R \square

RULE T3. If at one point in a proof “ $\forall xP(x)$ ” is an accepted sentence then at any point later in the proof one is allowed to add the sentence “Since $\forall xP(x)$ it follows that $P(c)$ ” to the proof where c is any constant (that has or has not been used before in the proof) and one declares $P(c)$ to be an accepted sentence. Note that $P(c)$ is obtained from $\forall xP(x)$ by deleting $\forall x$ and replacing x by c . If c is NEW (has not been used before) c must be ADDED to the language before the theorem and CAN NEVER BE USED AGAIN after the proof; in this case c is called a (local) *universal witness*. (Here “local” means it can only be used in one proof.) Schematically we have

Proof. So $\forall xP(x)$ Since $\forall xP(x)$ it follows that $P(c)$ \square

RULE T4. If at one point in a proof “ $\exists xP(x)$ ” is an accepted sentence then at any point later in the proof one is allowed to add the sentence “Let c be such that $P(c)$ ” to the proof where c is a NEW constant and one declares $P(c)$ to be an accepted sentence; c must be ADDED to the language before the proof and CAN NEVER BE USED AGAIN after the proof. Note that $P(c)$ is obtained from $\exists xP(x)$ by deleting $\exists x$ and replacing x by c . Such a constant c is called a (local) *existential witness*. (Here “local” means it can only be used in one proof.) Schematically we have

Proof. So $\exists xP(x)$ Let c be such that $P(c)$ \square

RULE T5. If at one point in a proof $P(c)$ is an accepted sentence then at any point later in the proof one is allowed to add the sentence “Since $P(c)$ it follows that $\exists xP(x)$ ” to the proof, where c can be any constant new or not, and one declares “ $\exists xP(x)$ ” to be an accepted sentence. Schematically we have

Proof. So $P(c)$ Since $P(c)$ we have that $\exists xP(x)$ \square

RULE T6. If at one point in the proof (including in the beginning) we say “we want to prove $\forall xP(x)$ ” then any time after that we may say “Let c be arbitrary; we want to (it is enough to) prove that $P(c)$ ” where c is a NEW constant that needs to be ADDED to the language before the proof and CAN NEVER BE USED AGAIN after the proof; such a constant is called a (local) *universal witness*. Then one provides a proof of $P(c)$ and we can say “so $\forall xP(x)$ ”. Schematically we have

Proof. We want to prove $\forall xP(x)$ Let c be arbitrary; we want to prove that $P(c)$ So $P(c)$. Since $P(c)$ for arbitrary c it follows that $\forall xP(x)$ \square

We do not provide rules for proofs that are not direct proofs because all other types of proofs can be reduced to direct proofs in a way that will be explained below.

REMARK 5.3. The less important Theorems are usually referred to as *Propositions*. The Propositions whose only role is to help prove other Propositions or Theorems are usually referred to as *Lemmas*. The decision as to which Theorems can be called *Propositions* or *Lemmas* is a matter of choice (of style) and is not codified in any way.

REMARK 5.4. When adding definitions of new constants, functions, or predicates one should ask, of course, that these definitions be introduced in a sequence and at each step in the sequence the symbol that is being introduced has not appeared before (i.e. it is indeed “new”); this guarantees the *predicativity* of the definitions (by which we mean here their non-circularity), at least from a syntactical viewpoint. This device does not get rid of the semantic impredicativity (which was one of the major themes in the controversies around the foundation of Mathematics at the beginning of the 20th century; cf. Russell, Poincaré, etc.) However, since we chose to completely ignore the meaning (semantics) of object languages, semantic impredicativity will not be an issue for us. To be sure, later in Set Theory, semantic impredicativity is everywhere implicit and might be viewed as implicitly threatening the whole edifice of Mathematics.

REMARK 5.5. One can ask the following questions:

- 1) Is there a “mechanical procedure” to check if a theory (in particular its proofs) are syntactically correct?
- 2) Is there a “mechanical procedure” to decide if a sentence in a given theory possesses a proof?
- 3) Is there a “mechanical procedure” to find a proof for a theorem in a given theory provided that we know it possesses a proof?

None of these questions is correct in Metalanguage because quantifiers are being implicitly used. But one can “informally” ask these questions in English (viewed as an object language) and give “informal” answers in English. The informal answers are then YES for 1 for all theories, YES for 2 and 3 for some (trivial) theories and NO for 2 and 3 for (“most”) other theories. The NO answer for 2 and 3 is what makes Mathematics a “creative activity.” The YES for 1 is justified by examining the rules of proof. The NO for 2 and 3 are justified by creating a mirror of these questions inside Mathematics (in what is called *Mathematical Logic*) and proving theorems in Mathematics that “correspond” to the NO answers mentioned above. Whether or not this “correspondence” is acceptable is a philosophical issue that we will not address here. It is interesting to compare the NO answer to question 2 above with the existence of a “mechanical procedure” to decide if a given sentence is a tautology or not (Cf. Remark 4.10); the key difference between deciding provability versus deciding tautology comes from the use of quantifiers in the first context versus the absence of quantifiers in the second context. This reflects the corresponding difference between object languages and Metalanguage and it provides a sharp dividing line between the two.

EXAMPLE 5.6. We consider in what follows a simple example of theory called *Group Theory*. The language L of group theory has a constant e , variables x, y, \dots , and a binary functional symbol \star . We introduce the following:

Definition 1. For all z , z is a neutral element if and only if

$$\forall x((z \star x = x) \wedge (x \star z = x)).$$

(This defines “*is a neutral element*” as a new unary predicate.)

Definition 2. For all x and all y , y is an inverse of x if and only if $x \star y = y \star x = e$.

(This defines “*is an inverse of*” as a new binary predicate.)

The specific axioms of the theory are:

Axiom 1. For all x, y, z we have $x \star (y \star z) = (x \star y) \star z$.

Axiom 2. e is a neutral element.

Axiom 3. For all x there is y such that y is an inverse of x .

Theorem 1. For all z if z is a neutral element then $z = e$.

Proof. Let f be arbitrary. We want to show that if f is a neutral element then $f = e$. Since e is a neutral element it follows that $\forall x(e \star x = x)$. By the latter $e \star f = f$. Since f is a neutral element we get $\forall x(x \star f = x)$. So $e \star f = e$. Hence we get $e = e \star f$ and so $e = f$. \square

Theorem 2. For all x, y, z if y and z are inverses of x then $y = z$.

Proof. Let a, b, c be arbitrary and assume that b and c are inverses of a . We want to show that $b = c$. By Axioms 1 and 2 and Definition 2 we have

$$b \star e = b \star (a \star c) = (b \star a) \star c = e \star c = c.$$

\square

In view of Axiom 3 and Theorem 2 we can introduce a functional symbol denoted by attaching the term t^{-1} to any term t via the following

Definition 3. $\forall x \forall y((y = x^{-1}) \leftrightarrow (x \star y = y \star x = e))$

One can continue the theory above by introducing more definitions and axioms and by proving more theorems; and then, again, introducing further definitions, further axioms, and proving further theorems, etc. In this way group theory can grow. We are not going to pursue this here. By the way, group theory, in the sense above, will not be very interesting. On the other hand one can create a mirror of group theory inside Set Theory. The *models* (in a technical sense to be clarified later, see the Chapter on Models) of that mirror will be called *groups*. Inside Set Theory examples of groups will be the set of non-zero real numbers with \star the usual multiplication and $e = 1$; or the set of all invertible real matrices with \star the usual multiplication of matrices and e the identity matrix. All of these objects will be introduced later.

EXERCISE 5.7. Explain what rules were used in our proofs of Theorems 1 and 2 above.

In what follows we discuss more systematically various examples of types of proofs. In the examples that follow we assume we are dealing with a theory (which is not necessarily the one considered before) in which we have axioms A, B, \dots . For simplicity we begin with examples of proofs where only rules 1-2 above is being used (i.e., the rules 3-6 regarding witnesses are not being used).

EXAMPLE 5.8. (Direct proof). A direct proof could look as follows.

Theorem. $H \rightarrow C$.

Proof. Assume H . We want to prove C . Since H and A it follows that X . Since X and S it follows that Z . Since Z it follows that C . \square

The above counts as a proof if

$$S, \quad H \wedge A \rightarrow X, \quad X \wedge S \rightarrow Z, \quad Z \rightarrow C$$

are accepted sentences.

EXAMPLE 5.9. (Proof by contradiction). Another method of proving sentences such as $H \rightarrow C$ is by contradiction and may look as follows.

Theorem 1. $H \rightarrow C$.

Proof. Assume both H and $\neg C$ and seek a contradiction. Since $\neg C$ and A it follows that Y . On the other hand since H and S it follows that $\neg Y$. So we get that $Y \wedge \neg Y$ which is a contradiction. We conclude that $H \rightarrow C$. \square

The above counts as a proof if

$$S, \quad (\neg C) \wedge A \rightarrow Y, \quad H \wedge B \rightarrow \neg Y$$

are accepted sentences.

The above proof can be thought of as an abbreviation of the following two Theorems whose proofs are direct proofs:

Theorem 2. $(H \wedge \neg C) \rightarrow (Y \wedge \neg Y)$

Proof. Assume H and $\neg C$. Since $\neg C$ and A it follows that Y . On the other hand since H and S it follows that $\neg Y$. So we get that $Y \wedge \neg Y$. \square

Theorem 3. $H \rightarrow C$

Proof. Assume H . Since $(H \wedge \neg C) \rightarrow (Y \wedge \neg Y)$ and H it follows that $H \rightarrow C$. \square

A direct proof of Theorem 1 can be given by using Theorems 2 and 3 because

$$((H \wedge \neg C) \rightarrow (Y \wedge \neg Y)) \rightarrow (H \rightarrow C)$$

is a tautology and hence it is an accepted sentence.

EXAMPLE 5.10. Direct proofs and proofs by contradiction can be given to sentences which are not necessarily of the form $H \rightarrow C$. Here is an example of a proof by contradiction.

Theorem. C .

Proof. Assume $\neg C$ and seek a contradiction. Since $\neg C$ and A it follows that X . Since A and X we get Y . On the other hand since B and $\neg C$ we get $\neg Y$. So $Y \wedge \neg Y$, which is a contradiction. This ends the proof. \square

The above counts as a proof if

$$(\neg C) \wedge A \rightarrow X, \quad A \wedge X \rightarrow Y, \quad B \wedge \neg C \rightarrow \neg Y$$

are accepted sentences.

EXAMPLE 5.11. (Case by case proof) Say we want to prove a theorem of the form:

Theorem. $(H' \vee H'') \rightarrow C$.

Proof. There are two cases: Case 1 is H' ; Case 2 is H'' . Assume first that H' . From the axiom A and H' we get P . So C . Now assume that H'' . Since B and H'' it follows that X . Since X we get C . So in either case we get C . This ends the proof. \square

The above counts as a proof if

$$A \wedge H' \rightarrow P, \quad P \rightarrow C, \quad H'' \wedge B \rightarrow X, \quad X \rightarrow C$$

are accepted sentences.

The above “case by case” strategy applies more generally to theorems of the form

Theorem. $H \rightarrow C$

Proof. There are two cases:

Case 1: W holds.

Case 2: $\neg W$ holds.

Assume first we are in Case 1. Then by A and W we get P . So C .

Now assume we are in Case 2. Since B and $\neg W$ it follows that X . Since X we get C .

So in either case we get C . This ends the proof. \square

The above counts as a proof if W is any sentence and

$$A \wedge W \rightarrow P, \quad P \rightarrow C, \quad (\neg W) \wedge B \rightarrow X, \quad X \rightarrow C$$

are accepted sentences.

Note that, in the latter proof, finding a sentence W and dividing the proof in two cases according as W or $\neg W$ holds is usually a creative act: one needs to guess what W will work.

Finally note that the case by case proof above should be viewed, again, as an abbreviation of a direct proof in the same way in which proofs by contradiction were reduced to direct proofs. Indeed what one can do is first give a direct proof of:

Theorem. $(H \wedge W) \rightarrow C$

Then give a direct proof of:

Theorem. $(H \wedge \neg W) \rightarrow C$

Then finally prove:

Theorem. $H \rightarrow C$

using the fact that

$$(((H \wedge W) \rightarrow C) \wedge (H \wedge \neg W) \rightarrow C) \rightarrow (H \rightarrow C)$$

is a tautology. We leave the details to the reader. So after all there is only one basic type of proof, the direct proof.

EXAMPLE 5.12. Here is an example that combines proof by contradiction with “case by case” proof. Say we want to prove:

Theorem. $H \rightarrow C$.

Proof. Assume H and $\neg C$ and seek a contradiction. There are two cases:

Case 1. W holds.

Case 2. $\neg W$ holds.

In case 1, by ... we get ... hence a contradiction. In case 2, by ... we get ... hence a contradiction. This ends the proof. \square

EXAMPLE 5.13. Sometimes a theorem U has the statement:

Theorem. The following conditions are equivalent:

- 1) P ;
- 2) Q ;
- 3) R .

What is being meant is that U is

$$(P \leftrightarrow Q) \wedge (P \leftrightarrow R) \wedge (Q \leftrightarrow R)$$

One proceeds “in a circle” by proving first $P \rightarrow Q$ then $Q \rightarrow R$ then $R \rightarrow P$.

EXAMPLE 5.14. In order to prove a theorem of the form $P \wedge Q$ one first proves P and proves Q .

EXAMPLE 5.15. In order to prove a theorem of the form $P \vee Q$ one may proceed by contradiction as follows. Assume $\neg P$ and $\neg Q$ and one seeks a contradiction.

EXAMPLE 5.16. In order to prove a theorem U of the form $P \leftrightarrow Q$ one first proves $P \rightarrow Q$ and then one proves $Q \rightarrow P$.

Next we consider examples of proofs where, in addition to rules 1-2, the rules 3-6 (governing witnesses) are being used as well.

EXAMPLE 5.17. Here is an example of proof by contradiction that involves witnesses. Here $P(x)$ is any formula with exactly one free variable x .

Theorem. $(\forall x(\neg P(x))) \rightarrow (\neg(\exists x P(x)))$.

Proof. Assume both $\forall x(\neg P(x))$ and $\neg\neg(\exists x P(x))$ and seek a contradiction. Since $\neg\neg(\exists x P(x))$ it follows that $\exists x P(x)$. Let e be such that $P(e)$. Now since $\forall x(\neg P(x))$ we get in particular $\neg P(e)$, a contradiction. This ends the proof. \square

The constant e introduced in the proof is a new constant, is being added to the language before the proof and CAN NEVER BE USED AGAIN after the proof; it is an existential witness.

EXAMPLE 5.18. A proof can start as a direct proof and involve later an embedded argument by contradiction. Here is an example (which also involves witnesses).

Theorem. $(\neg(\exists x P(x))) \rightarrow (\forall x(\neg P(x)))$.

Proof. Assume $\neg(\exists xP(x))$. We want to show that $\forall x(\neg P(x))$. Let a be arbitrary; we want to show that $\neg P(a)$. Assume $\neg\neg P(a)$ and seek a contradiction. Since $\neg\neg P(a)$ it follows that $P(a)$. Since $P(a)$ it follows that $\exists xP(x)$. But we assumed $\neg(\exists xP(x))$. This is a contradiction which ends the proof. \square

The constant a in the above proof is a universal witness; it is being added to the language before the proof and CAN NEVER BE USED AGAIN after the proof.

EXERCISE 5.19. Prove the following:

Theorem. $(\neg(\forall xP(x))) \leftrightarrow (\exists x(\neg P(x)))$

EXAMPLE 5.20. In the same way one can prove

Theorem. $(\neg(\forall x\exists yP(x, y))) \leftrightarrow (\exists x\forall y(\neg P(x, y)))$.

Proof. We first prove the implication \rightarrow .

Assume $\neg(\forall x\exists yP(x, y))$ and $\neg(\forall x\exists y(\neg P(x, y)))$ and seek a contradiction. By Theorem in Example 5.19 we get $\exists x(\neg(\exists y(\neg P(x, y))))$. Let c be such that we have $\neg(\exists y(\neg(P(c, y))))$. By the Theorem in Example 5.18 we get that $\forall y(\neg\neg P(c, y))$. So $\exists x\forall yP(x, y)$, a contradiction.

We now prove the implication \leftarrow .

Assume $\exists x\forall y(\neg P(x, y))$ and $\forall x\exists yP(x, y)$ and seek a contradiction. Let d be such that $\forall y(\neg P(d, y))$. Since $\forall x\exists yP(x, y)$ it follows that $\exists yP(d, y)$. Since $\forall y(\neg P(d, y))$ it follows from the Theorem in Example 5.18 that $\neg(\exists yP(d, y))$, a contradiction.

EXAMPLE 5.21. In the same way one can prove theorems of the form

Theorem. $(\neg(\forall x\forall y\exists z\forall tP(x, y, z, t))) \leftrightarrow (\exists x\exists y\forall z\exists(\neg P(x, y, z, t)))$.

Etc. In other words to negate a sentence that starts with quantifiers one “flips” the quantifiers \forall and \exists and one negates the predicate involved.

EXAMPLE 5.22. If the theorem that is to be proved has the form

Theorem. $\exists xP(x)$

then one proceeds as follows. One starts the proof with the sentence “It is sufficient to prove that $P(c)$ ” where c is a constant that HAS BEEN USED BEFORE the statement of the theorem; such a constant is called a (non-local) *existential witness* and CAN BE USED after the end of the proof. Then one provides a proof for $P(c)$. Schematically we have

Proof. It is sufficient to prove that $P(c)$. By ... it follows that... Hence So we conclude that $P(c)$. \square

This is justified by noting that one can first prove the

Theorem. $P(c)$

and then one proves the Theorem $\exists xP(x)$ by using Rule 5.

METADefinition 5.23. Let S be a sentence. A negation of S is a sentence R such that $\neg S \leftrightarrow R$ is a theorem. We say that a negation R of S is in reduced form if the connective \rightarrow does not appear in R and the connective \neg only appears in R in front of atomic formulae contained in R .

EXAMPLE 5.24. Let P, Q be atomic sentences. Let S be the sentence

$$P \wedge Q$$

Let S', S'' be the sentences

$$S' = \text{“}\neg(P \wedge Q)\text{”}$$

$$S'' = \text{“}\neg P \vee \neg Q\text{”}$$

Then S' is a negation of S but is it not in reduced form because \neg appears in front of a non-atomic formula. On the other hand S'' is a negation of S in reduced form. It is a negation because

$$\neg(P \wedge Q) \leftrightarrow (\neg P \vee \neg Q)$$

is a tautology (hence a theorem); it is in reduced form because \neg appears in it only in front of atomic formulae and \rightarrow does not appear in S'' .

EXAMPLE 5.25. We claim that we have the following

$$\textit{Theorem. } (\neg(\exists x(P(x) \wedge Q(x)))) \leftrightarrow (\forall x(\neg P(x) \vee \neg Q(x)))$$

So the negation in reduced form of $\exists x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))$ is $\forall x(\neg P(x) \vee \neg Q(x))$. Note that $\neg(\exists x(P(x) \wedge Q(x)))$ is also a negation of $\exists x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))$ but it is not in reduced form because \neg in it does not appear in front of an atomic formula. Here is the proof of the Theorem.

Proof. We check the implication \rightarrow ; the converse is similar.

Assume $(\neg(\exists x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))))$; we want to prove that $\forall x(\neg P(x) \vee \neg Q(x))$. To prove that $\forall x(\neg P(x) \vee \neg Q(x))$ we consider an arbitrary b and we need to show that $\neg P(b) \vee \neg Q(b)$. Hence we need to show that $\neg(P(b) \wedge Q(b))$. Assume $P(b) \wedge Q(b)$ and seek a contradiction. Since $P(b) \wedge Q(b)$ it follows that $\exists x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))$, a contradiction. \square

EXERCISE 5.26. Find negations in reduced form of the following sentences. (Provide the answers but do not provide proofs justifying your answers.) In this exercise P, Q are atomic formulae involving two variables.

- 1) $\forall x \forall y (P(x, y) \wedge Q(x, y))$.
- 2) $\forall x \forall y (P(x, y) \vee Q(x, y))$.
- 3) $\exists x \forall y (P(x, y) \rightarrow (\exists z Q(z, y)))$.
- 4) $(\exists x \forall y P(x, y)) \rightarrow (\forall y \exists x Q(x, y))$.

EXERCISE 5.27. Formalize the following sentences. Find the negations in reduced form of those formalizations. Translate into English those negations.

- 1) If Plato is a bird then Plato eats nuts.
- 2) John is not Plato and Paul is not Aristotle.
- 3) For every line and every point that does not belong to the line there exists no line passing through the point and parallel to the first line.
- 4) For every line and every point that does not belong to the line there exists at least two distinct lines passing through the point and parallel to the first line.
- 5) For every ϵ there exists δ such that for all x if $|x-a| < \delta$ then $|f(x)-f(a)| < \epsilon$. (Here f and $| \cdot |$ are unary functions and $<$ is a binary predicate. The sentence above plays a role in analysis.)

We next introduce the predicate “is inconsistent” into metalanguage.

METAAXIOM 5.28. If T is a theory and A is a sentence in T and $A \wedge \neg A$ is in T then the theory T is inconsistent. If T is an extension of T' then T' is inconsistent.

REMARK 5.29. One is tempted to make a metadefinition along the following lines: A theory is inconsistent if there exists an extension of that theory that contains a sentence of the form $A \wedge \neg A$. A theory is consistent if it is not inconsistent. A theory is complete if there is an extension of the theory such that for any sentence A in L either A belongs to the extension or $\neg A$ belongs to the extension. A theory is incomplete if it is not complete. **However the above metadefinition is not correct** in our setting because it contains quantifiers. The concepts of Logic suggested here can be imitated by concepts in Set Theory (i.e., in Mathematics; cf. our last Chapter) and then theorems about set theoretic completeness and consistency can be proved in Set Theory (Gödel's theorems, for instance, which will not be touched in this course); however these latter theorems are not metatheorems in Logic (i.e., about sentences) but rather theorems in Set Theory (i.e., about nothing).

We end by discussing fallacies. A fallacy is a logical mistake. Here are some typical fallacies:

EXAMPLE 5.30. *Confusing an implication with its converse.* Say we want to prove that $H \rightarrow C$. A typical mistaken proof would be: Assume C ; then by ... we get that ... hence H . The error consists of having proved $C \rightarrow H$ rather than $H \rightarrow C$.

EXAMPLE 5.31. *Proving a universal sentence by example.* Say we want to prove $\forall xP(x)$. A typical mistaken proof would be: By ... there exists c such that ... hence ... hence $P(c)$. The error consists in having proved $\exists xP(x)$ rather than $\forall xP(x)$.

EXAMPLE 5.32. *Defining a constant twice.* Say we want to prove $\neg(\exists xP(x))$ by contradiction. A mistaken proof would be: Assume there exists c such that $P(c)$. Since we know that $\exists xQ(x)$ let c be (or define c) such that $Q(c)$. By $P(c)$ and $Q(c)$ we get ... hence ..., a contradiction. The error consists in defining c twice in two unrelated ways: first c plays the role of an existential witness for P ; then c plays the role of an existential witness for Q . But these existential witnesses are not the same.

EXERCISE 5.33. Give examples of wrong proofs of each of the above types. If you can't solve this now, wait until we get to discuss the integers.

REMARK 5.34. Later, when we discuss induction we will discuss another typical fallacy; cf. Example 13.8.

CHAPTER 6

Examples

We analyze in what follows some toy examples of theories that are unrelated to Mathematics. Later we will present the main example of theory in this course which is Set Theory (identified with Mathematics itself). This chapter will not be used in the sequel and may be skipped.

EXAMPLE 6.1. We begin with “Pascal’s wager.” The structure of Pascal’s wager argument is as follows. If God exists and I believe it exists then I will be saved. If God exists and I do not believe it exists then I will not be saved. If God does not exist but I believe it exists I will not be saved. Finally if God does not exist and I do not believe it exists then I will not be saved. Pascal’s conclusion is that if he believes that God exists then there is a one chance in two that he be saved whereas if he does not believe that God exists then there is a zero chance that he be saved. So he should believe that God exists. The next example is a variation of Pascal’s wager showing that if one requires “sincere” belief rather than just belief based on Logic then Pascal will not be saved. Indeed assume the specific axioms:

Axiom 1. If God exists and a person does not believe sincerely in its existence then that person will not be saved.

Axiom 2. If God does not exist then nobody will be saved.

Axiom 3. If a person believes that God exists and his/her belief is motivated only by Pascal’s wager then that person does not believe sincerely.

We want to prove the following

Theorem 1. If Pascal believes that God exists but his belief is motivated by his own wager only then Pascal will not be saved.

All of the above is formulated in the English language L' . We consider a simpler language L and a translation of L into L' .

The new language L contains among its constant p (for Pascal) and contains 4 unary predicates g, w, s, r whose translation in English is as follows:

g is translated as “*is God*”

w is translated as “*believes motivated only by Pascal’s wager*”

s is translated as “*believes sincerely*”

r is translated as “*is saved*”

The specific axioms are

Axiom 1. $\forall y((\exists x g(x)) \wedge (\neg s(y)) \rightarrow \neg r(y))$.

Axiom 2. $\forall y((\neg(\exists x g(x))) \rightarrow (\neg r(y)))$.

Axiom 3. $\forall y(w(y) \rightarrow (\neg(s(y))))$.

In this language Theorem 1 is the translation of the following:

Theorem 2. If $w(p)$ then $\neg r(p)$.

So to prove Theorem 1 in L' it is enough to prove Theorem 2 in L . We will do this by using a combination of direct proof and case by case proof.

Proof of Theorem 2. Assume $w(p)$. There are two cases: the first case is $\exists xg(x)$; the second case is $\neg(\exists xg(x))$. Assume first that $\exists xg(x)$. Since $w(p)$, by Axiom 3 it follows that $\neg s(p)$. By Axiom 1 $(\exists xg(x)) \wedge (\neg s(p)) \rightarrow \neg r(p)$. Hence $\neg r(p)$. Assume now $\neg(\exists xg(x))$. By Axiom 2 we then get again $\neg r(p)$. So in either case we get $\neg r(p)$ which ends the proof. \square

EXAMPLE 6.2. Here is the structure of “Descartes’ cogito.” We consider a language L containing the constant “I”, the unary predicates “think” and “exist” and the binary predicate “doubts.” Also consider the axioms (written in Argot):

Axiom 1. For all y I doubt y . (Absolute doubt.)

Axiom 2. For all x and all y if x doubts y then x thinks. (Doubting is a form of thinking.)

Axiom 3. For all x if x thinks then x exists. (The cogito.)

We have the following

Theorem 1. I exist.

Proof. From Axiom 1 we get that I doubt I. From Axiom 2 (making x and y equal to I) we get that if I doubt I then I think. From the latter and Axiom 3 (with x replaced by I) we get that I exist. \square

EXAMPLE 6.3. The next example is the famous “ontological argument” for the existence of God (cf. Anselm, Descartes, Leibnitz, Gödel). The version below is, in some sense, a “baby version” of the argument; Gödel’s formalization (which he never published) is considerably subtler. Cf. (Wang 1996). The structure of the classical ontological argument for the existence of God is as follows. Let us assume that qualities (same as properties) are either positive or negative (and none is both). Let us think of *existence* as having 2 kinds: *existence in mind* (which shall be referred to as *belonging to mind*) and *existence in reality* (which shall be referred to as *belonging to reality*). It is not important that we do not know what mind and reality are; we just see them as English words here. The 2 kinds are not necessarily related: belonging to mind does not imply (and is not implied by) belonging to reality. (In particular we do *not* view mind necessarily as part of reality which we should not: unicorns belong to mind but not to reality.) The constants and variables refer to things (myself, my cat, God,...) or qualities (red, omnipresent, deceiving, eternal, murderous, mortal,...); we identify the latter with their extensions which are, again, things (the Red, the Omnipresent, the Deceiving, the Eternal, the Murderous, the Mortal,...) In particular we consider the following constants: *reality, mind, God, the Positive Qualities*. We also consider the binary predicate *belongs to*. We say a thing has a certain quality (e.g. *my cat is eternal*)

if that thing belongs to the extension of that quality (e.g. *my cat belongs to the Eternal*). Assume the following axioms:

Axiom 1. There exists a thing belonging to mind that has all the positive qualities and no negative quality.

Axiom 2. “Being real” is a positive quality.

Axiom 3. Two things belonging to mind that have exactly the same qualities are identical. (This is Leibniz’s famous principle of *identity of indiscernibles*.)

Axioms 1 and 3 allow defining God as the only thing in mind which has all positive qualities and no negative quality; then one can prove the following:

Theorem 1. Being real is a quality belonging to God.

In other words God is real.

The above sentences are written in the English language L' . Let us formalize the above in a language L and prove a formal version of Theorem 1 in L whose translation is Theorem 1. Assume L contains among its constants the constants r, m, p and a binary predicate β . We consider a translation of L into L' such that

r is translated as “reality” or “being real”;
 m is translated as “mind”;
 p is translated as “the positive qualities”
 $x\beta y$ is translated as “ x belongs to y ”.

The specific axioms are:

Axiom 1. $\exists x((x\beta m) \wedge (\forall z((z\beta p) \leftrightarrow (z\beta x))))$.

Axiom 2. $r\beta p$.

Axiom 3. $\forall x\forall y(((x\beta m) \wedge (y\beta m)) \rightarrow ((\forall z(z\beta x \leftrightarrow z\beta y)) \rightarrow (x = y)))$.

Note that later, in Set Theory, we will have a predicate \in which, like β , will be translated as “belongs to” (as in an object belongs to the collection of objects that have a certain quality); but the axioms are different.

In view of Axioms 1 and 3 we may introduce a new constant G and the following:

Definition 1. $\forall x((x = G) \leftrightarrow ((x\beta m) \wedge (\forall z((z\beta p) \leftrightarrow (z\beta x))))$.

We will translate G as “God”. The translation of the above in English is: “*Something is God if and only if that something is in my mind and has all the positive qualities but no negative quality.*” We have the following Theorem whose translation in L' is “*Reality is a quality belonging to God*”:

Theorem 3. $r\beta G$.

Proof. By Axiom 1 we have $G\beta m$ and

$$\forall z((z\beta p) \leftrightarrow (z\beta G)).$$

Hence we have, in particular,

$$(r\beta p) \leftrightarrow (r\beta G).$$

By Axiom 2, $r\beta p$. Hence $r\beta G$. □

The argument above is, of course, correct. What is questionable is the choice of the axioms and the reference of L . Also recall that, in our course, the question of truth was not addressed; so it does not make sense to ask whether the English sentence “*God has existence in reality*” is true or false. For criticism of the relevance of this argument (or similar ones) see, for instance, (Kant 1991) and (Wang 1996). However, the mere fact that some of the most distinguished logicians of all times (in particular Leibniz and Gödel) took this argument seriously shows that the argument has merit and, in particular, cannot be dismissed on trivial grounds.

EXERCISE 6.4. Explain why Definition 1 in Example 6.3 above is correct.

EXAMPLE 6.5. The next example is again a toy example and comes from physics. In order to present this example we do not need to introduce any physical concepts. But it would help to keep in mind the two slit experiment in quantum mechanics (for which we refer to Feynman’s Physics course, say). Now there are two types of physical theories that can be referred to as *phenomenological* and *explanatory*. They are intertwined but very different in nature. Phenomenological theories are simply descriptions of phenomena/effects of (either actual or possible) experiments; examples of such theories are those of Ptolemy, Copernicus, or that of pre-quantum experimental physics of radiation. Explanatory theories are systems postulating transcendent causes that act from behind phenomena; examples of such theories are those of Newton, Einstein, or quantum theory. The theory below is a baby example of the phenomenological (pre-quantum) theory of radiation; our discussion is therefore not a discussion of quantum mechanics but rather it suggests the necessity of introducing quantum mechanics. The language L' and definitions are those of experimental/phenomenological (rather than theoretical/explanatory) physics. We will not make them explicit. Later we will move to a simplified language L and will not care about definitions.

Consider the following specific axioms (which are the translation in English of the phenomenological predictions of classical particle mechanics and classical wave mechanics, respectively):

Axiom 1. If radiation in the 2 slit experiment consists of a beam of particles then the impact pattern on the photographic plate consists of a series of successive flashes and the pattern has 2 local maxima.

Axiom 2. If radiation in the 2 slit experiment is a wave then the impact pattern on the photographic plate is not a series of successive flashes and the pattern has more than 2 local maxima.

We want to prove the following

Theorem 1. If in the 2 slit experiment the impact consists of a series of successive flashes and the impact pattern has more than 2 local maxima then in this experiment radiation is neither a beam of particles nor a wave.

The sentence reflects one of the elementary puzzles that quantum phenomena exhibit: radiation is neither particles nor waves but something else! And that something else requires a new theory which is quantum mechanics. (A common fallacy would be to conclude that radiation is both particles and waves !!!) Rather than analyzing the language L' of physics in which our axioms and sentence are

stated (and the semantics that goes with it) let us introduce a simplified language L as follows.

We consider the language L with constants a, b, \dots , variables x, y, \dots , and unary predicates p, w, f, m . Then there is a translation of L into L' such that:

p is translated as “is a beam of particles”
 w is translated as “is a wave”
 f is translated as “produces a series of successive flashes”
 m is translated as “produces a pattern with 2 local maxima”

Then we consider the specific axioms

Axiom 1. $\forall x(p(x) \rightarrow (f(x) \wedge m(x)))$.
Axiom 2. $\forall x(w(x) \rightarrow (\neg f(x) \wedge \neg m(x)))$.

Here we tacitly assume that the number of maxima cannot be 1. Theorem 1 above is the translation of the following theorem in L :

Theorem 2. $\forall x((f(x) \wedge (\neg m(x))) \rightarrow ((\neg p(x)) \wedge (\neg w(x))))$.

So it is enough to prove Theorem 2. The proof below is, as we shall see, a combination of proof by contradiction and case by case.

Proof. We proceed by contradiction. So assume there exists a such that

$$f(a) \wedge (\neg m(a))$$

and

$$\neg(\neg p(a) \wedge (\neg w(a)))$$

and seek a contradiction. Since $\neg(\neg p(a) \wedge (\neg w(a)))$ we get $p(a) \vee w(a)$. There are two cases. The first case is $p(a)$; the second case is $w(a)$. We will get a contradiction in each of these cases separately. Assume first $p(a)$. Then by Axiom 1 we get $f(a) \wedge m(a)$, hence $m(a)$. But we assumed $f(a) \wedge (\neg m(a))$, hence $\neg m(a)$, so we get a contradiction. Assume now $w(a)$. By Axiom 2 we get $(\neg f(a)) \wedge (\neg m(a))$ hence $\neg f(a)$. But we assumed $f(a) \wedge (\neg m(a))$, hence $f(a)$, so we get again a contradiction. \square

EXERCISE 6.6. Consider the specific Axioms 1 and 2 in Example 6.5 above and also the specific axioms:

Axiom 3. $\exists x(f(x) \wedge (\neg m(x)))$.
Axiom 4. $\forall x(p(x) \vee w(x))$.

Metaprove that the theory with specific Axioms 1, 2, 3, 4 is inconsistent. Axiom 3 is translated as saying that in some experiments one sees a series of successive flashes and, at the same time, one has more than 2 maxima. Axiom 4 is translated as saying that any type of radiation is either particles or waves. The inconsistency of the theory says that classical (particle and wave) mechanics is not consistent with experiment. (So a new mechanics, quantum mechanics, is needed.) Note that none of the above discussion has anything to do with any concrete proposal for a quantum mechanical theory; all that the above suggests is the necessity of such a theory.

EXAMPLE 6.7. The next example is a logical puzzle from the Mahabharata. King Yudhishthira loses his kingdom to Sakuni at a game of dice; then he stakes himself and he loses himself; then he stakes his wife Draupadi and loses her too. She objects by saying that her husband could not have staked her because he did not own her anymore after losing himself. Here is a possible formalization of her argument.

We use a language with constants i, d, \dots , variables x, y, z, \dots , the binary predicate “owns,” quantifiers, and equality $=$. We define a predicate \neq by $(x \neq y) \leftrightarrow (\neg(x = y))$. Consider the following specific axioms:

Axiom 1. For all x, y, z if x owns y and y owns z then x owns z .

Axiom 2. For all y there exists x such that x owns y .

Axiom 3. For all x, y, z if y owns x and z owns x then $y = z$.

We will prove the following

Theorem. If i does not own himself then i does not own d .

Proof. We proceed by contradiction. So we assume i does not own i and i owns d and seek a contradiction. There are two cases: first case is d owns i ; the second case is d does not own i . We prove that in each case we get a contradiction. Assume first that d owns i ; since i owns d , by Axiom 1, i owns i , a contradiction. Assume now d does not own i . By Axiom 2 we know that there exists j such that j owns i . Since i does not own i it follows that $j \neq i$. Since j owns i and i owns d , by Axiom 1, j owns d . But i also owns d . By Axiom 3, $i = j$, a contradiction. \square

EXAMPLE 6.8. This example illustrates the logical structure of the Newtonian theory of gravitation that unified Galileo’s phenomenological theory of falling bodies (the physics on Earth) with Kepler’s phenomenological theory of planetary motion (the physics of “Heaven”); Newton’s theory counts as an explanatory theory because its axioms go beyond the “facts” of experiment. The language L in which we are going to work has variables x, y, \dots , constants S, E, M (translated into English as “Sun, Earth, Moon”), a constant R (translated as “the radius of the Earth”), constants $1, \pi, r$ (where r is translated as a particular rock), predicates p, c, n (translated into English as “is a planet, is a cannonball, is a number”), a binary predicate \circ (whose syntax is $x \circ y$ and whose translation in English is “ x revolves around the fixed body y ”), a binary predicate f (where $f(x, y)$ is translated as “ x falls freely under the influence of y ”), a binary functional symbol d (“distance between the centers of”), a unary functional symbol a (“acceleration”), a unary functional symbol T (where $T(x, y)$ is translated as “period of revolution of x around y ”), binary functions $:, \times$ (“division, multiplication”), and all the standard connectives, quantifiers, and parentheses. Note that we have no predicates for mass and force; this is remarkable because it shows that the Newtonian revolution has a purely geometric content. Now we introduce a theory T in L via its special axioms. The special axioms are as follows. First one asks that distances are numbers:

$$\forall x \forall y (n(d(x, y)))$$

and the same for accelerations, and times of revolution. (Note that we view all physical quantities as measured in centimeters and seconds.) For numbers we ask that multiplication and division of numbers are numbers:

$$(n(x) \wedge n(y)) \rightarrow (n(x : y) \wedge n(x \times y))$$

and that the usual laws relating $:$ and \times hold. Here are two:

$$\begin{aligned} &\forall x(x : x = 1). \\ &\forall x \forall y \forall z \forall u((x : y = z : u) \leftrightarrow (x \times u = z \times y)). \end{aligned}$$

It is an easy exercise to write down all these laws. We sometimes write

$$\frac{x}{y}, 1/x, xy, x^2, x^3, \dots$$

in the usual sense. The above is a “baby Mathematics” and this is all Mathematics we need. Next we introduce an axiom whose justification is in Mathematics, indeed in calculus; here we ignore the justification and just take this as an axiom. The axiom gives a formula for the acceleration of a body revolving in a circle around a fixed body. (See the exercise after this example.) Here is the axiom:

$$\text{Axiom } A. \forall x \forall y \left((x \circ y) \rightarrow (a(x, y) = \frac{4\pi^2 d(x, y)}{T^2(x, y)}) \right).$$

To this one adds the following “obvious” axioms

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Axiom } O1. &\forall x(c(x) \rightarrow d(x, E) = R), \\ \text{Axiom } O2. &M \circ E, \\ \text{Axiom } R. &c(r), \\ \text{Axiom } K1. &\forall x(p(x) \rightarrow (x \circ S)), \end{aligned}$$

saying that the distance between cannonballs and the center of the Earth is the radius of the Earth; that the Moon revolves around the Earth; that the rock r is a cannonball; and that all planets revolve around the Sun. (The latter is Kepler’s first law in an approximate form; the full Kepler’s first law specifies the shape of orbits as ellipses, etc.) Now we consider the following sentences (NOT AXIOMS!):

$$\begin{aligned} G &= “\forall x \forall y((c(x) \wedge c(y)) \rightarrow (a(x, E) = a(y, E)))”, \\ K3 &= “\forall x \forall y \left((p(x) \wedge p(y)) \rightarrow \left(\frac{d^3(x, S)}{T^2(x, S)} = \frac{d^3(y, S)}{T^2(y, S)} \right) \right)”, \\ N &= “\forall x \forall y \forall z \left((f(x, z) \wedge f(y, z)) \rightarrow \left(\frac{a(x, z)}{1/d^2(x, z)} = \frac{a(y, z)}{1/d^2(y, z)} \right) \right)”. \end{aligned}$$

G represents Galileo’s great empirical discovery that all cannonballs (by which we mean here terrestrial airborne objects with no self-propulsion) have the same acceleration towards the Earth. $K3$ is Kepler’s third law which is his empirical great discovery that the cubes of distances of planets to the Sun are in the same proportion as the squares of their periods of revolution. Kepler’s second law about equal areas being swept in equal times is somewhat hidden in axiom A above. N is Newton’s law of gravitation saying that the accelerations of any two bodies moving freely towards a fixed body are in the same proportion as the inverses of the squares of the respective distances to the (center of the) fixed body. Newton’s great invention is the creation of a binary predicate f (where $f(x, y)$ is translated into English as “ x is in free fall with respect to y ”) equipped with the following axioms

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Axiom } F1. &\forall x(c(x) \rightarrow f(x, E)) \\ \text{Axiom } F2. &f(M, E) \\ \text{Axiom } F3. &\forall x(p(x) \rightarrow f(x, S)) \end{aligned}$$

expressing the idea that cannonballs and the Moon moving relative to the Earth and planets moving relative to the Sun are instances of a more general predicate expressing “free falling.” Finally let us consider the following

Definition. $g = a(r, E)$

and the following sentence:

$$X = “g = \frac{4\pi^2 d^3(M, E)}{R^2 T^2(M, E)}.”$$

The main results are the following theorems in T :

Theorem 1. $N \rightarrow X$.

Proof. See the exercise after this example.

Theorem 2. $N \rightarrow G$.

Proof. See the exercise after this example.

Theorem 3. $N \rightarrow K3$.

Proof. See the exercise after this example.

So if one accepts Newton’s N then Galileo’s G and Kepler’s $K3$ follow, that is to say that N “unifies” terrestrial physics with the physics of Heaven. The beautiful thing is, however, that N not only unifies known paradigms but “predicts” new “facts,” e.g., X . Indeed one can verify X using experimental (astronomical and terrestrial physics) data: if one enlarges our language to include numerals and numerical computations and if one introduces axioms as below (justified by measurements) then X becomes a theorem. Here are the additional axioms:

Axiom. $g = 981$ (the number of centimeters per second squared representing g).

Axiom. $\pi = \frac{314}{100}$ (approximate value).

Axiom. R = number of centimeters representing the radius of the Earth (measured for the first time by Eratosthenes using shadows at two points on Earth).

Axiom. $d(M, E)$ = number of centimeters representing the distance from Earth to Moon (measured using parallaxes).

Axiom. $T(M, E)$ = number of seconds representing the time of revolution of the Moon (the equivalent of 28 days).

The fact that X is verified with the above data is the miraculous computation done by Newton that convinced him of the validity of his theory; see the exercise after this example.

REMARK 6.9. This part of Newton’s early work had a series of defects: it was based on the circular (as opposed to elliptical) orbits, it assumed the center of the Earth (rather than all the mass of the Earth) as responsible for the effect on the cannonballs, it addressed only revolution around a fixed body (which is not realistic in the case of the Moon, since, for instance, the Earth itself is moving), and did not explain the difference between the d^3/T^2 of planets around the Sun and the corresponding quantity for the Moon and cannonballs relative to the Earth. Straightening these and many other problems is part of the reason why Newton postponed publication of his early discoveries. The final theory of Newton involves

the introduction of absolute space and time, mass, and forces. The natural way to develop it is within Mathematics, as mathematical physics; this is essentially the way Newton himself presented his theory in published form. However, the above example suggests that the real breakthrough was not mathematical but at the level of (general) Logic.

EXERCISE 6.10.

1) Justify Axiom A in Example 6.8 above using calculus or even Euclidean geometry plus the definition of acceleration in an introductory physics course.

2) Prove Theorems 1,2,3 in Example 6.8.

3) Verify that with the numerical data for $g, \pi, R, d(M, E), T(M, E)$ in Example 6.8 available from astronomy (find the numbers in astronomy books) the sentence X becomes a theorem. This is Newton's fundamental computation that convinced him of the plausibility of his hypothesis that the Moon and the terrestrial objects are subject to a common law.

CHAPTER 7

ZFC

Mathematics is identified with a particular theory T_{set} (called *Set Theory*) in a particular language L_{set} (called the *language of Set Theory*) with specific axioms called the *ZFC* axioms (the *Zermelo-Fraenkel+Choice* axioms). The specific axioms do not form a “finite” list so they cannot be included in the theory from the beginning; they have to be added one by one on a need to use basis to the various successive extensions of the theory.

METADEFINITION 7.1. The language L_{set} of Set Theory is the language with variables x, y, z, \dots , no constants, no functional symbol, a binary predicate \in , connectives $\vee, \wedge, \neg, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow$, quantifiers \forall, \exists , equality $=$, and separators $(,), ,$. As usual we are allowed to add, whenever it is convenient, new constants, usually denoted by

$$a, b, c, \dots, A, B, C, \dots, \mathcal{A}, \mathcal{B}, \mathcal{C}, \dots, \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \dots,$$

and new predicates to L_{set} together with definitions for each of these new symbols. The terms of L_{set} will be called *sets*.

In particular we introduce new predicates $\neq, \notin, \subset, \not\subset$ and the following definition for them:

DEFINITION 7.2.

$$\begin{aligned} \forall x \forall y ((x \neq y) &\leftrightarrow (\neg(x = y))). \\ \forall x \forall y ((x \notin y) &\leftrightarrow (\neg(x \in y))). \\ \forall x \forall y ((x \subset y) &\leftrightarrow (\forall z ((z \in x) \rightarrow (z \in y)))). \\ \forall x \forall y ((x \not\subset y) &\leftrightarrow (\neg(x \subset y))). \end{aligned}$$

DEFINITION 7.3. x is a subset of y if and only if $x \subset y$.

REMARK 7.4. We recall the fact that L_{set} being an object language it does not make sense to say that a sentence in it (such as, for instance, $a \in b$) is true or false.

REMARK 7.5. Later we will introduce the concept of “countable” set and we will show that not all sets are countable. On the other hand in Set Theory there are always only “finitely many” sets (in the sense that one is using finitely many symbols) although their collection may be increased any time, if necessary. Let us say that such a collection of symbols is “metacountable.” This seems to be a paradox which is referred to as the “Skolem paradox.” Of course this is not going to be a paradox: “metacountable” and “countable” will be two different concepts. The word “metacountable” belongs to the metalanguage and can be translated into English in terms of arranging symbols on a piece of paper; whereas “ b is countable” is a definition in Set Theory. We define “ b is countable $\leftrightarrow C(b)$ ” where $C(x)$ is a certain formula with free variable x in the language of Set Theory that will be made explicit later.

REMARK 7.6. There is a standard translation of the language L_{set} of Set Theory into the English language as follows:

- a, b, x, \dots are translated as “the set a ,” “the set b ,” “the set x ,”
- \in is translated as “*belongs to the set*” or as “*is an element of the set*”
- $=$ is translated as “*equals*”
- \subset is translated as “*is a subset of*” or as “*is contained in*”
- \forall is translated as “*for all sets*”
- \exists is translated as “*there exists a set*”

while the connectives are translated in the standard way.

REMARK 7.7. Once we have a translation of L_{set} into English we can speak of Argot and translation of L_{set} into Argot; this simplifies comprehension of mathematical texts considerably.

REMARK 7.8. The standard translation of the language of Set Theory into English (in the remark above) is standard only by convention. A perfectly good different translation is, for instance, the one in which

- a, b, \dots are translated as “*crocodile a*,” “*crocodile b*,” ...
- \in is translated as “*... is dreamt by the crocodile ...*”
- $=$ is translated as “*... has the same taste as ...*”
- \forall is translated as “*for all crocodiles ...*”
- \exists is translated as “*there exists a crocodile ...*”

One could read mathematical texts in this translation; admittedly the English text that would result from this translation would be somewhat strange.

REMARK 7.9. Note that Mathematics uses other symbols as well such as

$$\leq, \circ, +, \times, \sum a_n, \mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Q}, \mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}_p, \equiv, \lim a_n, \int f(x)dx, \frac{df}{dx}, \dots$$

These symbols will originally be all sets (hence constants) and will be introduced through appropriate definitions (like the earlier definition of an elephant); they will all be defined through the predicate \in . In particular in the language of sets, $+$ or \times are NOT originally functions; and \leq is NOT originally a predicate. However we will later tacitly enlarge the language of Set Theory by adding predicates (usually still denoted by) \leq , etc., or functions \leq , etc., via appropriate definitions.

We next introduce the (specific) axioms of Set Theory.

AXIOM 7.10. (Singleton axiom)

$$\forall x \exists y ((x \in y) \wedge (\forall z ((z \in y) \rightarrow (z = x)))).$$

The translation in Argot is that for any set x there is a set y whose only element is x .

AXIOM 7.11. (Unordered pair axiom)

$$\forall x \forall y \exists u (\forall z ((z \in u) \leftrightarrow ((z = x) \vee (z = y)))).$$

In Argot the translation is that for any two sets x, y there is a set that only has them as elements.

Next for any formula $P(x)$ in the language of sets, having a free variable x , we may introduce at any point in the theory the following:

AXIOM 7.12. (Separation axiom for P)

$$\forall y \exists z \forall x ((x \in z) \leftrightarrow ((x \in y) \wedge (P(x))))$$

The translation in Argot is that for every set y there is a set z whose elements are all the elements x of y such that $P(x)$.

EXAMPLE 7.13.

1) Taking $P(x)$ to be $x \notin x$ we may introduce at any point in the theory the axiom

$$\forall y \exists z \forall x ((x \in z) \leftrightarrow ((x \in y) \wedge (x \notin x)))$$

2) Taking $P(x)$ to be $\forall w (w \in x)$ we may introduce at any point in the theory the axiom

$$\forall y \exists z \forall x ((x \in z) \leftrightarrow ((x \in y) \wedge (\forall w (w \in x))))$$

REMARK 7.14. So we have a recipe to produce axioms rather than ONE axiom: for each $P(x)$ one has a different axiom. Such a recipe is referred to as an *axiom scheme*. Since there are “infinitely many” (“metacountably” many) P ’s one allows “infinitely many” (“metacountably” many) axioms. They are introduced one by one as needed.

REMARK 7.15. One could ask if, for any given P , one can replace the separation axiom by the “modified separation axiom”

$$\exists z \forall x ((x \in z) \leftrightarrow (P(x))).$$

The translation in Argot of this is that, “Given P , there is a set z whose elements are all the sets x such that $P(x)$.” In spite of the fact that the latter seems quite reasonable such an axiom leads, in fact, to a contradiction. Indeed a contradiction is achieved by taking $P(x)$ to be $x \notin x$ as shown in the Exercise below. This contradiction is called the *Russell paradox*. So the separation axiom cannot be replaced the “modified separation axiom” above unless one drastically changes the syntax of languages by declaring that $x \notin x$ is NOT a well formed formula. Such a change was indeed attempted by Russell who proposed instead his theory of types in which variables are of various types (type one: x, y, \dots ; type two X, Y, \dots ; type three $\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{Y}, \dots$; etc.) with the predicate \in only used as in $x \in X$, $x \in Y$, $y \in X$, $y \in Y$, $X \in \mathcal{X}$, $X \in \mathcal{Y}$, $Y \in \mathcal{X}$, $Y \in \mathcal{Y}$, etc. Russell’s theory of “types” led however to difficulties related to the fact that real numbers may have different “types.” Russell abandoned his approach and the theory of types was only later revived but we will ignore here this development.

AXIOM 7.16. (Extensionality axiom)

$$\forall u \forall v ((u = v) \leftrightarrow \forall x ((x \in u) \leftrightarrow (x \in v))).$$

The translation in Argot is that two sets u and v are equal if and only if they have the same elements.

AXIOM 7.17. (Union axiom)

$$\forall w \exists u \forall x ((x \in u) \leftrightarrow (\exists t ((t \in w) \wedge (x \in t))))$$

The translation in Argot is that for every set w there exists a set u such that for every x we have that x is an element of u if and only if x is an element of one of the elements of w . We say that u is the union of the sets in w .

AXIOM 7.18. (Empty set axiom)

$$\exists x \forall y (y \notin x).$$

We introduce a predicate “is empty” via the following:

DEFINITION 7.19. For all x , x is empty if and only if $\forall y (y \notin x)$.

So the translation in Argot of the Empty set axiom is: “*There exists an empty set.*”

AXIOM 7.20. (Power set axiom)

$$\forall y \exists z \forall x ((x \in z) \leftrightarrow (x \subset y)).$$

The translation in Argot is that for every set y there is a set z such that a set x is an element of z if and only if all elements of x are elements of y .

For simplicity the rest of the axioms will be formulated in Argot only.

DEFINITION 7.21. Two sets are disjoint if they have no element in common. The elements of a set are pairwise disjoint if any two elements are disjoint.

AXIOM 7.22. (Axiom of choice) For every non-empty set w whose elements are pairwise disjoint sets there is a set that has exactly one element in common with each of the elements of w .

DEFINITION 7.23. A set x is inductive if and only if there is an empty set w such that $w \in x$ and for all $y \in x$ there exists $z \in x$ with the property that z is the set whose only element is y .

AXIOM 7.24. (Axiom of infinity) There exists an inductive set.

Intuitively this axiom guarantees the existence of “infinite” sets; note that we have not defined “finite/infinite” sets yet.

AXIOM 7.25. (Axiom of foundation) For every non-empty set x there exists $y \in x$ such that x and y are disjoint.

One finally introduces the following axiom scheme. At any point in the theory, if $P(x, y, z)$ is a formula, one is allowed to introduce the following:

AXIOM 7.26. (Axiom of replacement for P) If for every z and every u we have that $P(x, y, z)$ “defines y as a function of $x \in u$ ” (i.e., for every $x \in u$ there exists a unique y such that $P(x, y, z)$) then for all z there is a set v which is the “image of this map” (i.e., v consists of all y ’s with the property that there is an $x \in u$ such that $P(x, y, z)$). Here x, z may be tuples of variables.

EXERCISE 7.27. Write the axioms of choice, infinity, foundation, and replacement in the language of sets.

METADefinition 7.28. All of the above axioms form the ZFC system of axioms (Zermelo-Fraenkel+Choice). Set theory T_{set} is the theory in L_{set} with ZFC axioms. Unless otherwise specified all theorems in the rest of the course are understood to be theorems in T_{set} . By abuse of terminology we continue to denote by T_{set} any extension of T_{set} .

REMARK 7.29. Note the important fact that the axioms did not involve constants. In the next chapter we will show how to introduce constants.

From this moment on all proofs in this course will be written in Argot. Also, unless otherwise stated, all proofs required to be given in the exercises must be written in Argot.

CHAPTER 8

Sets

Recall that we introduced Mathematics/Set Theory as being a specific theory T_{set} in the language L_{set} with no constants and with axioms ZFC described in the last chapter. In this Chapter we will discuss some standard ways to introduce constants and functional symbols in this theory. The terms in T_{set} are also referred to as “sets”; so “set” is another word for “term” in Set Theory. Sets will be denoted by $a, b, \dots, A, B, \dots, \mathcal{A}, \mathcal{B}, \dots, \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \dots$

In what follows all definitions will be definitions in the language L_{set} of sets. Sometimes definitions are given in Argotic L_{set} .

Note that “there is only one empty set” in the sense that we have:

THEOREM 8.1. *For all x and y if x and y are empty then $x = y$.*

Proof. Let a and b be arbitrary. Assume they are empty. We want to show that $a = b$. By the extensionality axiom we have

$$(a = b) \leftrightarrow \forall x((x \in a) \leftrightarrow (x \in b)).$$

So it is enough to show that

$$\forall x((x \in a) \leftrightarrow (x \in b)).$$

Let d be arbitrary. We want to show that

$$(d \in a) \leftrightarrow (d \in b).$$

Since $\forall y(y \notin a)$ it follows that $d \notin a$. Since $\forall y(y \notin b)$ it follows that $d \notin b$. Since $d \notin a$ and $d \notin b$ it follows

$$(d \notin a) \leftrightarrow (d \notin b).$$

Hence

$$(d \in a) \leftrightarrow (d \in b).$$

□

In view of the Empty set axiom and Theorem 8.1 we can introduce a new constant \emptyset (called the *empty set*) via the

DEFINITION 8.2. $\forall x((x = \emptyset) \leftrightarrow (\forall y(y \notin x)))$.

Next we introduce a unary functional symbol $\{ \}$ by the

DEFINITION 8.3. $\forall x \forall y(y = \{x\} \leftrightarrow \forall z((z \in y) \rightarrow (z = x)))$

REMARK 8.4. The definition is correct because, by extensionality axiom, the y in the singleton axiom is “unique.”

EXERCISE 8.5. Make the above Remark precise.

So if a is a set (i.e. a term) then $\{a\}$ is a set (i.e., a term, because it is obtained by applying a function symbol to a term); we can say (and we will usually say, by abuse of terminology) that $\{a\}$ is “the unique” set containing a only among its elements; we will often use this kind of abuse of terminology. In particular $\{\{a\}\}$ denotes the set whose only element is the set $\{a\}$, etc.

Similarly, one introduces the binary functional predicate $\{ , \}$ via the

DEFINITION 8.6. $\forall x\forall y\forall z(\{x, y\} = z \leftrightarrow (\forall u((u \in z) \leftrightarrow ((u = x) \vee (u = y))))))$

Again the definition is correct because, by extensionality axiom, the u in the unordered pair axiom is “unique.”

So if a, b are sets then $\{a, b\}$ is the set that only has a and b as elements.

REMARK 8.7. By the extensionality axiom in order to prove $A = B$ for sets A and B one needs to prove $A \subset B$ and $B \supset A$. I.e. one needs to prove:

- 1) If $x \in A$ then $x \in B$.
- 2) If $x \in B$ then $x \in A$.

EXERCISE 8.8. If $a = b$ then $\{a\} = \{a, b\}$.

PROPOSITION 8.9. If $b \neq c$ then $\{a\} \neq \{b, c\}$.

Proof. We proceed by contradiction. So assume $A = \{a\}$, $B = \{b, c\}$, and $A = B$ and seek a contradiction. Indeed since $a \in A$ and $A = B$, by the extensionality axiom we get $a \in B$. Hence $a = b$ or $a = c$. Assume $a = b$ and seek a contradiction. (In the same way we get a contradiction by assuming $a = c$.) Since $a = b$ we get $B = \{a, c\}$. Since $c \in B$ and $A = B$, by the extensionality axiom we get $c \in A$. So $c = a$. Since $a = b$ we get $b = c$. But $b \neq c$ so we get a contradiction. \square

EXERCISE 8.10. Prove that:

- 1) If $\{a\} = \{b\}$ then $a = b$.
- 2) $\{a, b\} = \{b, a\}$.
- 3) There is a set b whose only elements are $\{a\}$ and $\{a, \{a\}\}$; so

$$b = \{\{a\}, \{a, \{a\}\}\}.$$

For $P(x)$ a formula in the language of sets with one free variable x we define a unary functional symbol $\{x \in \quad | P(x)\}$ attaching to every set (term) t the set (term) $\{x \in t | P(x)\}$ via the following

DEFINITION 8.11.

$$\forall u\forall v((v = \{x \in u | P(x)\}) \leftrightarrow (\forall x((x \in v) \leftrightarrow ((x \in u) \wedge P(x)))))$$

The correctness of the definition follows from the separation and extensionality axioms.

EXERCISE 8.12. Explain in detail the correctness of the above definition.

REMARK 8.13. So if A is a set (i.e., term) then $\{x \in A | P(x)\}$ is a set (i.e., term) and is translated as “the set whose elements are the elements of A satisfying property P .” This set could be called the *extension of P in A* and corresponds to what in philosophical terminology is called the *extension of a concept*; the formula P itself corresponds to the *intension* of the concept.

If f is a functional symbol in Set Theory (introduced at some point in the theory) then we sometimes write

$$\{f(x) \in A | P(x)\}$$

instead of

$$\{y \in A \mid \exists x((f(x) = y) \wedge P(x))\}.$$

To make our definitions (notation) more reader friendly we will begin to express them in Argot as in the following example.

We introduce binary functional symbol \cup as follows.

DEFINITION 8.14. For sets A and B the set $A \cup B$ (called the *union* of A and B) is the set such that for all c , $c \in A \cup B$ if and only if $c \in A$ or $c \in B$.

The above definition is a formulation in Argot of the following definition for the binary functional symbol \cup :

$$\text{DEFINITION 8.15. } \forall x \forall y \forall z ((z = x \cup y) \leftrightarrow (\forall u ((u \in z) \leftrightarrow ((u \in x) \vee (u \in y))))))$$

Using a similar type of formulation we introduce the binary functional symbols \cap and \setminus via the following:

DEFINITION 8.16. For sets A and B the difference between the set A and the set B is the set

$$A \setminus B = \{c \in A \mid c \notin B\}.$$

DEFINITION 8.17. For sets A and B the intersection of the sets A and B is the set

$$A \cap B = \{c \in A \mid c \in B\}.$$

EXERCISE 8.18. Explain in detail the correctness of the above definitions.

EXERCISE 8.19. Prove that if a, b, c are sets then there is a set (which will be denoted by $\{a, b, c\}$) whose only elements are a, b, c ; in other words prove the following sentence:

$$\forall x \forall x' \forall x'' \exists y ((x \in y) \wedge (x' \in y) \wedge (x'' \in y) \wedge (\forall z (z \in y) \rightarrow ((z = x) \vee (z = x') \vee (z = x''))))$$

Hint: Use the singleton axiom, the unordered pair axiom, and the union axiom, applied to the set $\{\{a\}, \{b, c\}\}$.

Similarly one defines sets $\{a, b, c, d\}$, etc.

REMARK 8.20. Inside any proof, we may introduce a new constant

$$\{a, b, c, \dots\}$$

“denoting” any set that contains a, b, c (and possibly other elements); this new constant is a witness for the theorem stating that there exists a set containing a, b, c . Strictly speaking such a new constant should not be used after the end of the proof where it is used because the above definition does not pin down *all* the elements of $\{a, b, c, \dots\}$. However, by abuse of notation, the latter rule is not usually enforced.

EXERCISE 8.21.

- 1) Prove that $\{\emptyset\} \neq \emptyset$.
- 2) Prove that $\{\{\emptyset\}\} \notin \{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}$.
- 3) Prove that $\{\{\{\emptyset\}\}\} \notin \{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}, \{\{\emptyset\}\}\}$.

EXERCISE 8.22. Prove that:

- 1) $\{a, b, c\} = \{b, c, a\}$.
- 2) If $c \neq a$ and $c \neq b$ then $\{a, b\} \neq \{a, b, c\}$.

EXERCISE 8.23. Let $A = \{a, b, c\}$ and $B = \{c, d\}$ with a, b, c, d distinct (i.e., pairwise non-equal). Prove that

- 1) $A \cup B = \{a, b, c, d\}$,
- 2) $A \cap B = \{c\}$, $A \setminus B = \{a, b\}$.

EXERCISE 8.24. Let $A = \{a, b, c, d, e, f\}$, $B = \{d, e, f, g, h\}$ with a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h distinct. Compute

- 1) $A \cap B$,
- 2) $A \cup B$,
- 3) $A \setminus B$,
- 4) $B \setminus A$,
- 5) $(A \setminus B) \cup (B \setminus A)$.

EXERCISE 8.25. Prove the following:

- 1) $A \cap B \subset A$,
- 2) $A \subset A \cup B$,
- 3) $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$,
- 4) $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$,
- 5) $(A \setminus B) \cap (B \setminus A) = \emptyset$.

Hint for $A \cup (B \cap C) \supset (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$. Let $x \in (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$; we want to show that $x \in A \cup (B \cap C)$. Since $x \in (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$ we have $x \in A \cup B$ and $x \in A \cup C$. We have two cases. The first case is $x \in A$. In this case $x \in A \cup (B \cap C)$ and we are done. The second case is $x \notin A$. In this case, since $x \in A \cup B$ and $x \notin A$, we get $x \in B$; and similarly since $x \in A \cup C$ and $x \notin A$ we get $x \in C$. Since $x \in B$ and $x \in C$ we get $x \in B \cap C$ hence $x \in A \cup (B \cap C)$ and we are done again.

Next we introduce the unary functional symbol \mathcal{P} via the following:

DEFINITION 8.26. For a set A the set $\mathcal{P}(A)$ is the set whose elements are the subsets of A ; we call $\mathcal{P}(A)$ the *power set* of A .

EXERCISE 8.27. Explain in detail the correctness of this definition.

EXAMPLE 8.28. If $A = \{a, b, c\}$ with a, b, c distinct then

$$\mathcal{P}(A) = \{\emptyset, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{c\}, \{a, b\}, \{a, c\}, \{b, c\}, \{a, b, c\}\}$$

with all listed subsets distinct.

EXERCISE 8.29. Let $A = \{a, b, c, d\}$. Write down the set $\mathcal{P}(A)$.

EXERCISE 8.30. Let $A = \{a, b\}$. Write down the set $\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{P}(A))$.

Next we introduce the binary functional symbol $(,)$ via the following:

DEFINITION 8.31. (Ordered pairs) For sets a and b the ordered pair (a, b) is the set $\{\{a\}, \{a, b\}\}$.

We sometimes say “pair” instead of “ordered pair.”

Note that $(a, b) \in \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{P}(\{a, b\}))$. Also note that if $a = b$ then $(a, b) = \{\{a\}\}$.

We next introduce the binary functional symbol \times by the following:

DEFINITION 8.32. For sets A and B we define the product of A and B as the set $A \times B$ whose elements are exactly the ordered pairs with first element in A and second element in B . In other words,

$$A \times B = \{z \in \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{P}(A \cup B)) \mid \exists x \exists y ((x \in A) \wedge (y \in B) \wedge (z = (x, y)))\}.$$

PROPOSITION 8.33. $(a, b) = (c, d)$ if and only if $a = c$ and $b = d$.

Proof. We need to prove that

1) If $a = c$ and $b = d$ then $(a, b) = (c, d)$ and

2) If $(a, b) = (c, d)$ then $a = c$ and $b = d$.

Now 1) is obvious. To prove 2) assume $(a, b) = (c, d)$.

Assume first $a \neq b$ and $c \neq d$. Then by the definition of pairs we know that

$$\{\{a\}, \{a, b\}\} = \{\{c\}, \{c, d\}\}.$$

Since $\{a\} \in \{\{a\}, \{a, b\}\}$ it follows (by the extensionality axiom) that $\{a\} \in \{\{c\}, \{c, d\}\}$. Hence either $\{a\} = \{c\}$ or $\{a\} = \{c, d\}$. But as seen before $\{a\} \neq \{c, d\}$. So $\{a\} = \{c\}$. Since $a \in \{a\}$ it follows that $a \in \{c\}$ hence $a = c$. Similarly since $\{a, b\} \in \{\{a\}, \{a, b\}\}$ we get $\{a, b\} \in \{\{c\}, \{c, d\}\}$. So either $\{a, b\} = \{c\}$ or $\{a, b\} = \{c, d\}$. Again as seen before $\{a, b\} \neq \{c\}$ so $\{a, b\} = \{c, d\}$. So $b \in \{c, d\}$. So $b = c$ or $b = d$. Since $a \neq b$ and $a = c$ we get $b \neq c$. Hence $b = d$ and we are done in case $a \neq b$ and $c \neq d$.

Assume next $a = b$ and $c = d$. Then by the definition of pairs in this case we have $\{\{a\}\} = \{\{c\}\}$ and as before this implies $\{a\} = \{c\}$ hence $a = c$ so we are done in this case as well.

Finally assume $a = b$ and $c \neq d$. (The case $a \neq b$ and $c = d$ is treated similarly.) By the definition of pairs we get

$$\{\{a\}\} = \{\{c\}, \{c, d\}\}.$$

We get $\{c, d\} \in \{\{a\}\}$. Hence $\{c, d\} = \{a\}$ which is impossible, as seen before. This ends the proof. \square

EXERCISE 8.34. Prove that

$$1) (A \cap B) \times C = (A \times C) \cap (B \times C),$$

$$2) (A \cup B) \times C = (A \times C) \cup (B \times C).$$

Hint for \subset in 1). Let $x \in (A \cap B) \times C$. Then $x = (y, z)$ with $y \in A \cap B$ and $z \in C$. Since $y \in A \cap B$ we have $y \in A$ and $y \in B$. Since $y \in A$ and $z \in C$ we get $(y, z) \in A \times C$. Since $y \in B$ and $z \in C$ we get $(y, z) \in B \times C$. Since $(y, z) \in A \times C$ and $(y, z) \in B \times C$ it follows that $x = (y, z) \in (A \times C) \cap (B \times C)$.

EXERCISE 8.35. Prove that

$$\forall x(x \notin x).$$

In Argot this says that no set can be an element of itself.

Hint: Let c be a set such that $c \in c$ and seek a contradiction. Let $a = \{c\}$. Then a is non-empty so by the Axiom of foundation c and a are disjoint. But $c \cap a = c \cap \{c\} = \{c\} \neq \emptyset$, a contradiction.

EXERCISE 8.36. Prove that

$$\forall x \forall y ((x \notin y) \vee (y \notin x))$$

In Argot this says that no two sets can be both elements of each other.

Hint: Assume the contrary, let a, b be such that $a \in b$ and $b \in a$ and apply the Axiom of foundation to the set $\{a, b\}$.

EXERCISE 8.37. Prove that

$$\neg(\exists y \forall z (z \in y))$$

In Argot this says that there does not exist a set T such that for every set A we have $A \in T$. (Intuitively there is no set such that all sets belong to it.)

Hint: Assume there is such a T and derive a contradiction. Hence $\forall z(z \in T)$. Hence (by dropping $\forall z$ and replacing z by T) we have $T \in T$ which contradicts Exercise 8.35.

EXERCISE 8.38. Prove that even if we remove the Axiom of foundation from ZFC it still follows that:

$$\neg(\exists y \forall z(z \in y))$$

Hint: Assume there is such a T and derive a contradiction. So $\forall z(z \in T)$. Consider the set

$$S = \{x \in T \mid x \notin x\}.$$

There are two cases. First case is $S \notin S$. From $\forall z(z \in T)$ it follows that $S \in T$. Since $S \in T$ and $S \notin S$, we get that $S \in \{x \in T \mid x \notin x\}$ hence $S \in S$, a contradiction. The second case is $S \in S$. We get that $S \notin \{x \in T \mid x \notin x\}$ hence $S \notin S$, which is again a contradiction.

EXERCISE 8.39. Show that if for each formula $P(x)$ one replaces the Separation Axiom by the “Modified Separation Axiom”

$$\exists z \forall x((x \in z) \leftrightarrow P(x))$$

then one can derive a contradiction even if one removes from ZFC the Axiom of foundation. (This is called the *Russell paradox*. Roughly speaking it arises from allowing sets of the form $\{x \mid P(x)\}$ rather than sets of the form $\{x \in y \mid P(x)\}$.)

Hint: Take $P(x) = “x \notin x”$ hence by the Modified Separation Axiom we have $\exists z \forall x((x \in z) \leftrightarrow (x \notin x))$. Let S be a witness of this sentence. So (dropping $\exists z$ and replacing z by S) we have

$$\forall x((x \in S) \leftrightarrow (x \notin x)).$$

So (dropping $\forall x$ and replacing x by S) we have

$$(S \in S) \leftrightarrow (S \notin S).$$

This is a contradiction (as one can see by taking A to be $S \in S$ and using a truth table for the sentence $A \leftrightarrow \neg A$.)

REMARK 8.40. Before the advent of *ZFC* Russell showed that Cantor’s Set Theory leads to a contradiction, cf. the “Russell paradox” discussed earlier. Within *ZFC* Russell’s paradox, in its original form, disappears. Whether there are other forms of this paradox, or similar paradoxes, that survive in *ZFC* it is not known.

REMARK 8.41. One can ask if dropping the Axiom of foundation from ZFC leads to an interesting theory. The answer is YES, although we will not investigate this here. Such a theory has applications in computer science. Also it is interesting to follow a suggestion of Badiou according to which if one applies the ideas of Set Theory to matters of political philosophy then the Axiom of foundation appears to be violated. The example Badiou gives is the thing called “*French Revolution*” which as a set contains elements such as “*Robespierre*,” “*The Fall of Bastille*,” etc. but it also contains as an element the concept of “*French Revolution*” itself; indeed the concept of “*French Revolution*” cannot be considered complete (the Revolution has not taken place) unless it is made to incorporate itself as an element (i.e., unless the actors of the Revolution perceive the events as a Revolution).

We end by recording the following:

DEFINITION 8.42. A correspondence between a set A and a set B is a subset $U \subset A \times B$.

DEFINITION 8.43. (Composition). Assume U is a correspondence between A and B and assume V is a correspondence between B and C . Then one defines a correspondence $V \circ U$ (called the *composition* of V with U) between A and C by

$$V \circ U = \{(x, z) \in A \times C \mid \exists y((y \in B) \wedge ((x, y) \in U) \wedge ((y, z) \in V))\}.$$

DEFINITION 8.44. (Transpose). Assume U is a correspondence between A and B . Then one defines the transpose U^t of U as the correspondence

$$U^t = \{(y, x) \in B \times A \mid (x, y) \in U\}.$$

EXERCISE 8.45. Prove that

- 1) $U^{tt} = U$,
- 2) $(V \circ U)^t = U^t \circ V^t$,
- 3) $W \circ (V \circ U) = (W \circ V) \circ U$.

In the next two chapters we will study two types of correspondences: maps and relations, respectively.

CHAPTER 9

Maps

The concept of map (or function) has a long history. Originally functions were understood to be given by more or less explicit “formulae” (polynomial, rational, algebraic, and later by series). Controversies around what the “most general” functions should be arose, for instance, in connection with solving partial differential equations (by means of trigonometric series); this is somewhat parallel to the controversy around what the “most general” numbers should be that arose in connection with solving algebraic equations (such as $x^2 = 2$, $x^2 = -1$, or higher degree equations with no solutions expressed by radicals, etc.). The notion of “completely arbitrary” function gradually arose through the work of Dirichlet, Riemann, Weierstrass, Cantor, etc. Here is the definition:

DEFINITION 9.1. A map (or function) from a set A to a set B is a subset $F \subset A \times B$ such that for every $a \in A$ there is a unique $b \in B$ with $(a, b) \in F$.

Equivalently a map from a set A to a set B is a subset $F \subset A \times B$ such that

- 1) For every $a \in A$ there exists $b \in B$ with $(a, b) \in F$.
- 2) For all $(a, b), (a', b') \in F$ if $a = a'$ then $b = b'$.

Note that every map is a correspondence.

If F is a map and $(a, b) \in F$ we write $F(a) = b$ or $a \mapsto b$ or $a \mapsto F(a)$. We also write $F : A \rightarrow B$ or $A \xrightarrow{F} B$.

REMARK 9.2. The above defines a new (ternary) predicate *fun* which in Argot reads “...is a map from ... to ...” So *fun* is introduced by:

DEFINITION 9.3.

$$\forall x \forall y \forall z (fun(x, y, z) \leftrightarrow (((x \subset y \times z) \wedge (\forall u((u \in y) \rightarrow \exists v((u, v) \in x) \wedge \dots))))))$$

Also if F, A, B are as above we may introduce a new functional symbol which by abuse of notation we still denote by F via the

DEFINITION 9.4. $\forall x \forall y ((F(x) = y) \leftrightarrow ((x, y) \in F))$

Note that what we call a *map* $F \subset A \times B$ corresponds to what in elementary Mathematics is called the *graph of a map*.

EXAMPLE 9.5. If a, b, c are distinct the set

$$(9.1) \quad F = \{(a, a), (b, c)\} \subset \{a, b\} \times \{a, b, c\}$$

is a map and $F(a) = a$, $F(b) = c$. On the other hand the subset

$$F = \{(a, b), (a, c)\} \subset \{a, b\} \times \{a, b, c\}$$

is not a map.

DEFINITION 9.6. For every A the identity map $I : A \rightarrow A$ is defined as $I(a) = a$, i.e.,

$$I = I_A = \{(a, a) \mid a \in A\} \subset A \times A.$$

DEFINITION 9.7. A map $F : A \rightarrow B$ is injective (or an injection, or one-to-one) if for all $a, c \in A$ we have that $F(a) = F(c)$ implies $a = c$.

Equivalently a map $F : A \rightarrow B$ is injective if for all $(a, b), (a', b') \in F$ if $b = b'$ then $a = a'$.

DEFINITION 9.8. A map $F : A \rightarrow B$ is surjective (or a surjection, or onto) if for every $b \in B$ there exists an $a \in A$ such that $F(a) = b$.

Equivalently a map $F : A \rightarrow B$ is surjective if for every $b \in B$ there exists an $a \in A$ such that $(a, b) \in F$.

EXAMPLE 9.9. The map (9.1) is injective and not surjective.

EXERCISE 9.10. Give an example of a map which is surjective and not injective.

EXERCISE 9.11. Let $A \subset B$. Prove that there is an injective map $i : A \rightarrow B$ such that $i(a) = a$ for all $a \in A$. We call i the *inclusion* map; we sometimes say $A \subset B$ is the inclusion map.

EXERCISE 9.12. (Composition) Prove that if $F : A \rightarrow B$ and $G : B \rightarrow C$ are two maps then the composition of the correspondences G and F , defined by

$$G \circ F = \{(x, z) \in A \times C \mid \exists y((y \in B) \wedge ((x, y) \in U) \wedge ((y, z) \in V))\} \subset A \times C,$$

is a map from A to C and satisfies $(G \circ F)(a) = G(F(a))$ for all $a \in A$.

DEFINITION 9.13. (Restriction) If $F : A \rightarrow B$ is a map and $A' \subset A$ then the composition of F with the inclusion map $A' \subset A$ is called the *restriction* of F to A' and is denoted by $F|_{A'} : A' \rightarrow B$.

DEFINITION 9.14. (Corestriction) If $F : A \rightarrow B$ is a map and $B' \subset B$ is such that for all $a \in A$ we have $F(a) \in B'$ then the map $F' : A \rightarrow B'$ defined by $F'(a) = F(a)$ is called the *corestriction* of F to B' .

DEFINITION 9.15. (Commutative diagram) By a commutative diagram of sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{F} & B \\ U \downarrow & & \downarrow V \\ C & \xrightarrow{G} & D \end{array}$$

we mean a collection of sets and maps as above with the property that $G \circ U = V \circ F$.

EXERCISE 9.16. Prove that if $F \circ G$ is surjective then F is surjective. Prove that if $F \circ G$ is injective then G is injective.

EXERCISE 9.17. Prove that the composition of two injective maps is injective and the composition of two surjective maps is surjective.

DEFINITION 9.18. A map is bijective (or a bijection) if it is injective and surjective.

Here is a fundamental theorem in Set Theory; it was conjectured by Cantor and proved a little later by Bernstein.

THEOREM 9.19. (*Bernstein's Theorem*) *If A and B are sets and if there exist injective maps $F : A \rightarrow B$ and $G : B \rightarrow A$ then there exists a bijective map $U : A \rightarrow B$.*

The proof will have to wait until we get to the chapter on Sequences; we will not use this theorem until it is proved.

EXERCISE 9.20. Prove that if $F : A \rightarrow B$ is bijective then there exists a unique bijective map denoted by $F^{-1} : B \rightarrow A$ such that $F \circ F^{-1} = I_B$ and $F^{-1} \circ F = I_A$. F^{-1} is called the *inverse* of F .

Hint: Let F^{-1} be the transpose F^t of F (where we view F as a correspondence).

EXERCISE 9.21. Let a, b, c, d, e be distinct. Let $F : \{a, b, c\} \rightarrow \{c, d, e\}$, $F(a) = d$, $F(b) = c$, $F(c) = e$. Prove that F has an inverse and compute F^{-1} .

EXERCISE 9.22. Prove that if A and B are sets then there exist maps $F : A \times B \rightarrow A$ and $G : A \times B \rightarrow B$ such that $F(a, b) = a$ and $G(a, b) = b$ for all $(a, b) \in A \times B$. (These are called the *first and the second projection*.) Hint: For G show that $G = \{((a, b), c); c = b\} \subset (A \times B) \times B$ is a map.

EXERCISE 9.23. Prove that $(A \times B) \times C \rightarrow A \times (B \times C)$, $((a, b), c) \mapsto (a, (b, c))$ is a bijection.

DEFINITION 9.24. Write $A \times B \times C$ instead of $(A \times B) \times C$ and write (a, b, c) instead of $((a, b), c)$. We call (a, b, c) a *triple*. Write $A^2 = A \times A$ and $A^3 = A \times A \times A$. More generally adopt this notation for arbitrary number of factors. Elements like (a, b) , (a, b, c) , (a, b, c, d) , etc. will be called *tuples*.

THEOREM 9.25. *If A is a set then there is no bijection between A and $\mathcal{P}(A)$*

Proof. Assume there exists a bijection $F : A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A)$ and seek a contradiction. Consider the set

$$B = \{a \in A \mid a \notin F(a)\} \in \mathcal{P}(A).$$

Since F is surjective there exists $b \in A$ such that $B = F(b)$. There are two cases: either $b \in B$ or $b \notin B$. If $b \in B$ then $b \in F(b)$ so $b \notin B$, a contradiction. If $b \notin B$ then $b \notin F(b)$ so $b \in B$, a contradiction, and we are done. \square

REMARK 9.26. Note the similarity between the above argument and the argument showing that there is no set having all sets as elements (the ‘‘Russell paradox’’). The above theorem is one of the main discoveries of Cantor: it is the basis for his ‘‘creating’’ his whole ‘‘hierarchy of infinities.’’

DEFINITION 9.27. Let S be a set of sets and I a set. A family of sets in S indexed by I is a map $I \rightarrow S$, $i \mapsto A_i$. We sometimes drop the reference to S . We also write $(A_i)_{i \in I}$ to denote this family. By the union axiom for every such family there is a set (denoted by $\bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$, called their *union*) such that for all x we have that $x \in \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$ if and only if there exists $i \in I$ such that $x \in A_i$. Also, for $I \neq \emptyset$, a set (denoted by $\bigcap_{i \in I} A_i$, called the *intersection* of the family) exists such that for all x we have that $x \in \bigcap_{i \in I} A_i$ if and only if for all $i \in I$ we have $x \in A_i$. A family of elements in $(A_i)_{i \in I}$ is a map $I \rightarrow \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$, $i \mapsto a_i$, such that for all $i \in I$ we have $a_i \in A_i$. Such a family of elements is denoted by $(a_i)_{i \in I}$. One defines the product $\prod_{i \in I} A_i$ as the set of all families of elements $(a_i)_{i \in I}$.

EXERCISE 9.28. Check that for $I = \{i, j\}$ the above definitions of \cup, \cap, \prod yield the usual definition of $A_i \cup A_j$, $A_i \cap A_j$, and $A_i \times A_j$.

DEFINITION 9.29. Let $(A_i)_{i \in I}$ be a family of sets. The disjoint union $\coprod_{i \in I} A_i$ of this family is defined by

$$\coprod_{i \in I} A_i = \{(x, i) \in (\bigcup_{i \in I} A_i) \times I \mid x \in A_i\}.$$

There are natural injective maps $\epsilon_j : A_j \rightarrow \coprod_{i \in I} A_i$, $\epsilon_j(x) = (x, j)$. For $I = \{1, 2\}$ with 1, 2 two distinct sets we write

$$\coprod_{i \in I} A_i = A_1 \amalg A_2$$

EXAMPLE 9.30. For $I = \{1, 2\}$ and $A_1 = \{a, b\}$, $A_2 = \{b, c, d\}$ we have

$$A_1 \amalg A_2 = \{(a, 1), (b, 1), (b, 2), (c, 2), (d, 2)\}.$$

DEFINITION 9.31. Let $F : A \rightarrow B$ be a map and $X \subset A$. Define the image of X as the set

$$F(X) = \{y \in B \mid \exists x \in X, y = F(x)\} \subset B.$$

If $Y \subset B$ define the inverse image (or preimage) of Y as the set

$$F^{-1}(Y) = \{x \in A \mid F(x) \in Y\} \subset A.$$

For $y \in B$ define

$$F^{-1}(y) = \{x \in A \mid F(x) = y\}.$$

(Note that $F^{-1}(Y)$, $F^{-1}(y)$ are defined even if the inverse map F^{-1} does not exist, i.e., even if F is not bijective.)

EXERCISE 9.32. Let $F : \{a, b, c, d, e, f, g\} \rightarrow \{c, d, e, h\}$, $F(a) = d$, $F(b) = c$, $F(c) = e$, $F(d) = c$, $F(e) = d$, $F(f) = c$, $F(g) = c$. Let $X = \{a, b, c\}$, $Y = \{c, h\}$, all letters being distinct. Compute $F(X)$, $F^{-1}(Y)$, $F^{-1}(c)$, $F^{-1}(h)$.

EXERCISE 9.33. Prove that if $F : A \rightarrow B$ is a map and $X \subset X' \subset A$ are subsets then $F(X) \subset F(X')$.

EXERCISE 9.34. Prove that if $F : A \rightarrow B$ is a map and $(X_i)_{i \in I}$ is a family of subsets of A then

$$F(\cup_{i \in I} X_i) = \cup_{i \in I} F(X_i),$$

$$F(\cap_{i \in I} X_i) \subset \cap_{i \in I} F(X_i).$$

If in addition F is injective show that

$$F(\cap_{i \in I} X_i) = \cap_{i \in I} F(X_i).$$

Give an example showing that the latter may fail if F is not injective.

EXERCISE 9.35. Prove that if $F : A \rightarrow B$ is a map and $Y \subset Y' \subset B$ are subsets then $F^{-1}(Y) \subset F^{-1}(Y')$.

EXERCISE 9.36. Prove that if $F : A \rightarrow B$ is a map and $(Y_i)_{i \in I}$ is a family of subsets of B then

$$F^{-1}(\cup_{i \in I} Y_i) = \cup_{i \in I} F^{-1}(Y_i),$$

$$F^{-1}(\cap_{i \in I} Y_i) = \cap_{i \in I} F^{-1}(Y_i).$$

(So here one does not need injectivity like in the case of unions.)

EXERCISE 9.37. Let $F : A \rightarrow B$ be a surjective map and for every $b \in B$ let $A_b = F^{-1}(b)$. Let $(A_b)_{b \in B}$ be the family defined by the map $B \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A)$, $b \mapsto A_b$. Prove that there is a bijection

$$A \rightarrow \coprod_{b \in B} A_b.$$

Hint. Consider the map $A \rightarrow \coprod_{b \in B} A_b$ sending every $a \in A$ into the pair $(a, F(a))$.

DEFINITION 9.38. If A and B are sets we denote by $\text{Map}(A, B) \subset \mathcal{P}(A \times B)$ the set of all maps $F : A \rightarrow B$.

EXERCISE 9.39. Let $0, 1$ be two sets. Prove that the map

$$\text{Map}(A, \{0, 1\}) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A)$$

sending $F : A \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$ into $F^{-1}(1) \in \mathcal{P}(A)$ is a bijection.

EXERCISE 9.40. Find a bijection

$$\text{Map}(A, \text{Map}(B, C)) \rightarrow \text{Map}(A \times B, C).$$

Hint: Send $F \in \text{Map}(A, \text{Map}(B, C))$, $F : A \rightarrow \text{Map}(B, C)$, into the set (map)

$$\{(a, b, c) \in (A \times B) \times C \mid (b, c) \in F(a)\}.$$

EXERCISE 9.41. Let $F : A \rightarrow B$ be an injective map.

1) Prove that the corestriction $F' : A \rightarrow F(A)$ of F is a bijection.

2) Prove that there exists a map $G : B \rightarrow A$ such that $G \circ F = I_A$. (We call G a *left inverse* of F .)

Hint for 2): Let $(F')^{-1} : F(A) \rightarrow A$ be the inverse of F' and fix $a \in A$. Then define $G(b) = (F')^{-1}(b)$ for $b \in F(A)$ and $G(b) = a$ for all $b \in B \setminus F(A)$.

EXERCISE 9.42. Let $F : A \rightarrow B$ be a surjective map. Prove that there exists a map $G : B \rightarrow A$ such that $F \circ G = I_B$. (We call G a *right inverse*, or a *section*, of F .)

Hint: Use the Axiom of choice applied to the set $\{F^{-1}(b) \in \mathcal{P}(A) \mid b \in B\}$.

The following will be useful later when we introduce the integers.

DEFINITION 9.43. A Peano triple is a triple $(N, 1, \sigma)$ where N is a set, $1 \in N$, and $\sigma : N \rightarrow N$ is a map such that

- 1) σ is injective;
- 2) $\sigma(N) = N \setminus \{1\}$;
- 3) for every subset $S \subset N$ if $1 \in S$ and $\sigma(S) \subset S$ then $S = N$.

EXERCISE 9.44. Prove that there exists a Peano triple.

Hint: By the Axiom of infinity there exists an inductive set; then N can be taken to be the intersection of all inductive sets contained in that set (which turns out to be itself an inductive set) and one can take σ to be given by $\sigma(x) = \{x\}$. Injectivity of σ follows because if $\{x\} = \{y\}$ then $x = y$.

CHAPTER 10

Relations

A basic notion in Set Theory is that of relation; we shall investigate in some detail two special cases: order relations and equivalence relations.

DEFINITION 10.1. If A is a set then a relation on A is a subset $R \subset A \times A$.

So a relation on A is simply a correspondence between A and A .

REMARK 10.2. Exactly as in Remark 9.2 the above defines a new (binary) predicate "... is a relation on ..." and we may introduce a corresponding new binary predicate (still denoted by R) via the following

DEFINITION 10.3. $\forall x \forall y (xRy \leftrightarrow ((x, y) \in R))$

DEFINITION 10.4. Let $R \subset A \times A$ be a relation on A and write $a \leq b$ instead of aRb . R is called an *order relation* if, for all $a, b, c \in A$, we have:

- 1) $a \leq a$ (reflexivity),
- 2) $a \leq b$ and $b \leq c$ imply $a \leq c$ (transitivity),
- 3) $a \leq b$ and $b \leq a$ imply $a = b$ (antisymmetry).

DEFINITION 10.5. One writes $a < b$ iff $a \leq b$ and $a \neq b$.

EXERCISE 10.6. Let R be a relation on A (which we view as a correspondence). Show that

- i) The reflexivity condition is equivalent to $I \subset R$.
- ii) The transitivity condition is equivalent to $R \circ R \subset R$.
- iii) The antisymmetry condition is equivalent to $R \cap R^t \subset I$.

DEFINITION 10.7. An order relation is called a *total order* if for every $a, b \in A$ either $a \leq b$ or $b \leq a$. Alternatively we say A is totally ordered (by \leq).

EXAMPLE 10.8. For instance if $A = \{a, b, c, d\}$ with all letters distinct then

$$R = \{(a, a), (b, b), (c, c), (d, d), (a, b), (b, c), (a, c)\}$$

is an order but not a total order.

EXERCISE 10.9. Let $R_0 \subset A \times A$ be a relation and assume R_0 is contained in an order relation $R_1 \subset A \times A$. Let

$$R = \bigcap_{R' \supset R_0} R'$$

be the intersection of all order relations R' containing R_0 . Prove that R is an order relation and it is the smallest order relation containing R_0 in the sense that it is contained in any order relation that contains R_0 .

EXERCISE 10.10. Let $A = \{a, b, c, d, e\}$ and $R_0 = \{(a, b), (b, c), (c, d), (c, e)\}$ with all letters distinct. Find an order relation containing R_0 . Find the smallest order relation R containing R_0 . Show that R is not a total order.

EXERCISE 10.11. Let A be a set. For every subsets $X \subset A$ and $Y \subset A$ write $X \leq Y$ if and only if $X \subset Y$. This defines a relation on the set $\mathcal{P}(A)$. Prove that this is an order relation. Give an example showing that this is not in general a total order.

DEFINITION 10.12. An ordered set is a pair (A, \leq) where A is a set and \leq is an order relation on A .

DEFINITION 10.13. Let (A, \leq) and (A', \leq') be ordered sets. A map $F : A \rightarrow A'$ is called *non-decreasing* if for every $a, b \in A$ with $a \leq b$ we have $F(a) \leq' F(b)$. It is called *increasing* if for every $a, b \in A$ with $a < b$ we have $F(a) <' F(b)$. One defines *non-increasing* and *decreasing* in a similar way.

EXERCISE 10.14. Prove that if (A, \leq) , (A', \leq') , (A'', \leq'') are ordered sets and $G : A \rightarrow A'$, $F : A' \rightarrow A''$ are non-decreasing then $F \circ G : A \rightarrow A''$ is non-decreasing.

DEFINITION 10.15. Let A be a set with an order \leq and let $B \subset A$. (An important special case of this is $B = A$.)

We say $\beta \in B$ is a *minimal* element of B if for all $b \in B$ such that $b \leq \beta$ we must have $b = \beta$. We stress that if minimal elements of B exist then they belong to B and need not be unique.

We say $m \in B$ is a *minimum* element of B if for all $b \in B$ we have $m \leq b$. If a minimum element exists it is unique (check!) and we denote it by $\min B$. We stress that if $\min B$ exists then, by definition, $\min B$ belongs to B .

We say $\omega \in B$ is a *maximal* element of B if for all $b \in B$ such that $\omega \leq b$ we must have $\omega = b$. We stress that if maximal elements of B exist then they belong to B and need not be unique.

We say $M \in B$ is a *maximum* element of B if for all $b \in B$ we have $b \leq M$. If a maximum element exists it is unique and we denote it by $\max B$. We stress that if $\max B$ exists then by definition it belongs to B . Note that minimal, minimum, maximal, and maximum elements of B depend only on B and not on A .

An element $u \in A$ is called an *upper bound* for B in A if $b \leq u$ for all $b \in B$. We also say that B is bounded from above by u .

An element $l \in A$ is called a *lower bound* for B in A if $l \leq b$ for all $b \in B$; we also say B is bounded from below by l .

We say B is *bounded* (in A) if it has an upper bound and a lower bound in A .

Let $U_A(B)$ be the set of upper bounds of B in A ; if $U_A(B)$ has a minimum element we call it the *supremum* of B in A and we denote it by $\sup_A B$.

Let $L_A(B)$ be the set of lower bounds of B in A ; if $L_A(B)$ has a maximum element we call it the *infimum* of B in A and we denote it by $\inf_A B$.

Note that if one of $\sup_A B$ and $\inf_A B$ exists that element is by definition in A , it generally depends on A (and not only on B) and does not necessarily belong to B .

We say B is bounded in A if it has both an upper bound and a lower bound in A ; this concept also depends on A .

When A is understood from context it is usually dropped from notation and no reference is made to A .

EXERCISE 10.16. Consider the set A and the order \leq defined by the relation R in Exercise 10.10. Does A have a maximum element? Does A have a minimum element? Are there maximal elements in A ? Are there minimal elements in A ? List all these elements in case they exist. Let $B = \{b, c\}$. Is B bounded? Find the set of upper bounds of B . Find the set of lower bounds of B . Does the supremum of B exist? If yes does it belong to B ? Does the infimum of B exist? Does it belong to B ?

EXERCISE 10.17. Let $A = \{a, b, c, d, e, f\}$ and R the smallest order on A containing the set

$$\{(a, b), (b, c), (b, d), (c, e), (c, f), (d, e), (d, f)\}$$

Does A have a maximum element? Does A have a minimum element? Are there maximal elements in A ? Are there minimal elements in A ? List all these elements in case they exist. Let $B = \{a, b, c, d\}$. Is B bounded? Find the set of upper bounds of B . Find the set of lower bounds of B . Does the supremum of B exist? If yes does it belong to B ? Does the infimum of B exist? Does it belong to B ?

DEFINITION 10.18. A well ordered set is an ordered set (A, \leq) such that every non-empty subset $B \subset A$ has a minimum element.

EXAMPLE 10.19. Let $A = \{a, b, c, d\}$ and let \leq be the smallest order relation containing

$$(a, b), (b, c), (c, d)$$

Then (A, \leq) is well ordered.

EXERCISE 10.20. Prove that every well ordered set is totally ordered.

REMARK 10.21. Later, when we will have introduced the ordered set of integers and the ordered set of rational numbers we will see that both are totally ordered, the non-negative integers are well ordered but the non-negative rationals are not well ordered.

The following theorems can be proved (but their proof is beyond the scope of this course):

THEOREM 10.22. (*Zorn's lemma*) Assume (A, \leq) is a non-empty ordered set. Assume that every totally ordered subset $B \subset A$ has an upper bound in A . Then A has a maximal element.

THEOREM 10.23. (*Well ordering principle*) Let A be a set. Then there exists an order relation \leq on A such that (A, \leq) is well ordered.

REMARK 10.24. It can be proved that if one removes from the axioms of Set Theory the axiom of choice then the axiom of choice, Zorn's lemma, and the well ordering principle are all equivalent.

EXERCISE 10.25. Let (A, \leq) and (B, \leq) be totally ordered sets. Define a relation \leq on $A \times B$ by

$$((a, b) \leq (a', b')) \leftrightarrow ((a < a') \vee ((a = a') \wedge (b \leq b'))).$$

Prove that \leq is an order on $A \times B$ (it is called the *lexicographic order*) and that $(A \times B, \leq)$ is totally ordered. (Explain how this order is being used to order words in a dictionary.)

DEFINITION 10.26. Let $R \subset A \times A$ be a relation on A and write $a \sim b$ instead of aRb . R is called an *equivalence relation* if, for all $a, b, c \in A$, we have:

- 1) $a \sim a$ (reflexivity),
- 2) $a \sim b$ and $b \sim c$ imply $a \sim c$ (transitivity),
- 3) $a \sim b$ implies $b \sim a$ (symmetry);

we also say that \sim is an equivalence relation.

EXERCISE 10.27. Prove that the symmetry condition is equivalent to $R^t = R$.

EXERCISE 10.28. Let $R_0 \subset A \times A$ be a relation and let

$$R = \bigcap_{R' \supset R_0} R'$$

be the intersection of all equivalence relations R' containing R_0 . Prove that R is an equivalence relation and it is the smallest equivalence relation containing R_0 in the sense that it is contained in any other equivalence relation that contains R_0 .

DEFINITION 10.29. Given an equivalence relation \sim as above for every $a \in A$ we may consider the set

$$\hat{a} = \{c \in A \mid c \sim a\}$$

called the *equivalence class* of a .

DEFINITION 10.30. Sometimes, instead of \hat{a} , one writes \bar{a} or $[a]$.

EXERCISE 10.31. Prove that $\hat{a} = \hat{b}$ if and only if $a \sim b$.

EXERCISE 10.32. Prove that:

- 1) if $\hat{a} \cap \hat{b} \neq \emptyset$ then $\hat{a} = \hat{b}$;
- 2) $A = \bigcup_{a \in A} \hat{a}$.

DEFINITION 10.33. If A is a set a partition of A is a family $(A_i)_{i \in I}$ of subsets $A_i \subset A$ such that:

- 1) if $i \neq j$ then $A_i \cap A_j = \emptyset$
- 2) $A = \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$.

EXERCISE 10.34. Let A be a set and \sim an equivalence relation on it. Prove that:

1) There exists a subset $B \subset A$ which contains exactly one element of each equivalence class (such a set is called a *system of representatives*. Hint: Use the axiom of choice).

2) The family $(\hat{b})_{b \in B}$ is a partition of A .

EXERCISE 10.35. Let A be a set and $(A_i)_{i \in I}$ a partition of A . Define a relation R on A as follows:

$$R = \{(a, b) \in A \times A \mid \exists i((i \in I) \wedge (a \in A_i) \wedge (b \in A_i))\}.$$

Prove that R is an equivalence relation.

EXERCISE 10.36. Let A be a set. Prove that there is a bijection between the set of equivalence relations on A and the set of partitions of A . Hint: Use the above two exercises.

DEFINITION 10.37. The set of equivalence classes

$$\{\alpha \in \mathcal{P}(A) \mid \exists a((a \in A) \wedge (\alpha = \hat{a}))\}$$

is denoted by A/\sim and is called the *quotient* of A by the relation \sim .

EXAMPLE 10.38. For instance if $A = \{a, b, c\}$ and

$$R = \{(a, a), (b, b), (c, c), (a, b), (b, a)\}$$

then R is an equivalence relation, $\widehat{a} = \widehat{b} = \{a, b\}$, $\widehat{c} = \{c\}$, and $A/\sim = \{\{a, b\}, \{c\}\}$.

EXERCISE 10.39. Let $A = \{a, b, c, d, e, f\}$ and $R_0 = \{(a, b), (b, c), (d, e)\}$. Find the smallest equivalence relation R containing R_0 . Call it \sim . Write down the equivalence classes $\widehat{a}, \widehat{b}, \widehat{c}, \widehat{d}, \widehat{e}, \widehat{f}$. Write down the set A/\sim .

EXERCISE 10.40. Let S be a set. For every sets $X, Y \in S$ write $X \sim Y$ if and only if there exists a bijection $F : X \rightarrow Y$. This defines a relation on S . Prove that this is an equivalence relation.

EXERCISE 10.41. Let $S = \{A, B, C, D\}$, $A = \{a, b\}$, $B = \{b, c\}$, $C = \{x, y\}$, $D = \emptyset$. Let \sim be the equivalence relation on S defined in the previous exercise. Write down the equivalence classes $\widehat{A}, \widehat{B}, \widehat{C}, \widehat{D}$ and write down the set S/\sim .

DEFINITION 10.42. An affine plane is a pair (A, \mathcal{L}) where A is a set and $\mathcal{L} \subset \mathcal{P}(A)$ is a set of subsets of A satisfying a series of properties (which we call, by abuse, *axioms*) which we now explain. It is convenient to introduce some terminology as follows. A is called the *affine plane*. The elements of A are called *points*. The elements L of \mathcal{L} are called *lines*; so each such L is a subset of A . We say a point P lies on a line L if $P \in L$; we also say that L passes through P . We say that two lines intersect if they have a point in common; we say that two lines are parallel if they either coincide or they do not intersect. We say that 3 points are collinear if they lie on the same line. Here are the axioms that we impose:

- 1) There exist 3 points which are not collinear and every line has at least 2 points.
- 2) Every 2 distinct points lie on exactly one line.
- 3) If L is a line and P is a point not lying on L there exists exactly one line through P which is parallel to L .

REMARK 10.43. Note that we have not defined 2 or 3 yet; this will be done later when we introduce integers. The meaning of these axioms is, however, clearly expressible in terms that were already defined. For instance axiom 2 says that for every points P and Q with $P \neq Q$ there exists a line through P and Q ; we do not need to define the symbol 2 to express this. The same holds for the use of the symbol 3.

EXERCISE 10.44. Prove that every two distinct non-parallel lines intersect in exactly one point.

EXERCISE 10.45. Let $A = \{a, b\} \times \{a, b\}$ with $a \neq b$ and let $\mathcal{L} \subset \mathcal{P}(A)$ consist of all subsets of 2 elements; there are 6 of them. Prove that (A, \mathcal{L}) is an affine plane. (Again one can reformulate everything without reference to the symbols 2 or 6; one simply uses 2 or 6 letters and writes that they are pairwise unequal.)

EXERCISE 10.46. Let $A = \{a, b, c\} \times \{a, b, c\}$ with a, b, c distinct. Find all subsets $\mathcal{L} \subset \mathcal{P}(A)$ such that (A, \mathcal{L}) is an affine plane. (This is tedious! Rather than giving all details describe how the solution would be found.)

DEFINITION 10.47. A projective plane is a pair $(\overline{A}, \overline{\mathcal{L}})$ where \overline{A} is a set and $\overline{\mathcal{L}} \subset \mathcal{P}(\overline{A})$ is a set of subsets of \overline{A} satisfying a series of axioms which we now

explain. Again it is convenient to introduce some terminology as follows. \bar{A} is called the *projective plane*. The elements of \bar{A} are called *points*, P . The elements \bar{L} of $\bar{\mathcal{L}}$ are called *lines*; so each such $\bar{L} \subset \bar{A}$. We say a point P lies on a line \bar{L} if $P \in \bar{L}$; we also say that \bar{L} passes through P . We say that two lines intersect if they have a point in common; we say that two lines are parallel if they either coincide or they do not intersect. We say that 3 points are collinear if they lie on the same line. Here are the axioms that we impose:

- 1) There exist 3 points which are not collinear and every line has at least 3 points.
- 2) Every 2 distinct points lie on exactly one line.
- 3) Every 2 distinct lines meet in exactly one point.

EXAMPLE 10.48. One can attach to every affine plane (A, \mathcal{L}) a projective plane $(\bar{A}, \bar{\mathcal{L}})$ as follows. We introduce the relation \parallel on \mathcal{L} by letting $L \parallel L'$ if and only if L and L' are parallel. This is an equivalence relation (see Exercise 10.49). Denote by \hat{L} the equivalence class of L . Then we consider the set of equivalence classes, $\bar{\mathcal{L}}_\infty = \mathcal{L} / \parallel$; call this set the *line at infinity*. Define $\bar{A} = A \amalg \bar{\mathcal{L}}_\infty$ and let $\epsilon_1 : A \rightarrow \bar{A}$ and $\epsilon_2 : \bar{\mathcal{L}}_\infty \rightarrow \bar{A}$. Define a line in \bar{A} to be either $\epsilon_2(\bar{L}_\infty)$ or a set of the form $\bar{L} = \epsilon_1(L) \cup \{\epsilon_2(\hat{L})\}$. Finally define $\bar{\mathcal{L}}$ to be the set of all lines in \bar{A} .

EXERCISE 10.49. With the notation in Example 10.48 prove that the relation \parallel is an equivalence relation.

EXERCISE 10.50. With the notation in Example 10.48 check that $(\bar{A}, \bar{\mathcal{L}})$ is a projective plane.

EXERCISE 10.51. Describe the projective plane attached to the affine plane in Exercise 10.45; how many points does it have? How many lines?

CHAPTER 11

Operations

The concept of operation on a set is an abstraction of “familiar” operations such as addition and multiplication of numbers, composition of functions, etc. Sets with operations on them will be referred to as algebraic structures. The study of algebraic structures is referred to as (modern) algebra and took the shape known today through work (in number theory and algebraic geometry) done by Kronecker, Dedekind, Hilbert, Emmy Noether, etc. Here we introduce operations in general, and some algebraic structures such as rings, fields, and Boolean algebras. We prefer to postpone the introduction of other algebraic structures such as groups, vector spaces, etc., until more theory is being developed.

DEFINITION 11.1. A binary operation \star on a set A is a map $\star : A \times A \rightarrow A$, $(a, b) \mapsto \star(a, b)$. We usually write $a \star b$ instead of $\star(a, b)$. For instance, we write $(a \star b) \star c$ instead of $\star(\star(a, b), c)$. Instead of \star we sometimes use notation like $+$, \times , \circ ,

REMARK 11.2. Exactly as in Remark 9.2 the above defines a new (binary) predicate *binop* which in Argot reads “... is a binary operation on ...” and we may introduce a corresponding new functional symbol (still denoted by \star). So *binop* is introduced by the definition:

$$\forall x \forall y (\text{binop}(x, y) \leftrightarrow (\text{fun}(x, y \times y, y)))$$

DEFINITION 11.3. A unary operation $'$ on a set A is a map $' : A \rightarrow A$, $a \mapsto '(a)$. We usually write a' or $'a$ instead of $'(a)$. Instead of $'$ we sometimes use notation like $-$, i ,

EXAMPLE 11.4. Let $S = \{0, 1\}$ where $0, 1$ are two distinct sets. Then there are 3 interesting binary operations on S denoted by $\wedge, \vee, +$ (and called *supremum*, *infimum*, and *addition*) defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 0 \wedge 0 &= 0, & 0 \wedge 1 &= 0, & 1 \wedge 0 &= 0, & 1 \wedge 1 &= 1; \\ 0 \vee 0 &= 0, & 0 \vee 1 &= 1, & 1 \vee 0 &= 1, & 1 \vee 1 &= 1; \\ 0 + 0 &= 0, & 0 + 1 &= 1, & 1 + 0 &= 1, & 1 + 1 &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

The symbol \wedge is also denoted by \times or \cdot ; it is referred to as multiplication. The symbol $+$ is also denoted by Δ . Also there is a unary operation \neg on S defined by

$$\neg 1 = 0, \quad \neg 0 = 1.$$

Note that if we denote 0 and 1 by F and T then the operations \wedge, \vee, \neg on $\{0, 1\}$ correspond exactly to the “logical operations” on F and T defined in the chapter on tautologies. This is not a coincidence!

EXERCISE 11.5. Compute $((0 \wedge 1) \vee 1) + (1 \wedge (0 \vee (1 + 1)))$.

In what follows we define some of the basic concepts of algebra: groups, Boolean algebras, rings, ordered rings, integral domains, fields. (More precisely we define, in Set Theory, new predicates: *is a groups*, *is a Boolean algebra*, *is a ring*, etc.)

DEFINITION 11.6. A group is a tuple (G, \star, e) where G is a set, \star is a binary operation on G , and $e \in G$ such that the following properties hold:

- 1) For all $x, y, z \in G$, $x \star (y \star z) = (x \star y) \star z$.
- 2) For all $x \in G$, $x \star e = e \star x = x$.
- 3) For all $x \in G$ there exists $y \in G$ such that $x \star y = y \star x = e$.

REMARK 11.7. Properties 1, 2, 3 in Definition 11.6 above are sometimes abusively (or mistakenly) referred to as the “axioms of groups.” Indeed, properties 1, 2, 3 in Definition 11.6 above are NOT axioms in Set Theory! Rather, they are part of a Definition in Set Theory. Their form does resemble/mirror the Axioms 1,2,3 of Group Theory in Example 5.6 but their logical status is entirely different. (A similar remark can be made about the definition of Boolean algebras, rings, ordered rings, etc. that will be given below.) This type of “mirroring correspondence” between axioms in one theory (such as Group Theory) and definitions in another theory (such as Set Theory) can be made precise in Metalanguage but is not part of Mathematics (i.e., of Set Theory). Nevertheless this “mirroring correspondence” can be itself “mirrored” inside Mathematics as we will see in the Chapter on Models.

As a consequence, if an exercise in Mathematics (i.e., in Set Theory) says: “Let G be a group; prove that P ”, then one assumes properties 1, 2, 3 in Definition 11.6 (not as axioms of Set Theory but as hypothesis of the exercise) and one attempts to prove P .

On the other hand if an exercise in Mathematics (i.e., in Set Theory) says: “Let (G, \star, e) be the following triple [...here a definition of triple is given...]; prove that (G, \star, e) is a group,” then one needs to prove that properties 1, 2, 3 in Definition 11.6 hold for the given triple (so one cannot assume properties 1, 2, 3 in Definition 11.6 are true, since they are not axioms of Set Theory).

DEFINITION 11.8. A Boolean algebra is a tuple

$$(A, \vee, \wedge, \neg, 0, 1)$$

where \wedge, \vee are binary operations, \neg is a unary operation, and $0, 1 \in A$ such that for all $a, b, c \in A$ the following “axioms” are satisfied:

- 1) $a \wedge (b \wedge c) = (a \wedge b) \wedge c$, $a \vee (b \vee c) = (a \vee b) \vee c$,
- 2) $a \wedge b = b \wedge a$, $a \vee b = b \vee a$,
- 3) $a \wedge 1 = a$, $a \vee 0 = a$,
- 4) $a \wedge (b \vee c) = (a \wedge b) \vee (a \wedge c)$, $a \vee (b \wedge c) = (a \vee b) \wedge (a \vee c)$
- 5) $a \wedge (\neg a) = 0$, $a \vee (\neg a) = 1$.

DEFINITION 11.9. A commutative unital ring (or simply a ring) is a tuple

$$(R, +, \times, -, 0, 1)$$

(sometimes referred to simply as R) where R is a set, $0, 1 \in R$, $+$, \times are two binary operations (write $a \times b = ab$), and $-$ is a unary operation on R such that for every $a, b, c \in R$ the following hold:

- 1) $a + (b + c) = (a + b) + c$, $a + 0 = a$, $a + (-a) = 0$, $a + b = b + a$;
- 2) $a(bc) = (ab)c$, $1a = a$, $ab = ba$,
- 3) $a(b + c) = ab + ac$.

The element 1 is referred to as the identity; 0 is referred to as the zero element. The conditions $a + (b + c) = (a + b) + c$ and $a(bc) = (ab)c$ are referred to as *associativity*. The conditions $a + b = b + a$ and $ab = ba$ are referred to as *commutativity*.

The above defines a new (6-ary) predicate *ring* which reads "... is a ring with respect to the addition ... the multiplication ... subtraction ... zero element ... and unit element ...". This predicate is introduced by the definition

$$\forall x \forall y \forall z \forall u \forall v \forall w (\text{ring}(x, y, z, u, v, w) \leftrightarrow (\text{binop}(y, x) \wedge \dots))$$

DEFINITION 11.10. We write $a + b + c$ instead of $(a + b) + c$ and abc for $(ab)c$. We write $a - b$ instead of $a + (-b)$.

EXERCISE 11.11. Let R be a ring. Prove that:

- 1) $x \cdot 0 = 0$ for all $x \in R$.
- 2) $x \cdot (-1) = -x$ for all $x \in R$.
- 3) $(-1) \cdot (-1) = 1$

Hint: For 1) start with $0 + 0 = 0$. For 2) and 3) start with $1 + (-1) = 0$

REMARK 11.12. By 1) above if $1 = 0$ then $R = \{0\}$ (in which case R is called a *zero ring*).

DEFINITION 11.13. A ring R is called an *integral domain* if for all $x, y \in R$ if $xy = 0$ then $x = 0$ or $y = 0$.

DEFINITION 11.14. An element a of a ring R is invertible if there exists $a' \in R$ such that $aa' = 1$; this a' is then easily proved to be unique. It is called the *inverse* of a , and is denoted by a^{-1} . A ring R is called a *field* if $0 \neq 1$ and every non-zero element is invertible.

EXERCISE 11.15. Prove that every field is an integral domain.

DEFINITION 11.16. A Boolean ring is a commutative unital ring such that $1 \neq 0$ and for all $a \in A$ we have $a^2 = a$.

EXERCISE 11.17. Prove that in a Boolean ring A we have $a + a = 0$ for all $a \in A$.

EXERCISE 11.18. Prove that

- 1) $(\{0, 1\}, \vee, \wedge, \neg, 0, 1)$ is a Boolean algebra.
- 2) $(\{0, 1\}, +, \times, I, 0, 1)$ is a Boolean ring and a field (I is the identity map).

This field is denoted by \mathbb{F}_2 .

EXERCISE 11.19. Prove that if a Boolean ring A is a field then $A = \{0, 1\}$.

DEFINITION 11.20. Let A be a set and let $S = \mathcal{P}(A)$ be the power set of A . Define the following operations on S :

$$\begin{aligned} X \wedge Y &= X \cap Y \\ X \vee Y &= X \cup Y \\ X \Delta Y &= (X \cup Y) \setminus (X \cap Y) \\ \neg X &= \mathcal{C}X = A \setminus X. \end{aligned}$$

EXERCISE 11.21. Prove that

- 1) $(\mathcal{P}(A), \vee, \wedge, \neg, \emptyset, A)$ is a Boolean algebra;
- 2) $(\mathcal{P}(A), \Delta, \wedge, I, \emptyset, A)$ is a Boolean ring (I is the identity map).

Hint: For every $a \in A$ one can define a map $\psi_a : \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$ by setting $\psi_a(X) = 1$ if and only if $a \in X$. Note that

- 1) $\psi_a(X \wedge Y) = \psi_a(X) \wedge \psi_a(Y)$,
- 2) $\psi_a(X \vee Y) = \psi_a(X) \vee \psi_a(Y)$,
- 3) $\psi_a(X \Delta Y) = \psi_a(X) + \psi_a(Y)$,
- 4) $\psi_a(\neg X) = \neg \psi_a(X)$.

Next note that $X = Y$ if and only if $\psi_a(X) = \psi_a(Y)$ for all $a \in A$. Use these functions to reduce the present exercise to Exercise 11.18.

DEFINITION 11.22. Given a subset $X \subset A$ one can define the characteristic function $\chi_X : A \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$ by letting $\chi_X(a) = 1$ if and only if $a \in X$; in other words $\chi_X(a) = \psi_a(X)$.

EXERCISE 11.23. Prove that

- 1) $\chi_{X \vee Y}(a) = \chi_X(a) \vee \chi_Y(a)$,
- 2) $\chi_{X \wedge Y}(a) = \chi_X(a) \wedge \chi_Y(a)$,
- 3) $\chi_{X \Delta Y}(a) = \chi_X(a) + \chi_Y(a)$,
- 4) $\chi_{\neg X}(a) = \neg \chi_X(a)$.

DEFINITION 11.24. An algebraic structure is a tuple $(A, \star, \bullet, \dots, \neg, -, \dots, 0, 1, \dots)$ where A is a set, \star, \bullet, \dots are binary operations, $\neg, -, \dots$ are unary operations, and $0, 1, \dots$ are given elements of A . (Some of these may be missing; for instance we could have only one binary operation, one given element, and no unary operations.) Assume we are given two algebraic structures

$$(A, \star, \bullet, \dots, \neg, -, \dots, 0, 1, \dots) \quad \text{and} \quad (A', \star', \bullet', \dots, \neg', -', \dots, 0', 1', \dots)$$

(with the same number of corresponding operations). A map $F : A \rightarrow A'$ is called a *homomorphism* if for all $a, b \in A$ we have:

- 1) $F(a \star b) = F(a) \star' F(b)$, $F(a \bullet b) = F(a) \bullet' F(b), \dots$
- 2) $F(\neg a) = \neg' F(a)$, $F(-a) = -' F(a), \dots$
- 3) $F(0) = 0'$, $F(1) = 1', \dots$

EXAMPLE 11.25. A map $F : A \rightarrow A'$ between two commutative unital rings is called a *homomorphism* (of commutative unital rings) if for all $a, b \in A$ we have:

- 1) $F(a + b) = F(a) + F(b)$ and $F(ab) = F(a)F(b)$,
- 2) $F(-a) = -F(a)$ (prove that this is automatic !),
- 3) $F(0) = 0$ (prove that this is automatic !) and $F(1) = 1$.

EXERCISE 11.26. Prove that if $F : A \rightarrow A'$ is a homomorphism of algebraic structures and F is bijective then its inverse $F^{-1} : A' \rightarrow A$ is a homomorphism. Such an F will be called an *isomorphism*.

DEFINITION 11.27. A subset $\mathcal{A} \subset \mathcal{P}(A)$ is called a *Boolean algebra* of sets if the following hold:

- 1) $\emptyset \in \mathcal{A}$, $A \in \mathcal{A}$;
- 2) If $X, Y \in \mathcal{A}$ then $X \cap Y \in \mathcal{A}$, $X \cup Y \in \mathcal{A}$, $\mathcal{C}X \in \mathcal{A}$.

(Hence $(\mathcal{A}, \vee, \wedge, \mathcal{C}, \emptyset, A)$ is a Boolean algebra.)

EXERCISE 11.28. Prove that if \mathcal{A} is a Boolean algebra of sets then for every $X, Y \in \mathcal{A}$ we have $X \Delta Y \in \mathcal{A}$. Prove that $(\mathcal{A}, \Delta, \cap, I, \emptyset, A)$ is a Boolean ring.

DEFINITION 11.29. A subset $\mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{P}(A)$ is called a *Boolean ring* of sets if the following properties hold:

- 1) $\emptyset \in \mathcal{B}$, $A \in \mathcal{B}$;
 2) If $X, Y \in \mathcal{B}$ then $X \cap Y \in \mathcal{B}$, $X \Delta Y \in \mathcal{B}$.
 (Hence $(\mathcal{A}, \Delta, \vee, I, \emptyset, A)$ is a Boolean ring.)

EXERCISE 11.30. Prove that every Boolean ring of sets \mathcal{B} is a Boolean algebra of sets.

DEFINITION 11.31. A commutative unital ordered ring (or simply an ordered ring) is a tuple

$$(R, +, \times, -, 0, 1, \leq)$$

where

$$(R, +, \times, -, 0, 1)$$

is a ring, \leq is a total order on R , and for all $a, b, c \in R$ the following axioms are satisfied

- 1) If $a < b$ then $a + c < b + c$;
 2) If $a < b$ and $c > 0$ then $ac < bc$.

We say that $a \in R$ is positive if $a > 0$; and that a is negative if $a < 0$. We say a is non-negative if $a \geq 0$.

EXERCISE 11.32. Let R be an ordered ring. Prove that for all $x, y \in R$:

- 1) If $x > 0$ and $y > 0$ then $x + y > 0$ and $xy > 0$
 2) If $x < 0$ then $-x > 0$.
 2) If $0 \neq 1$ then $0 < 1$.

Hint: For 3) use $(-1) \cdot (-1) = 1$.

EXERCISE 11.33. Prove that every ordered ring is an integral domain.

EXERCISE 11.34. Prove that the ring $(\{0, 1\}, +, \times, -, 0, 1)$ has no structure of ordered ring i.e., there is no order \leq on $\{0, 1\}$ such that $(\{0, 1\}, +, \times, -, 0, 1, \leq)$ is an ordered ring.

REMARK 11.35. We cannot give examples yet of ordered rings. Later we will see that the rings of integers, rationals, and reals have natural structures of ordered rings.

DEFINITION 11.36. Let R be an ordered ring and let $R_+ = \{a \in R \mid a \geq 0\}$. A finite measure space is a triple (A, \mathcal{A}, μ) where A is a set, $\mathcal{A} \subset \mathcal{P}(A)$ is a Boolean algebra of sets, and $\mu : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow R_+$ is a map satisfying the property that for every $X, Y \in \mathcal{A}$ with $X \cap Y = \emptyset$ we have

$$\mu(X \cup Y) = \mu(X) + \mu(Y).$$

A map μ as above is called a *finite measure*. If in addition $\mu(A) = 1$ we say that μ is a finite probability measure and (A, \mathcal{A}, μ) is a finite probability measure space. We say that $X, Y \in \mathcal{A}$ are independent if $\mu(X \cap Y) = \mu(X) \cdot \mu(Y)$.

EXERCISE 11.37. Prove that in a finite measure space $\mu(\emptyset) = 0$ and for every $X, Y \in \mathcal{A}$ we have

$$\mu(X \cup Y) = \mu(X) + \mu(Y) - \mu(X \cap Y).$$

EXERCISE 11.38. Let $(A, \vee, \wedge, \neg, 0, 1)$ be a Boolean algebra. For every $a, b \in A$ set

$$a + b = (a \vee b) \wedge (\neg(a \wedge b)).$$

Prove that $(A, +, \wedge, I, 0, 1)$ is a Boolean ring (I the identity map).

EXERCISE 11.39. Let $(A, +, \times, -, 0, 1)$ be a Boolean ring. For every $a, b \in A$ let

$$\begin{aligned} a \vee b &= a + b - ab \\ a \wedge b &= ab \\ \neg a &= 1 - a. \end{aligned}$$

Prove that $(A, \vee, \wedge, \neg, 0, 1)$ is a Boolean algebra.

EXERCISE 11.40. Let X be a set and $(R, +, \cdot, -, 0, 1)$ a commutative unital ring. Let $Map(X, R)$ be the set of all functions $X \rightarrow R$. For $F, G \in Map(X, R)$ we define $F + G, F \cdot G, -F, 0, 1 \in Map(X, R)$ by the formulae

$$\begin{aligned} (F + G)(x) &= F(x) + G(x), & (F \cdot G)(x) &= F(x) \cdot G(x), \\ (-F)(x) &= -F(x), & 0(x) &= 0, & 1(x) &= x, \end{aligned}$$

for all $x \in X$. The operations $F + G$ and $F \cdot G$ are called *pointwise* addition and multiplication of functions. Prove that

$$(Map(X, R), +, \cdot, -, 0, 1)$$

is a commutative unital ring.

CHAPTER 12

Integers

In this Chapter we introduce the ring \mathbb{Z} of integers and we prove some easy theorems about this concept.

Recall that we defined the concept of operation (Definition 11.1), of ring (Definition 11.9) and of ordered ring (Definition 11.31). For an ordered ring

$$(R, +, \times, -, 0, 1, \leq)$$

we define the sets $R_{\geq 0}$ and $R_{> 0}$ of non-negative, respectively positive elements by

$$R_{\geq 0} = \{x \in R \mid x \geq 0\}, \quad R_{> 0} = \{x \in R \mid x > 0\}.$$

These sets can be viewed as ordered sets with the order induced by \leq .

We have the following remarkable theorem in Set Theory T_{set} :

THEOREM 12.1. *There exists a unique ordered ring $(R, +, \times, -, 0, 1, \leq)$ such that the following hold:*

- 1) $0 = \emptyset$.
- 2) For all $x \in R_{\geq 0}$ we have $x + 1 = \{x\}$.
- 3) $R_{\geq 0}$ is a well ordered set.

A sketch of proof of this theorem will be given in Exercise 12.6. The proof is involved. A “cheap” way to avoid the proof of this theorem is as follows: add this theorem to the ZFC axioms and let ZFC' be the resulting enriched system of axioms. Then replace T_{set} by the theory T'_{set} with axioms ZFC'. This procedure is convenient and is guaranteed to be harmless because Theorem 12.1 follows from ZFC. In view of Theorem 12.1 we may introduce new constants via the following

DEFINITION 12.2. $(\mathbb{Z}, +, \times, -, 0, 1, \leq)$ is the unique tuple satisfying the conditions of Theorem 12.1. We call $(\mathbb{Z}, +, \times, -, 0, 1, \leq)$ (or simply \mathbb{Z}) the *ring of integers*. We write $\mathbb{N} = \mathbb{Z}_{> 0}$ and we call it the set of *natural numbers*.

Note that $0 \neq 1$ so by Exercise 11.32 we have $0 < 1$, hence $1 = 0 + 1 = \{\emptyset\} \in \mathbb{N}$. Hence the elements

$$\{\emptyset\}, \{\{\emptyset\}\}, \{\{\{\emptyset\}\}\}, \dots$$

belong to \mathbb{N} ; the first is 1, the next two will later be called 2 and 3, etc.

REMARK 12.3. The only predicate in the language L_{set} of sets is \in and the terms (in particular the constants) in this language are called *sets*. In particular when we consider the ordered ring of integers $(\mathbb{Z}, +, \times, 0, 1, \leq)$ the symbols $\mathbb{Z}, +, -, \times, 0, 1, \leq, \mathbb{N}$ are all constants (they are sets). In particular $+, \times$ are not originally functions and \leq is not originally a predicate. But, according to our conventions, we may introduce functions (still denoted by $+, -, \times$) and a predicate (still denoted by \leq) via appropriate definitions. (This is because “*the set + is a binary operation on \mathbb{Z}* ” is a theorem, etc.)

EXERCISE 12.4. Prove that if $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ then the set $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} \mid a - 1 < x < a\}$ is empty.

Hint: It is enough to show that the set $S = \{x \in \mathbb{Z} \mid 0 < x < 1\}$ is empty. Assume S is non-empty and let $m = \min S$. We have $0 < m < 1$. Multiplying the latter by m we get $0 < m^2 < m$, hence $0 < m^2 < 1$, so $m^2 \in S$ and $m^2 < m = \min S$, a contradiction.

EXERCISE 12.5. Prove that if $a \in \mathbb{N}$ then $a = 1$ or $a - 1 \in \mathbb{N}$. Conclude that $\min \mathbb{N} = 1$. Hint: Use the previous exercise.

EXERCISE 12.6. Prove Theorem 12.1 using the following strategy. Recall from Definition 9.43 the definition of a Peano triple and recall from Exercise 9.44 that there exists a Peano triple. Assume in what follows that $(N, 1, \sigma)$ is a Peano triple. For $y \in N$ let

$$A_y = \{\tau \in \text{Map}(N, N) \mid \tau(1) = \sigma(y), \forall x(\tau(\sigma(x)) = \sigma(\tau(x)))\}.$$

Then one proceeds as follows.

1) One proves that A_y has at most one element. Hint: If $\tau, \eta \in A_y$ and $S = \{x \mid \tau(x) = \eta(x)\}$ then $1 \in S$ and $\sigma(S) \subset S$; so $S = N$.

2) One proves that for every y , $A_y \neq \emptyset$. Hint: If $T = \{y \in N \mid A_y \neq \emptyset\}$ then $1 \in T$ and $\sigma(T) \subset T$; so $T = N$.

3) By 1 and 2 we may write $A_y = \{\tau_y\}$. Then define $+$ on N by $x + y = \tau_y(x)$.

4) One proves that $x + y = y + x$ and $(x + y) + z = x + (y + z)$ on N .

5) One proves that if $x, y \in N$, $x \neq y$, then there exists $z \in N$ such that either $y = x + z$ or $x = y + z$.

6) Define $N^- = \{-\} \times N$, $R = N^- \cup \{0\} \cup N$ where 0 and $-$ are two sets. One naturally extends $+$ to R .

7) One defines \times on N and then on R in the same style as for $+$.

8) One defines \leq on N and one proves that (N, \leq) is well ordered. One extends this to R .

9) One proves that $(R, +, \times, -, 0, 1, \leq)$ is an ordered ring with $R_{\geq 0}$ well ordered.

So the existence part of Theorem 12.1 follows. The uniqueness part follows from the conditions $0 = \emptyset$ and $x + 1 = \{x\}$ for $x \geq 0$.

From now on we accept Theorem 12.1 (either as a theorem whose proof we summarily sketched or as an additional axiom for Set Theory).

DEFINITION 12.7. Define the natural numbers $2, 3, \dots, 9$ by

$$\begin{aligned} 2 &= 1 + 1 \\ 3 &= 2 + 1 \\ &\dots \\ 9 &= 8 + 1. \end{aligned}$$

Define $10 = 2 \times 5$. Define $10^2 = 10 \times 10$, etc. Define symbols like 423 as being $4 \times 10^2 + 2 \times 10 + 3$, etc. This is called a *decimal representation*.

EXERCISE 12.8. Prove that $12 = 9 + 3$. Hint: We have:

$$\begin{aligned} 12 &= 10 + 2 \\ &= 2 \times 5 + 2 \\ &= (1 + 1) \times 5 + 2 \\ &= 1 \times 5 + 1 \times 5 + 2 = 5 + 5 + 2 \\ &= 5 + 5 + 1 + 1 = 5 + 6 + 1 = 5 + 7 = 4 + 1 + 7 \\ &= 4 + 8 = 3 + 1 + 8 = 3 + 9 = 9 + 3. \end{aligned}$$

EXERCISE 12.9. Prove that $18 + 17 = 35$. Prove that $17 \times 3 = 51$.

REMARK 12.10. In Kant's analysis, statements like the ones in the previous exercise were viewed as synthetic; in contemporary Mathematics, hence in the approach we follow, all these statements are, on the contrary, analytic statements. (The definition of analytic/synthetic is taken here in the sense of Leibniz and Kant.)

EXERCISE 12.11. Prove that $7 \leq 20$.

DEFINITION 12.12. For every integers $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ the set $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} \mid a \leq x \leq b\}$ will be denoted, for simplicity, by $\{a, \dots, b\}$. This set is clearly empty if $a > b$. If other numbers in addition to a, b are specified then the meaning of our notation will be clear from the context; for instance $\{0, 1, \dots, n\}$ means $\{0, \dots, n\}$ whereas $\{2, 4, 6, \dots, 2n\}$ will mean $\{2x \mid 1 \leq x \leq n\}$, etc. A similar convention applies if there are no numbers after the dots.

EXAMPLE 12.13. $\{-2, \dots, 11\} = \{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11\}$.

Recall that a subset $A \subset \mathbb{N}$ is bounded (equivalently bounded from above) if there exists $b \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $a \leq b$ for all $a \in A$; we say that A is bounded by b from above.

EXERCISE 12.14. Prove that \mathbb{N} is not bounded.

EXERCISE 12.15. Prove that every subset of \mathbb{Z} bounded from above has a maximum. Hint: If A is bounded from above by b consider the set $\{b - x \mid x \in A\}$.

DEFINITION 12.16. An integer a is even if there exists an integer b such that $a = 2b$. An integer is odd if it is not even.

EXERCISE 12.17. Prove that if a is odd then $a - 1$ is even. Hint: Consider the set $\{b \in \mathbb{N} \mid 2b \geq a\}$, and let c be the minimum element of S . Then show that $2(c - 1) < a$. Finally show that this implies $a = 2c - 1$.

EXERCISE 12.18. Prove that if a and b are odd then ab is odd. Hint: Write $a = 2c + 1$ and $b = 2d + 1$ (cf. the previous exercise) and compute $(2c + 1)(2d + 1)$.

EXERCISE 12.19. Consider the following sentence: There is no bijection between \mathbb{N} and \mathbb{Z} . Explain the mistake in the following wrong proof; this is an instance of a fallacy discussed earlier.

“*Proof.*” Assume there is a bijection $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$. Define $f(x) = x$. Then f is not surjective so it is not a bijection.

EXERCISE 12.20. Prove that there is a bijection between \mathbb{N} and \mathbb{Z} .

Induction

Induction is the single most important method to prove elementary theorems about the integers. (More subtle theorems, such as many of the theorems of “number theory,” require more sophisticated methods.) Proofs by induction first appear in the works of Pascal and Jakob Bernoulli in the 17th century.

Let $P(x)$ be a formula in the language L_{set} of sets, with one free variable x . We shall always assume, in what follows, that $P(x)$ is the conjunction of “ $x \in \mathbb{N}$ ” with some other formula; this can be thought of as saying that $P(x)$ is a formula in which x is assumed to be in \mathbb{N} . For each such $P(x)$ we have:

THEOREM 13.1. (*Induction Principle for $P(x)$*) Assume

1) $P(1)$.

2) For all $n \neq 1$ if $P(n - 1)$ then $P(n)$.

Then for all n we have $P(n)$.

Note that 2) is equivalent to:

2') For all n if $P(n)$ then $P(n + 1)$.

There is no advantage in using 2) over 2') or vice versa; we will usually use 2) in what follows.

The above theorem is expressed, as usual, in Argot. The same expressed as a sentence in L_{set} reads:

$$(P(1) \wedge ((\forall x((x \neq 1) \wedge P(x - 1)) \rightarrow P(x))) \rightarrow (\forall x P(x))).$$

Proving that “for all n we have $P(n)$ ” by proving first that $P(1)$ and second that “for all $n \neq 1$ we have $P(n - 1) \rightarrow P(n)$ ” is called a proof by *induction on n* . The proof of $P(n - 1) \rightarrow P(n)$ is called the *induction step*. We call $P(n - 1)$ the *induction hypothesis*.

Note that we have a theorem for each $P(x)$. Note also that the above Theorem does not say “for all formula P something happens”; that would not be a sentence in the language of sets. It would not be a metasentence in Metalanguage either because it contains quantifiers.

Proof. Let $S = \{n \in \mathbb{N} \mid \neg P(n)\}$. We want to show that $S = \emptyset$. Assume $S \neq \emptyset$ and seek a contradiction. Let m be the minimum of S ; in particular $m \in S$. By 1) $m \neq 1$. By Exercise 12.5 $m - 1 \in \mathbb{N}$. By minimality of m , we have $P(m - 1)$. By 2) we get $P(m)$ so $m \notin S$, a contradiction. \square

Say that an integer a divides an integer b if there exists an integers c such that $b = ac$; write $a|b$ for “ a divides b .” Define $n^2 = n \times n$, $n^3 = n^2 \times n$, $n^4 = n^3 \times n$, $n^5 = n^4 \times n$ for every integer n .

EXERCISE 13.2. Prove that for every natural n we have $3|n^3 - n$. Hint: Proceed by induction on n as follows. We let $P(n)$ be the sentence: $3|n^3 - n$. $P(1)$ is true because $1^3 - 1 = 3 \times 0$. Assume now that $P(n-1)$ is true (the induction hypothesis) i.e., $(n-1)^3 - (n-1) = 3q$ for some integer q and let us check that $P(n)$ is true i.e., that $n^3 - n = 3r$ for some integer r . The equality $(n-1)^3 - (n-1) = 3q$ reads $n^3 - 3n^2 + 3n - 1 - n + 1 = 3q$. Hence $n^3 - n = 3(n^2 - n + q)$ and we are done by taking $r = n^2 - n + q$.

EXERCISE 13.3. Prove that for every natural n we have $5|n^5 - n$.

REMARK 13.4. Assume we want to prove a sentence S of the form “for all n and for all m we have $Q(n, m)$ ” with $Q(x, y)$ having two free variables x, y ; so induction does not apply directly. To apply induction we may view this sentence as equal to “for all n we have $P(n)$ ” where $P(x) = “\forall y Q(x, y)”$ has now only one free variable x . If we prove “for all n we have $P(n)$ ” by induction we say that we have proved S by “induction on n .” We can of course also view S as equivalent to “for all m we have $R(m)$ ” with $R(y) = “\forall x Q(x, y)”$. If we prove “for all m we have $R(m)$ ” by induction we say that we have proved S by “induction on m .” So there are two choices for a proof by induction of a sentence like S and it is sometimes an art to pick the right choice. A similar discussion holds for the case when we have 3, 4, ... variables.

Here is an example of this situation; the statement below “depends on two natural numbers n and m ”. Recall that we denoted

$$\{1, \dots, n\} = \{x \in \mathbb{N} \mid 1 \leq x \leq n\}.$$

PROPOSITION 13.5. For all n and m if there exists a bijection

$$\{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, m\}$$

then $n = m$.

Proof. We prove the statement by induction on n . So we let $P(n)$ be the the following sentence: “for all m if there exists a bijection $\{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, m\}$ then $n = m$.” We prove “for all n , $P(n)$ ” by induction. Clearly $P(1)$ is true; cf. the Exercise below. Assume now $P(n-1)$ is true and let’s prove that $P(n)$ is true. So take m arbitrary and consider a bijection $F : \{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, m\}$; we want to prove that $n = m$. Let $i = F(n)$ and define the map $G : \{1, \dots, n-1\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, m\} \setminus \{i\}$ by $G(j) = F(j)$ for all $1 \leq j \leq n-1$. Then clearly G is a bijection. Now consider the map $H : \{1, \dots, m\} \setminus \{i\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, m-1\}$ defined by $H(j) = j$ for $1 \leq j \leq i-1$ and $H(j) = j-1$ for $i+1 \leq j \leq m$. (The definition is correct because for every $j \in \{1, \dots, m\} \setminus \{i\}$ either $j \leq i-1$ or $j \geq i+1$; cf. Exercise 12.4.) Clearly H is a bijection. We get a bijection

$$H \circ G : \{1, \dots, n-1\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, m-1\}.$$

Since $P(n-1)$ is true we get $n-1 = m-1$. (Note that it was crucial that $P(n)$ is a sentence that involves “for all m ” because we applied $P(n-1)$ to the case when m was replaced by $m-1$.) Hence $n = m$ and we are done. \square

EXERCISE 13.6. Check that $P(1)$ is true in the above Proposition.

REMARK 13.7. Note the general strategy of proofs by inductions. Say $P(n)$ is “about n objects.” There are two steps. The first step is the verification of

$P(1)$ i.e., one verifies the statement “for one object.” For the second step (the induction step) one considers a situation with n objects; one “removes” from that situation “one object” to get a “situation with $n-1$ objects”; one uses the “induction hypothesis” $P(n-1)$ to conclude the claim for the “situation with $n-1$ objects.” Then one tries to “go back” and prove that the claim is true for the situation with n objects. So the second step is performed by “removing” one object from an arbitrary situation with n objects and NOT by adding one object to an arbitrary situation with $n-1$ objects. Below is an example of a fallacious reasoning by induction based on “adding” instead of “subtracting” an object.

EXAMPLE 13.8. Here is a wrong argument for the induction step in the proof of Proposition 13.5.

“Proof.” Let $G : \{1, \dots, n-1\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, m-1\}$ be any bijection and let $F : \{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, m\}$ be defined by $F(i) = G(i)$ for $i \leq n-1$ and $F(n) = m$. Clearly F is a bijection. Now by the induction hypothesis $n-1 = m-1$. Hence $n = m$. This ends the proof.

The mistake is that the above does not end the proof: the above argument only proves that $n = m$ in case our bijection $F : \{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, m\}$ is constructed from a bijection $G : \{1, \dots, n-1\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, m-1\}$ in the special way described above. But an arbitrary bijection $F : \{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, m\}$ does not always arise the way we defined F in the above “proof.” In some sense the mistake we just pointed out is that of defining the same constant twice (cf. Example 12.19): we were supposed to define the symbol F as being an arbitrary bijection but then we redefined F in a special way through an arbitrary G . The point is that if G is arbitrary and F is defined as above in terms of G then F will not be arbitrary (because F will always send n into m).

DEFINITION 13.9. A set A is finite if there exists an integer $n \geq 0$ and a bijection $F : \{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow A$. (Note that n is then unique by Proposition 13.5.) We write $|A| = n$ and we call this number the *cardinality* of A or the *number of elements* of A . (Note that $|\emptyset| = 0$.) If $F(i) = a_i$ we write $A = \{a_1, \dots, a_n\}$. (This notation conflicts with the notation $\{a, \dots, b\}$ introduced in Definition 12.12. However the meaning of the notation should be clear, in each case, from context.) A set is infinite if it is not finite.

EXERCISE 13.10. Prove that $|\{2, 4, -6, 9, -100\}| = 5$.

EXERCISE 13.11. For every finite sets A and B we have that $A \cup B$ is finite and

$$|A \cup B| + |A \cap B| = |A| + |B|.$$

Hint: First examine the case $A \cap B = \emptyset$. In this case if $F : \{1, \dots, a\} \rightarrow A$ and $G : \{1, \dots, b\} \rightarrow B$ are bijections prove that $H : \{1, \dots, a+b\} \rightarrow A \cup B$ defined by $H(i) = F(i)$ for $1 \leq i \leq a$ and $H(i) = G(i-a)$ for $a+1 \leq i \leq a+b$ is a bijection. The case when $A \cap B \neq \emptyset$ can be reduced to the previous case using the fact that since $A \cup B = A \cup (B \setminus A)$ and $B = (B \setminus A) \cup (A \cap B)$ we have

$$|A \cup B| + |A \cap B| = |A| + |B \setminus A| + |A \cap B| = |A| + |B|.$$

EXERCISE 13.12. For every finite sets A and B prove that $A \times B$ is finite and

$$|A \times B| = |A| \times |B|.$$

Hint: Induction on $|A|$.

EXERCISE 13.13. For every finite sets A and B prove that $Map(A, B)$ is finite and

$$|Map(A, B)| = |B|^{|A|}.$$

Hint: Induction on $|A|$.

EXERCISE 13.14. Let $F : A \rightarrow B$ be a surjective map between finite sets of cardinalities $|A| = a$ and $|B| = b$. Let $c \in \mathbb{N}$ and assume that for all $y \in B$ we have that

$$|F^{-1}(y)| = c.$$

Prove that $a = bc$.

Hint. Induction on b .

EXERCISE 13.15. Let $S = \{1, \dots, n\}$ and A_1, \dots, A_n finite sets. Prove the following formula (called the *inclusion-exclusion principle*):

$$|\cup_{i \in S} A_i| = \sum_{I \in \mathcal{P}(S) \setminus \{\emptyset\}} (-1)^{|I|+1} |\cap_{i \in I} A_i|.$$

Hint: use induction on n and Exercise 13.11.

EXERCISE 13.16. Let $F : \{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow R$ be a map, where R is a ring, and write $F(i) = a_i$. We refer to such a map as a (finite) family of numbers. Prove that there exists a unique map $G : \{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow R$ such that $G(1) = a_1$ and $G(k) = G(k-1) + a_k$ for $2 \leq k \leq n$. Hint: Induction on n .

DEFINITION 13.17. In the notation of the above Exercise define the (finite) sum $\sum_{i=1}^n a_i$ as the number $G(n)$. We also write $a_1 + \dots + a_n$ for this sum. If $a_1 = \dots = a_n = a$ the sum $a_1 + \dots + a_n$ is written as $a + \dots + a$ (n times).

EXERCISE 13.18. Prove that for every $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$ we have

$$a \times b = a + \dots + a \text{ (} b \text{ times)} = b + \dots + b \text{ (} a \text{ times)}.$$

EXERCISE 13.19. Define in a similar way the (finite) product $\prod_{i=1}^n a_i$ (which is also denoted by $a_1 \dots a_n = a_1 \times \dots \times a_n$). Prove the analogues of associativity and distributivity for sums and products of families of numbers. Define $b^a = b \times \dots \times b$ (a times) for $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$ and prove that $b^{a+c} = b^a \times b^c$ and $(b^a)^c = b^{ac}$.

EXERCISE 13.20. Prove that if a is an integer and n is a natural number then

$$a^n - 1 = (a - 1)(a^{n-1} + a^{n-2} + \dots + a + 1).$$

Hint: Induction on n .

EXERCISE 13.21. Prove that if a is an integer and n is an integer then

$$a^{2n+1} + 1 = (a + 1)(a^{2n} - a^{2n-1} + a^{2n-2} - \dots - a + 1).$$

Hint: Set $a = -b$.

EXERCISE 13.22. Prove that a subset $A \subset \mathbb{N}$ is bounded if and only if it is finite.

Hint: We first prove by induction on b that if a set is bounded by b then it is finite. For the induction step assume A is bounded by b . If $b \notin A$ then A is bounded by $b - 1$ so it is finite. If $b \in A$ then $A \setminus \{b\}$ is bounded by $b - 1$ so $A \setminus \{b\}$ is finite so there is a bijection $F : A \setminus \{b\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, m\}$ and one constructs a bijection $G : A \rightarrow \{1, \dots, m+1\}$ by setting $G(i) = F(i)$ for $i \leq m$ and $G(m+1) = b$.

To prove that finite sets are bounded one can use again induction. A different argument would be by contradiction: assume this is false and let n be minimum natural number with the property that there is a finite subset $A \subset \mathbb{N}$ of cardinality n which is not bounded. Let $F : \{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow A$ be a bijection, $a_i = F(i)$. Then $\{a_1, \dots, a_{n-1}\}$ is bounded from above by some b and conclude that A is bounded from above by either b or a_n .

EXERCISE 13.23. Prove that every subset of a finite set is finite. Hint: Use the previous exercise.

EXERCISE 13.24. Prove that if A is a finite set and $F : A \rightarrow A$ is a map then F is injective if and only if it is surjective. Hint: By Exercise 13.11

$$|A| = |F(A) \cup (A \setminus F(A))| = |F(A)| + |A \setminus F(A)|.$$

So if F is injective then $|A| = |F(A)|$ so $|A \setminus F(A)| = 0$ so F is surjective. Assume now F is surjective. One proves first that there is a function $G : A \rightarrow A$ such that $F \circ G = I_A$ (use either the axiom of choice, cf. Exercise 9.42, or another induction); then G is injective, hence surjective, hence bijective, which implies F bijective, hence surjective.

(Note that Cantor's original definition of finite sets is: A is finite if and only if every injective map from A to A is surjective; so what the exercise did is to show that our definition of finite sets implies Cantor's. One can also prove that Cantor's definition of finite sets implies ours; cf. Exercise 16.9.)

DEFINITION 13.25. Let A be a set and $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Define the set A^n to be the set $\text{Map}(\{1, \dots, n\}, A)$ of all maps $\{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow A$. Call

$$A^* = \prod_{n \in \mathbb{N}} A^n$$

the set of *words* with letters in A . We identify A^n with subsets of A^* via the maps $x \mapsto (x, n)$, i.e., we write (a_1, \dots, a_n) instead of $((a_1, \dots, a_n), n)$.

DEFINITION 13.26. If $f : \{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow A$ and $f(i) = a_i$ we write f as a "tuple" (a_1, \dots, a_n) and sometimes as a "word" $a_1 \dots a_n$; in other words we add to the definitions of Set Theory the following definitions

$$f = (a_1, \dots, a_n) = a_1 \dots a_n.$$

EXERCISE 13.27.

1) Show that the map $A \rightarrow A^1$ sending $a \mapsto f_a$, where $f_a(1) = a$, is a bijection. From now we identify A^1 with A via this bijection.

2) Show that the maps $A^n \times A^m \rightarrow A^{n+m}$,

$$((a_1, \dots, a_n), (b_1, \dots, b_m)) \mapsto (a_1, \dots, a_n, b_1, \dots, b_m)$$

(called *concatenations*), are bijections. From now on we identify $A^n \times A^m$ and A^{n+m} via these bijections. In particular A^2 is identified with $A \times A$, etc.

3) Consider the induced (non-injective) binary operation $A^* \times A^* \rightarrow A^*$, $(u, v) \rightarrow uv$. Prove that $u(vw) = (uv)w$.

REMARK 13.28. Assume in this Remark only that we know some space geometry, in particular we know what a convex polyhedron is. (Pyramids, prisms, dodecahedra, etc., are examples of convex polyhedra.) Let Π be a convex polyhedron and denote by $v(\Pi), e(\Pi), f(\Pi)$ the numbers of vertices, edges and faces

respectively. Then a famous theorem of Euler (which had also been independently discovered by Descartes but kept secret by him) says that

$$v(\Pi) - e(\Pi) + f(\Pi) = 2.$$

(One can check this is true, say for pyramids, prisms, dodecahedra, etc.)

We present in what follows a wrong “proof” of this theorem. The “proof” will be by induction on the number of vertices and the mistake will be quite instructive.

Let $P(n)$ be the sentence that for every polyhedron Π with $v(\Pi) = n$ the formula above holds. We will attempt to prove by induction that for all n we have $P(n)$. Assume we have a polyhedron Π with $v(\Pi) = n - 1$. By the induction hypothesis $v(\Pi) - e(\Pi) + f(\Pi) = 2$. Now pick a face $A_1A_2\dots A_k$ of Π and add a vertex V to Π close to that face. We obtain a new polyhedron Π^+ with $v(\Pi^+) = v(\Pi) + 1 = n - 1 + 1 = n$ vertices, $e(\Pi^+) = e(\Pi) + k$ edges (the new edges are VA_1, \dots, VA_k) and $f(\Pi^+) = f(\Pi) + k - 1$ faces (because the face $A_1A_2\dots A_k$ of Π ceases to be a face in Π^+ but Π^+ has acquired new faces VA_1A_2, \dots, VA_kA_1). We get that

$$\begin{aligned} v(\Pi^+) - e(\Pi^+) + f(\Pi^+) &= (v(\Pi) + 1) - (e(\Pi) + k) + (f(\Pi) + k - 1) \\ &= v(\Pi) - e(\Pi) + f(\Pi) \\ &= 2, \end{aligned}$$

and $P(n)$ follows.

The mistake in the above “proof” is that the above did not prove $P(n)$ for an arbitrary polyhedron with n vertices: it only proved $P(n)$ for polyhedra Π^+ which can be obtained from some polyhedron Π with $n - 1$ vertices by adding a vertex close to some face of Π . But clearly an arbitrary polyhedron with n vertices is not always obtained this way: for instance a cube cannot be obtained in this way from a polyhedron with 7 vertices. The mistake is similar to the one in the wrong proof presented in Example 13.8.

One can ask for a correct proof of Euler’s theorem. This will not be done in the present course. But one can ask if a proof of $\forall n P(n)$ above can be achieved by induction assuming some knowledge of geometry. A correct attempt would be to start with an arbitrary polyhedron Σ with $v(\Sigma) = n$, remove a vertex (and the edges adjacent to the vertex) and try deform the remaining configuration until one obtains a new polyhedron Σ^- with $n - 1$ vertices, apply the induction hypothesis to Σ^- to get a certain equality of numbers and try use that equality to prove $P(n)$ for Σ . Such an attempt would be correct but runs into serious difficulties some related to the possibility of deforming the configuration (try again the example of the cube). A way to see the difficulty is to take into consideration the fact that Euler’s formula actually fails for some non-convex polyhedra so convexity needs to be used at some point in the proof. Bottom line: one needs a better approach and this is done in a chapter of Mathematics called *Topology* (but not in the Topology Chapter of our course).

CHAPTER 14

Rationals

With the integers at our disposal one can use the axioms of Set Theory to construct a whole array of familiar sets of numbers such as the rationals, the reals, the imaginaries, etc. We start here with the rationals.

DEFINITION 14.1. For every $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $b \neq 0$ define the fraction $\frac{a}{b}$ to be the set of all pairs (c, d) with $c, d \in \mathbb{Z}$, $d \neq 0$ such that $ad = bc$. Denote by \mathbb{Q} the set of all fractions. So

$$\frac{a}{b} = \{(c, d) \in \mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z} \mid d \neq 0, ad = bc\},$$

$$\mathbb{Q} = \left\{ \frac{a}{b} \mid a, b \in \mathbb{Z}, b \neq 0 \right\}.$$

EXAMPLE 14.2.

$$\frac{6}{10} = \{(6, 10), (-3, -5), (9, 15), \dots\} \in \mathbb{Q}.$$

EXERCISE 14.3. Prove that $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ if and only if $ad = bc$. Hint: Assume $ad = bc$ and let us prove that $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$. We need to show that $\frac{a}{b} \subset \frac{c}{d}$ and that $\frac{c}{d} \subset \frac{a}{b}$. Now if $(x, y) \in \frac{a}{b}$ then $xb = ay$; hence $xbd = ayd$. Since $ad = bc$ we get $xbd = bcy$. Hence $b(xd - cy) = 0$. Since $b \neq 0$ we have $xd - cy = 0$ hence $xd = cy$ hence $(x, y) \in \frac{c}{d}$. We proved that $\frac{a}{b} \subset \frac{c}{d}$. The other inclusion is proved similarly. So the equality $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ is proved. Conversely if one assumes $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ one needs to prove $ad = bc$; we leave this to the reader.

EXERCISE 14.4. On the set $A = \mathbb{Z} \times (\mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\})$ one can consider the relation: $(a, b) \sim (c, d)$ if and only if $ad = bc$. Prove that \sim is an equivalence relation. Then observe that $\frac{a}{b}$ is the equivalence class

$$\widehat{(a, b)}$$

of (a, b) . Also observe that $\mathbb{Q} = A / \sim$ is the quotient of A by the relation \sim .

EXERCISE 14.5. Prove that the map $\mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Q}$, $a \mapsto \frac{a}{1}$ is injective.

DEFINITION 14.6. By abuse we identify $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $\frac{a}{1} \in \mathbb{Q}$ and write $\frac{a}{1} = a$; this identifies \mathbb{Z} with a subset of \mathbb{Q} . Such identifications are very common and will be done later in similar contexts.

DEFINITION 14.7. Define binary operations $+$ and \times on \mathbb{Q} by the formulae $\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ad+bc}{bd}$, $\frac{a}{b} \times \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ac}{bd}$.

Note that the above definition is correct only if one shows that there exist maps $F : \mathbb{Q} \times \mathbb{Q} \rightarrow \mathbb{Q}$ and $G : \mathbb{Q} \times \mathbb{Q} \rightarrow \mathbb{Q}$ with the property that for all $\frac{a}{b}, \frac{c}{d} \in \mathbb{Q}$ we have

$$F\left(\frac{a}{b}, \frac{c}{d}\right) = \frac{ad+bc}{bd}$$

and

$$G\left(\frac{a}{b}, \frac{c}{d}\right) = \frac{ac}{bd}.$$

EXERCISE 14.8. Show that there exist maps F and G as above, i.e., show that the sets

$$\left\{ \left(\left(\frac{a}{b}, \frac{c}{d} \right), \frac{ad+bc}{bd} \right) \in (\mathbb{Q} \times \mathbb{Q}) \times \mathbb{Q} \mid a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{Z}, bd \neq 0 \right\}$$

and

$$\left\{ \left(\left(\frac{a}{b}, \frac{c}{d} \right), \frac{ac}{bd} \right) \in (\mathbb{Q} \times \mathbb{Q}) \times \mathbb{Q} \mid a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{Z}, bd \neq 0 \right\}$$

are maps $\mathbb{Q} \times \mathbb{Q} \rightarrow \mathbb{Q}$. Hint: To check this it is necessary and sufficient to check that if $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{a'}{b'}$, $\frac{c}{d} = \frac{c'}{d'}$ then $\frac{ad+bc}{bd} = \frac{a'd'+b'c'}{b'd'}$ and $\frac{ac}{bd} = \frac{a'c'}{b'd'}$.

REMARK 14.9. To see why we need to check the correctness of Definition 14.7 let us look at the following example. We claim, for instance, there exists no map $F: \mathbb{Q} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ such that for all $\frac{a}{b} \in \mathbb{Q}$ we have

$$F\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) = a;$$

equivalently the set

$$F = \left\{ \left(\frac{x}{y}, z \right) \in \mathbb{Q} \times \mathbb{Z} \mid x = zy \right\}$$

is not a map $\mathbb{Q} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$. Indeed assuming such a map F exists we would have

$$\left(\frac{3}{5}, 3 \right), \left(\frac{6}{10}, 6 \right) \in F, \quad \frac{3}{5} = \frac{6}{10}, \quad 3 \neq 6.$$

Alternatively, we would have

$$3 = F\left(\frac{3}{5}\right) = F\left(\frac{6}{10}\right) = 6,$$

a contradiction. This example suggests that the existence of F and G in Exercise 14.8 is far from being automatic.

EXERCISE 14.10. Prove that \mathbb{Q} (with the operations $+$ and \times defined above and with the elements $0, 1$) is a field.

DEFINITION 14.11. For $\frac{a}{b}, \frac{c}{d}$ with $b, d > 0$ write $\frac{a}{b} \leq \frac{c}{d}$ if $ad - bc \leq 0$. Also write $\frac{a}{b} < \frac{c}{d}$ if $\frac{a}{b} \leq \frac{c}{d}$ and $\frac{a}{b} \neq \frac{c}{d}$.

EXERCISE 14.12. Prove that \mathbb{Q} equipped with \leq is an ordered ring but $\mathbb{Q}_{\geq 0}$ is not well ordered.

EXERCISE 14.13. Prove by induction the following equalities:

$$1 + 2 + \dots + n = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}.$$

$$1^2 + 2^2 + \dots + n^2 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}.$$

$$1^3 + 2^3 + \dots + n^3 = \frac{n^2(n+1)^2}{4}.$$

More generally Bernoulli (17th century) studied sums of the form

$$1^k + 2^k + \dots + n^k$$

for arbitrary $k \in \mathbb{N}$; he discovered formulae for them (involving the so-called *Bernoulli polynomials*) which turned out to play a role in many mathematical contexts.

EXERCISE 14.14. Prove that there is no $x \in \mathbb{Q}$ such that $x^2 = 2$.

Hint: Assume there exists $x \in \mathbb{Q}$ such that $x^2 = 2$ and seek a contradiction. Let $a \in \mathbb{N}$ be minimal with the property that $x = \frac{a}{b}$ for some b . Now $\frac{a^2}{b^2} = 2$ hence $2b^2 = a^2$. Hence a^2 is even. Hence a is even (because if a were odd then a^2 would be odd). Hence $a = 2c$ for some integer c . Hence $2b^2 = (2c)^2 = 4c^2$. Hence $b^2 = 2c^2$. Hence b^2 is even. Hence b is even. Hence $b = 2d$ for some integer d . Hence $x = \frac{2c}{2d} = \frac{c}{d}$ and $c < a$. This contradicts the minimality of a which ends the proof.

REMARK 14.15. The above proof is probably one of the “first” proofs by contradiction in the history of Mathematics; this proof appears, for instance, in Aristotle, and it is believed to have been discovered by the Pythagoreans. The impossibility of solving $x^2 = 2$ for $x \in \mathbb{Q}$ was translated by the Greeks as evidence that arithmetic is insufficient to control geometry ($\sqrt{2}$ is the length of the diagonal of a square with side 1) and arguably created the first crisis in the history of Mathematics, leading to a separation of algebra and geometry that lasted until Fermat and Descartes.

CHAPTER 15

Combinatorics

Combinatorics is about counting elements in (i.e., finding cardinalities of) finite sets. The origins of combinatorics are in the work of Pascal, Jakob Bernoulli, and Leibniz; these origins are intertwined with the origins of probability theory and the early development of calculus.

DEFINITION 15.1. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ define the factorial of n (read n factorial) by

$$n! = 1 \times 2 \times \dots \times n \in \mathbb{N}.$$

Also set $0! = 1$.

DEFINITION 15.2. For $0 \leq k \leq n$ in \mathbb{Z} define the binomial coefficient

$$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} \in \mathbb{Q}.$$

One also reads this “ n choose k .”

EXERCISE 15.3. Prove that

$$\binom{n}{k} = \binom{n}{n-k}$$

and

$$\binom{n}{0} = 1, \quad \binom{n}{1} = n.$$

EXERCISE 15.4. Prove that

$$\binom{n}{k} + \binom{n}{k+1} = \binom{n+1}{k+1}.$$

Hint: Direct computation with the definition.

EXERCISE 15.5. Prove that

$$\binom{n}{k} \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

Hint: Proceed by induction on n ; use Exercise 15.4.

EXERCISE 15.6. For every a, b in any ring we have

$$(a+b)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} a^k b^{n-k}.$$

Here if c is in a ring R and $m \in \mathbb{N}$ then $mc = c + \dots + c$ (m times). Hint: Induction on n and use Exercise 15.4.

EXERCISE 15.7. (Subsets) Prove that if $|A| = n$ then $|\mathcal{P}(A)| = 2^n$. (A set with n elements has 2^n subsets.) Hint: Induction on n ; if $A = \{a_1, \dots, a_{n+1}\}$ use

$$\mathcal{P}(A) = \{B \in \mathcal{P}(A) \mid a_{n+1} \in B\} \cup \{B \in \mathcal{P}(A) \mid a_{n+1} \notin B\}.$$

EXERCISE 15.8. (Combinations) Let A be a set with $|A| = n$, let $0 \leq k \leq n$, and set

$$\text{Comb}(k, A) = \{B \in \mathcal{P}(A) \mid |B| = k\}.$$

Prove that

$$|\text{Comb}(k, A)| = \binom{n}{k}.$$

In other words a set of n elements has exactly $\binom{n}{k}$ subsets with k elements. A subset of A having k elements is called a *combination* of k elements from the set A .

Hint: Proceed by induction on n . If $A = \{a_1, \dots, a_{n+1}\}$ use Exercise 15.4 plus the fact that $\text{Comb}(k, A)$ can be written as

$$\{B \in \mathcal{P}(A) \mid |B| = k, a_{n+1} \in B\} \cup \{B \in \mathcal{P}(A) \mid |B| = k, a_{n+1} \notin B\}.$$

EXERCISE 15.9. (Permutations) For a set A let $\text{Perm}(A) \subset \text{Map}(A, A)$ be the set of all bijections $F : A \rightarrow A$. A bijection $F : A \rightarrow A$ is also called a *permutation*. Prove that if $|A| = n$ then

$$|\text{Perm}(A)| = n!.$$

So the exercise says that a set of n elements has $n!$ permutations. Hint: Let $|A| = |B| = n$ and let $\text{Bij}(A, B)$ be the set of all bijections $F : A \rightarrow B$; it is enough to show that $|\text{Bij}(A, B)| = n!$. Proceed by induction on n ; if $A = \{a_1, \dots, a_{n+1}\}$, $B = \{b_1, \dots, b_{n+1}\}$ then use the fact that

$$\text{Bij}(A, B) = \bigcup_{k=1}^{n+1} \{F \in \text{Bij}(A, B) \mid F(a_1) = b_k\}.$$

For $d \in \mathbb{N}$ and X a set let X^d be the set of all maps $\{1, \dots, d\} \rightarrow X$. We identify a map $i \mapsto a_i$ with the tuple (a_1, \dots, a_d) .

EXERCISE 15.10. (Combinations with repetition) Let

$$\text{Combrep}(k, n) = \{(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{Z}^n \mid x_i \geq 0, x_1 + \dots + x_n = k\}.$$

Prove that

$$|\text{Combrep}(k, n)| = \binom{k+n-1}{n-1}.$$

Hint: Let $A = \{1, \dots, k+n-1\}$. Prove that there is a bijection

$$\text{Comb}(n-1, A) \rightarrow \text{Combrep}(k, n).$$

The bijection is given by attaching to every subset

$$\{i_1, \dots, i_{n-1}\} \subset \{1, \dots, k+n-1\},$$

where $i_1 < \dots < i_{n-1}$, the tuple (x_1, \dots, x_n) where

- 1) $x_1 = |\{i \in \mathbb{Z} \mid 1 \leq i < i_1\}|$,
- 2) $x_j = |\{i \in \mathbb{Z} \mid i_j < i < i_{j+1}\}|$, for $2 \leq j \leq n-1$, and
- 3) $x_n = |\{i \in \mathbb{Z} \mid i_{n-1} < i \leq k+n-1\}|$.

EXERCISE 15.11. (Arrangements). Let A be a set with $|A| = n$, let $0 \leq k \leq n$, and let $\text{Arr}(k, A)$ be the subset of $A^k = A \times \dots \times A$ (k times) consisting of all tuples (a_1, \dots, a_k) with $a_1, \dots, a_k \in A$ distinct. (An element of $\text{Arr}(k, A)$ is called an *arrangement* of k elements of A .)

1) Prove that there is a bijection

$$\text{Arr}(n, A) \rightarrow \text{Perm}(A).$$

2) Prove that

$$|\text{Arr}(k, A)| = \frac{n!}{(n-k)!}.$$

Hint for 1: Fix a bijection $\sigma : A \rightarrow \{1, \dots, n\}$ and consider the map that sends an arrangement (a_1, \dots, a_k) into the bijection $A \rightarrow A$ that sends each $x \in A$ into $a_{\sigma(x)}$.

Hint for 2: Consider the map $F : \text{Arr}(k, A) \rightarrow \text{Comb}(k, A)$ defined by

$$F(a_1, \dots, a_k) = \{a_1, \dots, a_k\}$$

and use Exercise 13.14.

Hint for an alternative proof of 2: Proceed by induction on k by considering the map $F : \text{Arr}(k, A) \rightarrow \text{Arr}(k-1, A)$ defined by

$$F(a_1, \dots, a_k) = (a_1, \dots, a_{k-1})$$

and use Exercise 13.14. Note that if we use this alternative proof of 2 plus Exercise 13.14 then one can give an alternative proof for Exercise 15.8.

EXERCISE 15.12. (Bose-Einstein state space). Let $A = \{1, \dots, n\}$ for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$, let $k \in \mathbb{N}$, and let \sim be the equivalence relation on $A^k = A \times \dots \times A$ (k times) such that

$$(a_1, \dots, a_k) \sim (b_1, \dots, b_k)$$

if and only if there exists a bijection $\sigma : \{1, \dots, k\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, k\}$ such that for all $i \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ we have $b_i = a_{\sigma(i)}$. Find the cardinality of A^k / \sim .

(In applications A^k / \sim , is taken to be the Bose-Einstein space of “all possible states for a system of k bosons (e.g. of photons) each of which can be in one of n possible states.” Bosons are “indistinguishable” and this is why we take the quotient of A^k by \sim . By the way the set A^k is referred to as the Maxwell-Boltzmann state space of all possible states for k distinguishable particles (such as molecules in a gas) each of which can be in one of n possible states.)

Hint: Show that the set A^k / \sim is in bijection with the set $\text{Combrep}(k, n)$ of all tuples (x_1, \dots, x_n) of integers $x_i \geq 0$ such that $x_1 + \dots + x_n = k$ as follows: to the equivalence class of $(a_1, \dots, a_k) \in A^k$ one attaches the tuple $(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{Z}^n$ where $x_i \geq 0$ is the number of times i appears among a_1, \dots, a_k , i.e.,

$$x_i = |\{j \in \{1, \dots, k\} \mid a_j = i\}|.$$

EXERCISE 15.13. (Fermi-Dirac state space). Let $A = \{1, \dots, n\}$ for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$, let $k \in \mathbb{N}$, $k \leq n$, recall that $\text{Arr}(k, A) \subset A^k$ denotes the set of all tuples $(a_1, \dots, a_k) \in A^k$ such that a_1, \dots, a_k are distinct and let \sim be the equivalence relation on $\text{Arr}(k, A)$ induced by the one in the previous exercise. Find the cardinality of $\text{Arr}(k, A) / \sim$.

(In applications $\text{Arr}(k, A)$ is taken to be the Fermi-Dirac space of “all possible states for a system of k fermions (e.g. electrons) each of which can be in one of n possible states”. Fermions are indistinguishable, hence the quotient by \sim , but

also, in addition, they satisfy the Pauli exclusion principle according to which no two fermions can be in the same state.)

Hint: Show that the set $\text{Arr}(k, A)/\sim$ is in bijection with the set $\text{Comb}(k, A)$ of all subsets of A of cardinality k as follows: to the equivalence class of $(a_1, \dots, a_k) \in \text{Arr}(k, A)$ one attaches the set $\{a_1, \dots, a_k\}$.

DEFINITION 15.14. Let Ω be a non-empty finite set. The map $\mu : \mathcal{P}(\Omega) \rightarrow \mathbb{Q}$ defined by

$$\mu(X) = \frac{|X|}{|\Omega|}$$

is called the *uniform probability measure* on Ω . For all X , $\mu(X)$ is called the *probability* (or measure) of X . If $X = \{x \in \Omega \mid P(x)\}$ where $P(x)$ is a formula with one free variable we say that $\mu(X)$ is the probability that P is true.

EXERCISE 15.15. Prove that for μ as above we have that for all $X, Y \in \mathcal{P}(\Omega)$ with $X \cap Y = \emptyset$,

$$\mu(X \cup Y) = \mu(X) + \mu(Y).$$

(So μ is a finite probability measure in the sense of Definition 11.36.)

Recall from loc. cit. that $X, Y \in \mathcal{P}(\Omega)$ are called *independent* if

$$\mu(X \cap Y) = \mu(X)\mu(Y).$$

EXERCISE 15.16. Assume Ω is a non-empty finite set and μ is the uniform probability measure on it.

- 1) Prove that if $X = Y \neq \emptyset$ then X and Y are not independent.
- 2) Prove that if $X \cap Y = \emptyset$ and $X \neq \emptyset, Y \neq \emptyset$ then X and Y are not independent.
- 3) Prove that if $\Omega = \Omega_1 \times \Omega_2, X = X_1 \times \Omega_2, Y = \Omega_1 \times X_2, X_1 \subset \Omega_1, X_2 \subset \Omega_2$, then X and Y are independent.

REMARK 15.17. Intuitively the uniform probability measure on Ω corresponds to a situation of “total ignorance” in which the elements of Ω are assumed to be “equiprobable.” In statistical physics, however, Ω is often identified with the state space for a physical system not all of whose states can be considered equiprobable. Indeed, let us assume in this Remark only, that we are familiar with calculus. Then, in the framework of statistical physics, one is given a surjective function $H : \Omega \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ (referred to as Hamiltonian or energy) where $\mathcal{E} \subset \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ ($\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ the set of non-negative real numbers) and then the uniform probability measure μ on Ω is replaced by a different probability measure, called the *canonical probability measure* μ_{can} on Ω , defined for $x \in \Omega$, by

$$\mu_{\text{can}}(\{x\}) = \frac{1}{|H^{-1}(H(x))|} \times \frac{\exp(-\beta H(x))}{Z}, \quad \text{where } Z = \sum_{E \in \mathcal{E}} \exp(-\beta E),$$

β is a positive real parameter (the reciprocal of the “temperature”) and \exp is the exponential function. Z as a function of β is called the *partition function*. So the states with the same energy are “equiprobable” but states with different energy are not. Note that

$$\mu_{\text{can}}(H^{-1}(E)) = \frac{1}{Z} \exp(-\beta E)$$

which only depends on E, \mathcal{E}, β but not on $|H^{-1}(E)|$ or $|\Omega|$ hence is quite different from the uniform probability measure $\mu(H^{-1}(E))$. One also defines the Boltzman

(or microcanonical) entropy $S : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by the formula

$$S(E) = \ln|H^{-1}(E)|, \quad E \in \mathcal{E},$$

where \ln is the natural logarithm. One defines the microcanonical probability measure μ_E on $H^{-1}(E)$ to be the uniform probability measure on $H^{-1}(E)$:

$$\mu_E(\{x\}) = \frac{1}{|H^{-1}(E)|} = \exp(-S(E)), \quad x \in H^{-1}(E).$$

Finally one defines the *expectation value* $\langle H \rangle$ of H ,

$$\langle H \rangle = \sum_{x \in \Omega} H(x) \times \mu_{\text{can}}(\{x\}) = \sum_{E \in \mathcal{E}} E \times \frac{1}{Z} \exp(-\beta E) = -Z^{-1} \frac{\partial Z}{\partial \beta}.$$

Planck's introduction of the quantum idea (in 1900) was based on the observation that if one takes

$$\mathcal{E} = \{nh\nu \mid n \in \mathbb{Z}, 0 \leq n \leq N\},$$

(with $N \in \mathbb{N}$, $\nu \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ the frequency, and $h \in \mathbb{R}$ the "Planck constant") then the *expectation value*, or *average*, $\langle H \rangle$ satisfies

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \langle H \rangle \rightarrow \langle H \rangle_{\text{Planck}} = \frac{1}{\beta} \times \frac{\beta h\nu}{\exp(\beta h\nu) - 1}$$

and $\langle H \rangle_{\text{Planck}}$ fits the value $\langle H \rangle_{\text{ex}}$ obtained from the experimental data. Planck's work was motivated by the fact that the value $\langle H \rangle_{\text{ex}}$ did not fit the theoretical value $\langle H \rangle_{\text{class}}$ obtained from the classical 19th century model of statistical physics. This classical model was based on the assumption that \mathcal{E} was the interval $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ (rather than a discrete subset of $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$) and the corresponding partition function was

$$Z_{\text{class}} = \int_0^{\infty} \exp(-\beta E) dE = \frac{1}{\beta}$$

which gives

$$\langle H \rangle_{\text{class}} = -Z_{\text{class}}^{-1} \frac{\partial Z_{\text{class}}}{\partial \beta} = \frac{1}{\beta} \gg \langle H \rangle_{\text{Planck}} \sim \langle H \rangle_{\text{ex}} \quad \text{for } \beta h\nu \gg 1.$$

Here \gg means "much bigger than." Planck's hypothesis on the discrete energy spectrum was an ad hoc fix to the discrepancy between classical statistical mechanics and experiment: there was no full theory behind it. The quantum theory was developed later (in the 1920s) by Heisenberg and Schrödinger.

EXAMPLE 15.18. (Dice). Let $A = \{1, \dots, 6\}$ and $\Omega = A \times A$. Let $X_4 \subset \Omega$ be defined by $X_4 = \{(a, b) \in \Omega \mid a + b = 4\}$. Then $X_4 = \{(1, 3), (2, 2), (3, 1)\}$ so $|\Omega| = 36$, $|X_4| = 3$, hence for μ the uniform probability measure on Ω we have

$$\mu(X_4) = \frac{3}{36} = \frac{1}{12}.$$

For the uniform probability measure μ_4 on X_4 and for $Y = \{(1, 3)\}$ we have

$$\mu_4(Y) = \frac{1}{3}.$$

(In applications A is called the set of possible outcomes (or states) for one dice (or molecule in a classical gas, say). Ω is called the set of possible outcomes (or states) for a pair of dice (or pair of molecules in a classical gas). The function $H : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$, $H(a, b) = a + b$ can be viewed as the *Hamiltonian* (energy). Note that $(1, 3)$ and $(3, 1)$ count as different outcomes: the dice have "individuality" in

that they are assumed to be not identical. $X_4 = H^{-1}(4)$ is the set of all possible outcomes where 2 dice are thrown and the sum is 4. Assuming all outcomes are equiprobable (total ignorance as to whether the dice are fair) the probability that $H = 4$ is by definition $1/12$. The probability μ_4 is the microcanonical probability on X_4 . The entropy satisfies $S(4) = \ln 3$.)

EXAMPLE 15.19. (Bosons). Let $A = \{1, \dots, 6\}$ and

$$\Omega = (A \times A) / \sim$$

where \sim is the smallest equivalence relation on $A \times A$ such that for all a and b we have $(a, b) \sim (b, a)$. Let $X_4 \subset \Omega$ be defined by $X_4 = \{\widehat{(a, b)} \in \Omega \mid a + b = 4\}$. Then $X_4 = \{\widehat{(1, 3)}, \widehat{(2, 2)}\}$ and $\Omega = \{\widehat{(a, b)} \mid a, b \in A\}$. Note that $|X_4| = 2$ and $|\Omega| = 1 + 2 + \dots + 5 = \frac{5 \times 6}{2} = 15$. Hence for μ the uniform probability measure on Ω we have

$$\mu(X_4) = \frac{2}{15}.$$

For the uniform probability measure μ_4 on X_4 and for $Y = \{\widehat{(1, 3)}\}$ we have

$$\mu_4(Y) = \frac{1}{2}.$$

(In applications to quantum physics A could be the set of possible states, e.g. energy levels, for one boson; this is not realistic for the number 6 does not really appear in the theory. Ω is taken by definition to be the set of possible states for a pair of bosons: unlike dice which “have individuality” the two bosons are assumed to have “no individuality” so the pairs in $(1, 3)$ and $(3, 1)$ in $A \times A$ correspond to one and the same state in Ω . X_4 is the set of all possible states of the pair of bosons where the sum is 4. Assuming that all states in Ω are equiprobable (total ignorance apart from the “no individuality” assumption) the probability that the sum is 4 is by definition $2/15$. (This is not a physically realistic assumption; as already explained, in statistical physics one replaces the uniform probability measure in Ω with the so-called canonical probability measure on Ω .) The function $H : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$, $H(\widehat{(a, b)}) = a + b$ is the *Hamiltonian* (energy). The probability μ_4 is the microcanonical probability on X_4 . The entropy satisfies $S(4) = \ln 2$.)

EXAMPLE 15.20. (Fermions). Let

$$A = \{1, \dots, 6\}, \quad \text{Arr}(2, A) = \{(a, b) \mid a, b \in A, a \neq b\} \subset A \times A, \quad \Omega = \text{Arr}(2, A) / \sim,$$

where \sim is the smallest equivalence relation on $A \times A$ such that for all a and b we have $(a, b) \sim (b, a)$. Let $X_4 \subset \Omega$ be defined by $X_4 = \{\widehat{(a, b)} \in \Omega \mid a + b = 4\}$. Then $X_4 = \{\widehat{(1, 3)}\}$ and $\Omega = \{\widehat{(a, b)} \mid a, b \in A, a \neq b\}$. Note that $|X_4| = 1$ and $|A| = 1 + 2 + 3 + 4 = 10$. Hence for μ the uniform probability measure on Ω we have

$$\mu(X_4) = \frac{1}{10}.$$

For the uniform probability measure μ_4 on X_4 and for $Y = \{\widehat{(1, 3)}\} = X_4$ we have

$$\mu_4(Y) = 1.$$

(In applications to quantum physics A could be the set of possible states for one fermion. Ω is the set of possible states for a pair of fermions: again, unlike dice which “have individuality” the two fermions have “no individuality” so $(1, 3)$ and

$(3, 1)$ correspond again to the same state in Ω ; however, unlike bosons, no two fermions can be in the same state (Pauli exclusion principle) so the state $(2, 2)$ is not allowed. X_4 is the set of all possible states of the pair of bosons where the sum is 4. Assuming that all states in Ω are equiprobable (total ignorance apart from the “no individuality” assumption and the “Pauli exclusion principle”) the probability that the sum is 4 is by definition $1/10$. (This is not a physically realistic assumption; as already explained, in statistical physics one replaces the uniform probability measure in Ω with the so-called canonical probability measure on Ω .) The function $H : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$, $H(\widehat{(a, b)}) = a + b$ is the *Hamiltonian* (energy). The probability μ_4 is the microcanonical probability on X_4 . The entropy satisfies $S(4) = \ln 1 = 0$.)

CHAPTER 16

Sequences

DEFINITION 16.1. A sequence in a set A is a map $F : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow A$. If we write $F(n) = a_n$ we also say that a_1, a_2, \dots is a sequence in A or that (a_n) is a sequence in A .

THEOREM 16.2. (*Recursion theorem*) Let A be a set, $a \in A$ an element, and let F_1, F_2, \dots be a sequence of maps $A \rightarrow A$. Then there is a unique map $G : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow A$ such that $G(1) = a$ and

$$G(n+1) = F_n(G(n))$$

for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

Sketch of proof. First one proves by induction on n that for every n there exists a map

$$G_n : \{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow A$$

such that for every $k < n$

$$G_n(k+1) = F_k(G_n(k)).$$

Next, for each natural numbers $n \leq N$ one proves by induction on k that for every k if $k \leq n$ then we have

$$G_n(k) = G_N(k).$$

In other words G_n is the restriction of G_N to $\{1, \dots, n\}$. Finally, seeing G_n as a subset of $\{1, \dots, n\} \times A$, and hence of $\mathbb{N} \times A$, one defines

$$G := \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} G_n \subset \mathbb{N} \times A$$

and one proves G is a map with the desired properties. □

EXERCISE 16.3. Fill in the details of the above proof.

One can generalize the above in various ways. Here is an immediate generalization:

EXERCISE 16.4. Let A be a set, let $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m \in A$, and let F_1, F_2, \dots be a sequence of maps $A^m \rightarrow A$. Prove that there is a unique map $G : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow A$ such that $G(1) = a_1, \dots, G(m) = a_m$, and

$$G(n+m) = F_n(G(n), G(n+1), \dots, G(n+m-1))$$

for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. (The latter equality is called a *recurrence relation* of degree m .)

Hint: use the same type of argument as the one above.

Here are some applications of recursion. First we are ready to give a proof of:

THEOREM 16.5. (*Bernstein's Theorem*) If there exist injections $F : A \rightarrow B$ and $G : B \rightarrow A$ then there exists a bijection $U : A \rightarrow B$

Proof. Let $C = G(B)$. Then clearly G defines a bijection between B and C and so it is enough to show that there is bijection between A and C . Let $H = G \circ F$. Then $H : A \rightarrow C$ is an injection. We are reduced to proving the Lemma below. \square

LEMMA 16.6. *Let A be a set and $C \subset A$ a subset. Assume there is an injection $H : A \rightarrow C$. Then there is a bijection $U : A \rightarrow C$.*

Proof. Define by recursion sequences as follows: $A_1 = A$, $A_{n+1} = H(A_n)$ and $C_1 = C$, $C_{n+1} = H(C_n)$. Define $U : A \rightarrow C$ by $U(x) = H(x)$ if $x \in A_n \setminus C_n$ for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $U(x) = x$ otherwise. We claim that $U : A \rightarrow C$ is a bijection. Indeed note that we have

$$A_\infty \subset \dots \subset C_n \subset A_n \subset \dots \subset C_2 \subset A_2 \subset C_1 \subset A_1$$

where

$$A_\infty := \bigcap_n A_n = \bigcap_n C_n.$$

Also note that the sets

$$A_1 \setminus C_1, C_1 \setminus A_2, A_2 \setminus C_2, C_2 \setminus A_3, \dots, A_\infty$$

define a partition of A and the sets

$$C_1 \setminus A_2, A_2 \setminus C_2, C_2 \setminus A_3, \dots, A_\infty$$

define a partition of C . We are done by noting that U induces bijections

$$A_1 \setminus C_1 \rightarrow A_2 \setminus C_2, A_2 \setminus C_2 \rightarrow A_3 \setminus C_3, \dots$$

and is the identity on

$$C_1 \setminus A_2, C_2 \setminus A_3, \dots, A_\infty$$

hence U is bijection. \square

Here is another application of recursion:

PROPOSITION 16.7. *Let (A, \leq) be an ordered set that has no maximal element. Then there is a sequence $F : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow A$ such that for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we have $F(n) < F(n+1)$.*

Proof. Let $B = \{(a, b) \in A \times A \mid a < b\}$. By hypothesis the first projection $F : B \rightarrow A$, $(a, b) \mapsto a$ is surjective. By the axiom of choice there exists $G : A \rightarrow B$ such that $F \circ G = I_A$; cf. Exercise 9.42. Then $G(a) > a$ for all a . By the recursion theorem there exists $F : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow A$ such that $F(n+1) = G(F(n))$ for all n and we are done. \square

EXERCISE 16.8. Prove that if A is an infinite set then there exists an injective map $F : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow A$.

Hint. First show there exists a map $H : \mathcal{P}(A) \setminus \{A\} \rightarrow A$ with the property that $H(B) \notin B$ for all B ; to do this use the axiom of choice applied to the disjoint union

$$\coprod_{B \in \mathcal{P}(A) \setminus \{A\}} (B \setminus A).$$

Cf. Exercise 9.42. Next, let $G : \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A)$ be the map defined by $G(A) = A$ and

$$G(B) = B \cup \{H(B)\}, \quad B \in \mathcal{P}(A) \setminus \{A\}.$$

Let $a \in A$. Next, by the recursion theorem there exists a unique map $K : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A)$ such that $K(1) = \{a\}$ and for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we have $K(n+1) = G(K(n))$. One proves

by induction that for all n we have that $K(n)$ is a finite set (in particular it is not equal to A). Finally define $F : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow A$ by the formula $F(n) = G(K(n))$ and one proves that F is injective.

EXERCISE 16.9. Prove that if A is an infinite set then there exists an injective map $A \rightarrow A$ which is not surjective.

Hint. By Exercise 16.8 there exists an injective map $F : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow A$. Let $a_n = F(n)$. Then define the map $K : A \rightarrow A$ by letting $K(x) = x$ for $x \notin F(\mathbb{N})$ and $K(a_n) = a_{n+1}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. One checks that K is injective but not surjective.

DEFINITION 16.10. A set A is countable if there exists a bijection $F : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow A$. A set is at most countable if it is either finite or countable. A set is uncountable if it is neither finite nor countable.

EXAMPLE 16.11. The set of all squares $S = \{n^2 \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$ is countable; indeed $F : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow S$, $F(n) = n^2$ is a bijection.

EXERCISE 16.12. Any infinite subset of a countable set is countable.

Hint: It is enough to show that every infinite subset $A \subset \mathbb{N}$ is countable. Let $F \subset \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}$ be the set

$$F = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \mid y = \min\{x \in A \mid z > x\}\}$$

which is of course a map. By the recursion theorem there exists $G : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ such that $G(n+1) = F(G(n))$. One checks that G is injective and its image is A .

EXERCISE 16.13. Let A and B be infinite sets and $F : A \rightarrow B$ a map.

1) Prove that if F is injective and B is countable then A is countable.

2) Prove that if F is surjective and A is countable then B is countable.

Hint. For 1) use the previous exercise. For 2) use the Axiom of choice to get a map $G : B \rightarrow A$ such that $F \circ G = I_B$, cf. Exercise 9.42; then G is injective and use 1).

EXERCISE 16.14.

1) Prove that $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}$ is countable.

2) Prove that \mathbb{N}^k is countable for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$.

Hint: For 1) one can find an injection $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$; e.g., $(n, m) \mapsto 2^n 3^m$. For 2) use induction on k .

EXERCISE 16.15. Prove that if A and B are countable then $A \cup B$ and $A \times B$ are countable.

EXERCISE 16.16.

1) Prove that \mathbb{Z} is countable.

2) Prove that \mathbb{Q} is countable.

Hint. For 1) write $\mathbb{Z} = \mathbb{N} \cup ((-\mathbb{N}) \cup \{0\})$. For 2) consider the surjection $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{Q}$ given by

$$(a, b) \mapsto \frac{a}{b}.$$

EXERCISE 16.17. Prove that $Map(\mathbb{N}, \{0, 1\})$ is uncountable.

Solution 1. Hint: Since $\mathcal{P}(\mathbb{N})$ is in bijection with $Maps(\mathbb{N}, \{0, 1\})$ (cf. Exercise 9.39) this is a consequence of the more general Theorem 9.25 saying that there is no bijection between a set A and its power set $\mathcal{P}(A)$.

Solution 2. Hint: Assume there is a bijection $F : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \text{Maps}(\mathbb{N}, \{0, 1\})$ and seek a contradiction. Denote $F(n)$ by $F_n : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$. Construct a map $G : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$ by the formula

$$G(n) = \neg(F_n(n))$$

where $\neg : \{0, 1\} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$, $\neg 0 = 1$, $\neg 1 = 0$. (The definition of G does not need the recursion theorem; one can define G as a “graph” directly (check!).) Since F is surjective there exists m such that $G = F_m$. In particular:

$$G(m) = F_m(m) = \neg G(m),$$

a contradiction. This is called *Cantor’s diagonal argument*.

EXERCISE 16.18. Prove that if (A_n) is a sequence of sets such that each A_n is at most countable then the union

$$\bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} A_n$$

is at most countable. Deduce that the set of words A^* with letters in a finite non-empty set A is countable.

EXERCISE 16.19. Let us call \mathcal{F} the set of all functions $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$ where $\infty \notin \mathbb{N}$. If $f(n) = \infty$ we say that f with input n *does not terminate* (or *runs forever without giving an output*). If $f(n) = m \in \mathbb{N}$ we say that f with input n *terminates and gives output m* .

Let (f_n) be a sequence of elements of \mathcal{F} . Its oracle is defined as the function $g \in \mathcal{F}$ satisfying:

- 1) $g(n) \in \{1, 2\}$ for all n ; in particular g with any input n always terminates.
- 2) $g(n) = 1$ if f_n with input n terminates (i.e. $f_n(n) \in \mathbb{N}$),
- 3) $g(n) = 2$ if f_n with input n does not terminate (i.e. $f_n(n) = \infty$).

Given (f_n) one can define a function $f \in \mathcal{F}$ (which we refer to as the Turing function attached to (f_n)) as follows. Let g be the oracle of (f_n) . Then we let $f(n) = f_n(n) + 1$ if $g(n) = 1$ and we let $f(n) = 1$ if $g(n) = 2$.

Prove that if (f_n) is a sequence of functions in \mathcal{F} then the Turing function f attached to (f_n) is not a member of (f_n) .

Hint: if f_n with input n does not terminate then f cannot be equal to f_n because f terminates with input n ; on the other hand if f_n with input n terminates then again $f \neq f_n$ because they have different outputs.

REMARK 16.20. In this Remark only we assume some intuitive knowledge about “programming.” Our discussion here will be informal and imprecise but worth including since it gives a hint as to the applications of Exercise 16.19. Indeed this exercise contains the idea behind Turing’s proof that there is no “program” that decides if an arbitrary given “program” with an arbitrary given input terminates. The problem of existence of such a “program” is called the *halting problem* and Turing’s result is that the halting problem has a negative answer. To explain this “recall” that Turing defined the notion of “program” as being a special type of function in \mathcal{F} . We do not explain his definition here and this will make our discussion not rigorous. One proves there are countably many “programs.” This is a consequence of the fact that the set of finite sequences of words with letters in a finite set is countable. Let (f_n) be the sequence of all “programs.” (One assumes that given a “program” there is a mechanical procedure to attach to it a label n and hence identifying it with the function f_n .) One proves that if the oracle g of this

sequence is a “program” then the Turing function attached to (f_n) is a “program,” a contradiction. One concludes that g cannot be a “program” hence the halting problem has a negative answer.

Another way to explain the above is to introduce the following definitions. A subset $S \subset \mathbb{N}$ is called *listable* if there exists n such that $f_n(\mathbb{N}) = S$. One says that a subset $S \subset \mathbb{N}$ is *decidable* if there exists n such that for all $x \in \mathbb{N}$ we have that $f_n(x) = 1$ for $x \in S$ and $f_n(x) = 0$ for $x \notin S$.

One can prove that a set S is decidable if and only if both S and $\mathbb{N} \setminus S$ are listable. For the “if” part let f_p and f_q have images S and $\mathbb{N} \setminus S$, respectively. Consider the sequence $f_p(1), f_q(1), f_p(2), f_q(2), \dots$. If x shows up in an even place set $f(x) = 1$; if x shows up in an odd place set $f(x) = 0$. One proves that f is a program and we are done. To check the “only if” part let f_n “decide” S . Consider the sequence $f_n(1), f_n(2), \dots$. If $f_n(x) = 1$ print x ; if $f_n(x) = 0$ do not print x . The printed list is S which ends the proof of the “only if” part.

Let $\beta : \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ be any natural (i.e., explicitly given by a formula) bijection and let $F_n : \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$ be defined by $F_n(n, m) = f_n(\beta(n, m))$. Then Exercise 16.19 easily implies that the “Turing set”

$$S = \beta(\{(n, m) \in \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \mid f_n(m) \neq \infty\})$$

is listable but not decidable. This is another way of formulating Turing’s result that the halting problem has a negative answer.

For what follows we assume we are familiar with polynomials. A set $S \subset \mathbb{N}$ is said to be *Diophantine* if there exists a polynomial $F = F(x, y)$ in $m + 1$ variables (where x is an m -tuple of variables and y is one variable) with coefficients in \mathbb{Z} such that $b \in S$ if and only if there exists $a \in \mathbb{Z}^m$ with $F(a, b) = 0$. Every Diophantine set is easily seen to be listable. A celebrated problem of Hilbert asked if every Diophantine set is decidable. Matjasevich proved that every listable set is Diophantine. (This is one of the most remarkable results in the theory of computation.) Since there exist listable sets that are not decidable (e.g., the “Turing set”) it follows that there exist Diophantine sets that are not decidable, hence Hilbert’s problem has a negative answer.

REMARK 16.21. Consider the following sentence called the *continuum hypothesis*:

For every set A if there exists an injection $A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{N})$ then either there exists an injection $A \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ or there exists a bijection $A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{N})$.

One can ask if the above is a theorem. Answering this question (raised by Cantor) leads to important investigations in Set Theory. The answer (given by two theorems of Gödel and Cohen in the framework of Mathematical Logic rather than Logic) turned out to be rather surprising; we are not going to discuss these issues in this course.

CHAPTER 17

Reals

Real numbers have been implicitly around throughout the history of Mathematics as an expression of the idea of continuity of magnitudes. A definition of the reals based on geometry can be found in Euclid and is due to Eudoxus. The first construction of the reals from the “discrete” (i.e., from the rationals) is due to Dedekind.

DEFINITION 17.1. (Dedekind) A real number is a subset $u \subset \mathbb{Q}$ of the set \mathbb{Q} of rational numbers with the following properties:

- 1) $u \neq \emptyset$ and $u \neq \mathbb{Q}$;
- 2) u has no minimum;
- 2) if $x \in u$, $y \in \mathbb{Q}$, and $x \leq y$ then $y \in u$.

Denote by \mathbb{R} the set of real numbers.

EXERCISE 17.2. For every rational number $x \in \mathbb{Q}$ we can define the set

$$u_x = \{y \in \mathbb{Q} \mid x < y\}.$$

- 1) Prove that u_x is a real number.
- 2) Prove that $u_x = u_{x'}$ for $x, x' \in \mathbb{Q}$ implies $x = x'$.

From now on we will identify every rational number x with the real number u_x . So we may view $\mathbb{Q} \subset \mathbb{R}$.

DEFINITION 17.3. A real number $u \in \mathbb{R}$ is called *irrational* if $u \notin \mathbb{Q}$.

DEFINITION 17.4. If u and v are real numbers we write $u \leq v$ if and only if $v \subset u$. For $u, v \geq 0$ define

$$\begin{aligned} u + v &= \{x + y \mid x \in u, y \in v\} \\ u \times v = uv &= \{xy \mid x \in u, y \in v\}. \end{aligned}$$

EXERCISE 17.5.

- 1) Prove that \leq is a total order on \mathbb{R} .
- 2) Prove that $u + v$ and $u \times v$ are real numbers.
- 3) Naturally extend the definition of addition $+$ and multiplication \times of real numbers to the case when the numbers are not necessarily ≥ 0 .
- 4) Prove $+$ and \times on \mathbb{R} coincide with addition and multiplication on \mathbb{Q} .
- 5) Prove that $(\mathbb{R}, +, \times, -, 0, 1)$ is a field.
- 6) Naturally extend the order \leq on \mathbb{Q} to an order on \mathbb{R} and prove that \mathbb{R} with \leq is an ordered ring.

EXERCISE 17.6. Define the sum and the product of a family of real (or complex) numbers indexed by a finite set. Hint: Use the already defined concept for integers (and hence for the rationals).

In the next exercises we look at square roots.

EXERCISE 17.7.

1) Let $r > 0$ be a real number, α a rational number with $\frac{1}{2} < \alpha < 1$ and $M \in \mathbb{N}$ with $M > r$. Prove that for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$ there exist positive rational numbers t_n and s_n with the following properties:

- i) $0 < t_n < s_n < M$,
- ii) $t_n^2 < r < s_n^2$,
- iii) $s_n - t_n \leq M \times \alpha^n$.

2) Prove that for every positive rational numbers a and b with $a < b$ there exists a positive rational number c such that $a < c^2 < b$.

Hint for 1): For $n = 1$ take $t_1 = 0$ and $r < s_1 < M$. Assuming the statement is true for n one sets

$$t_{n+1} = t_n \quad \text{and} \quad s_{n+1} = (t_n + s_n)/2 \quad \text{if} \quad t_n^2 < r < ((t_n + s_n)/2)^2,$$

one sets

$$t_{n+1} = (t_n + s_n)/2 \quad \text{and} \quad s_{n+1} = s_n \quad \text{if} \quad ((t_n + s_n)/2)^2 < r < s_n^2.$$

and one sets

$$t_{n+1} = t_n \quad \text{and} \quad s_{n+1} = t_n + \alpha(s_n - t_n) \quad \text{if} \quad r = ((t_n + s_n)/2)^2.$$

The above method of proof based on successive divisions of intervals is used in analysis quite often.

Hint for 2): use 1) and the fact that the set $\{a^n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$ is not bounded if $a \in \mathbb{Q}$, $a > 1$.

EXERCISE 17.8. Prove that for $r \in \mathbb{R}$, $r \geq 0$, the set

$$\sqrt{r} := \{x \in \mathbb{Q} \mid x \geq 0, x^2 > r\}$$

is a real number and we have $(\sqrt{r})^2 = r$.

Hint: The harder part is to show that if $z \in \mathbb{Q}$ satisfies $z > r$ then there exist $x, y \in \mathbb{Q}$ such that $x \geq 0$, $y \geq 0$, $z = xy$, $x^2 > r$, $y^2 > r$. By Exercise 17.7 there exists a positive rational number ρ with $z > \rho^2 > r$. Then we can write $z = xy$ with $x = \rho$ and $y = z/\rho > \rho$.

EXERCISE 17.9. Prove that $\sqrt{2}$ is irrational i.e., $\sqrt{2} \notin \mathbb{Q}$.

Hint: this is, of course, the same as Exercise 14.14

EXERCISE 17.10. Prove that the set

$$\{r \in \mathbb{Q} \mid r > 0, r^2 < 2\}$$

has no supremum in \mathbb{Q} .

EXERCISE 17.11. Prove that every subset of \mathbb{R} that has an upper bound in \mathbb{R} has a supremum in \mathbb{R} . Similarly every subset of \mathbb{R} that has a lower bound in \mathbb{R} has an infimum in \mathbb{R} .

Hint: If $A \subset \mathbb{R}$ has an upper bound in \mathbb{R} then define

$$w = \bigcap_{u \in A} u \subset \mathbb{R}.$$

If w has no minimum element set $v = w$. If w has a minimum element m set $v = w \setminus \{m\}$. Prove that in both cases v is a real number and it is equal to the supremum of A .

REMARK 17.12. Later we will prove that \mathbb{R} is uncountable.

DEFINITION 17.13. For every $a \in \mathbb{R}$ we let $|a|$ be a or $-a$ according as $a \geq 0$ or $a \leq 0$, respectively.

EXERCISE 17.14. Prove the so-called *triangle inequality*:

$$|a + b| \leq |a| + |b|$$

for all $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$.

DEFINITION 17.15. For $a < b$ in \mathbb{R} we define the open interval

$$(a, b) = \{c \in \mathbb{R} \mid a < c < b\} \subset \mathbb{R}.$$

(Not to be confused with the pair $(a, b) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}$ which is denoted by the same symbol.)

Topology

Topology is concerned with geometric properties that are invariant under *continuous* deformation. From the viewpoint of topology a sphere “is the same” as an ellipsoid or a cube, but not “the same” as a doughnut. An early topological result is the formula of Descartes-Euler relating the number of vertices, edges, and faces of a convex polyhedron; cf. Remark 13.28. (We will not discuss this here as it is surprisingly difficult to present things rigorously.) After Riemann’s work on surfaces defined by algebraic functions, topology became a key feature in geometry and analysis and nowadays topological ideas are to be found everywhere in Mathematics, including number theory and functional analysis (where the points of “space” are functions). Here we will restrict ourselves to explaining the basic idea of continuity.

DEFINITION 18.1. A topology on a set X is a subset $\mathcal{T} \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$ of the power set of X with the following properties:

- 1) $\emptyset \in \mathcal{T}$ and $X \in \mathcal{T}$;
- 2) If $U, V \in \mathcal{T}$ then $U \cap V \in \mathcal{T}$;
- 3) If $(U_i)_{i \in I}$ is a family of subsets $U_i \subset X$ and if for all $i \in I$ we have $U_i \in \mathcal{T}$ then $\bigcup_{i \in I} U_i \in \mathcal{T}$.

A subset $U \subset X$ is called *open* if $U \in \mathcal{T}$. A subset $Z \subset X$ is called *closed* if $X \setminus Z$ is open. Elements of X are called *points* of X .

EXAMPLE 18.2. $\mathcal{T} = \mathcal{P}(X)$ is a topology on X .

EXAMPLE 18.3. $\mathcal{T} = \{\emptyset, X\} \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$ is a topology on X .

EXAMPLE 18.4. A subset $U \subset \mathbb{R}$ is called *open* if for every $x \in U$ there exists an open interval containing x and contained in U , $x \in (a, b) \subset U$. Let $\mathcal{T} \subset \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{R})$ be the set of all open sets of \mathbb{R} . Then \mathcal{T} is a topology on \mathbb{R} ; we call this the *Euclidean topology*.

EXERCISE 18.5. Prove that \mathcal{T} in Example 18.4 is a topology.

EXERCISE 18.6. Prove that if $U, V \subset X$ then

$$\mathcal{T} = \{\emptyset, U, V, U \cup V, U \cap V, X\}$$

is a topology. Find the closed sets of X .

EXERCISE 18.7. Prove that if $(\mathcal{T}_j)_{j \in J}$ is a family of topologies $\mathcal{T}_j \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$ on X then $\bigcap_{j \in J} \mathcal{T}_j$ is a topology on X .

DEFINITION 18.8. If $\mathcal{T}_0 \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$ is a subset of the power set then the intersection

$$\mathcal{T} = \bigcap_{\mathcal{T}' \supset \mathcal{T}_0} \mathcal{T}'$$

of all topologies \mathcal{T}' containing \mathcal{T}_0 is called the topology *generated* by \mathcal{T}_0 .

EXERCISE 18.9. Let $\mathcal{T}_0 = \{U, V, W\} \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$. Find explicitly the topology generated by \mathcal{T}_0 . Find all the closed sets in that topology.

DEFINITION 18.10. A topological space is a pair (X, \mathcal{T}) consisting of a set X and a topology $\mathcal{T} \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$ on X . Sometimes one writes X instead of (X, \mathcal{T}) if \mathcal{T} is understood from context.

DEFINITION 18.11. Let X and X' be two topological spaces. A map $F : X \rightarrow X'$ is continuous if for all open $V \subset X'$ the set $F^{-1}(V) \subset X$ is open.

EXERCISE 18.12. If \mathcal{T} is a topology on X and \mathcal{T}' is the topology on X' defined by $\mathcal{T}' = \{\emptyset, Y\}$ then every map $F : X \rightarrow X'$ is continuous.

EXERCISE 18.13. If \mathcal{T} is the topology $\mathcal{T} = \mathcal{P}(X)$ on X and \mathcal{T}' is any topology on X' then every map $F : X \rightarrow X'$ is continuous.

EXERCISE 18.14. Prove that if X, X', X'' are topological spaces and $G : X \rightarrow X', F : X' \rightarrow X''$ are continuous maps then the composition $F \circ G : X \rightarrow X''$ is continuous.

EXERCISE 18.15. Give an example of two topological spaces X, X' and of a bijection $F : X \rightarrow X'$ such that F is continuous but F^{-1} is not continuous. (This is to be contrasted with the situation of algebraic structures to be discussed later. See Exercise 11.26.)

Motivated by the above phenomenon, one gives the following

DEFINITION 18.16. A homeomorphism between two topological spaces is a continuous bijection whose inverse is also continuous.

DEFINITION 18.17. If X is a topological space and $Y \subset X$ is a subset then the set of all subsets of Y of the form $U \cap Y$ with U open in X form a topology on Y called the *induced topology*.

EXERCISE 18.18. Prove that if X is a topological space and $Y \subset X$ is open then the induced topology on Y consists of all open sets of X that are contained in Y .

DEFINITION 18.19. Let X be a topological space and let $A \subset X$ be a subset. We say that A is connected if whenever U and V are open in X with $U \cap V \cap A = \emptyset$ and $A \subset U \cup V$ it follows that $U \cap A = \emptyset$ or $V \cap A = \emptyset$.

EXERCISE 18.20. Prove that if $F : X \rightarrow X'$ is continuous and $A \subset X$ is connected then $F(A) \subset X'$ is connected.

DEFINITION 18.21. Let X be a topological space and let $A \subset X$ be a subset. A point $x \in X$ is called an *accumulation point* of A if for every open set U in X containing x the set $U \setminus \{x\}$ contains a point of A .

EXERCISE 18.22. Let X be a topological space and let $A \subset X$ be a subset. Prove that A is closed if and only if A contains all its accumulation points.

DEFINITION 18.23. Let X be a topological space and $A \subset X$. We say A is compact if whenever

$$A \subset \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i$$

with $(U_i)_{i \in I}$ a family of open sets in X indexed by some set I there exists a finite subset $J \subset I$ such that

$$A \subset \bigcup_{j \in J} U_j.$$

We sometimes refer to $(U_i)_{i \in I}$ as an open cover of A and to $(U_j)_{j \in J}$ as a finite open subcover. So A is compact if and only if every open cover of A has a finite open subcover.

EXERCISE 18.24. Prove that if X is a topological space and X is a finite set then it is compact.

EXERCISE 18.25. Prove that \mathbb{R} is not compact in the Euclidean topology. Hint: Consider the open cover

$$\mathbb{R} = \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} (-n, n)$$

and show it has no finite open subcover.

EXERCISE 18.26. Prove that no open interval (a, b) in \mathbb{R} is compact ($a < b$).

EXERCISE 18.27. Prove that if $F : X \rightarrow X'$ is a continuous map of topological spaces and $A \subset X$ is compact then $F(A) \subset X'$ is compact.

DEFINITION 18.28. A topological space X is a Hausdorff space if for every two points $x, y \in X$ there exist open sets $U \subset X$ and $V \subset X$ such that $x \in U$, $y \in V$, and $U \cap V = \emptyset$.

EXERCISE 18.29. Prove the \mathbb{R} with the Euclidean topology is a Hausdorff space.

EXERCISE 18.30. Prove that if X is a Hausdorff space, $A \subset X$ is compact, and $x \in X \setminus A$ then there exist open sets $U \subset X$ and $V \subset X$ such that $x \in U$, $A \subset V$, and $U \cap V = \emptyset$. In particular every compact subset of a Hausdorff space is closed.

Hint: For every $a \in A$ let $U_a \subset X$ and $V_a \subset X$ be open sets such that $x \in U_a$, $a \in V_a$, $U_a \cap V_a = \emptyset$. Then $(V_a)_{a \in A}$ is an open covering of A . Select $(V_b)_{b \in B}$ a finite subcover of A where $B \subset A$ is a finite set, $B = \{b_1, \dots, b_n\}$. Then let

$$\begin{aligned} U &= U_{b_1} \cap \dots \cap U_{b_n} \\ V &= V_{b_1} \cup \dots \cup V_{b_n}. \end{aligned}$$

DEFINITION 18.31. Let X, X' be topological spaces. Then the set $X \times X'$ may be equipped with the topology generated by the family of all sets of the form $U \times U'$ where U and U' are open in X and X' respectively. This is called the *product topology* on $X \times X'$. Iterating this we get a product topology on a product $X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$ of n topological spaces.

EXERCISE 18.32. Prove that for every $r \in \mathbb{R}$ with $r > 0$, the set

$$D = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid x^2 + y^2 < r^2\}$$

is open in the product topology of \mathbb{R}^2 .

DEFINITION 18.33. A topological manifold is a topological space X such that for every point $x \in X$ there exists an open set $U \subset X$ containing x and a homeomorphism $F : U \rightarrow V$ where $V \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is an open set in \mathbb{R}^n for the Euclidean topology. (Here U and V are viewed as topological spaces with the topologies induced from X and \mathbb{R}^n , respectively.)

REMARK 18.34. If \mathcal{X} is a set of topological manifolds then one can consider the following relation \sim on \mathcal{X} : for $X, X' \in \mathcal{X}$ we let $X \sim X'$ if and only if there exists a homeomorphism $X \rightarrow X'$. Then \sim is an equivalence relation on \mathcal{X} and one of the basic problems of topology is to “describe” the set \mathcal{X}/\sim of equivalence classes in various specific cases.

More properties of the Euclidean topology of \mathbb{R} will be examined in the chapter on limits.

CHAPTER 19

Imaginaries

Complex numbers (also called *imaginary numbers*) appeared in work of Cardano, Bombelli, d'Alembert, Gauss, and others, in relation to solving polynomial equations. The modern definition below is due to Hamilton.

DEFINITION 19.1. (Hamilton) A complex number is a pair (a, b) where $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$. We denote by \mathbb{C} the set of complex numbers. Hence $\mathbb{C} = \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}$. Define the sum and the product of two complex numbers by

$$\begin{aligned}(a, b) + (c, d) &= (a + c, b + d) \\ (a, b) \times (c, d) &= (ac - bd, ad + bc).\end{aligned}$$

REMARK 19.2. Identify every real number $a \in \mathbb{R}$ with the complex number $(a, 0) \in \mathbb{C}$; hence write $a = (a, 0)$. In particular $0 = (0, 0)$ and $1 = (1, 0)$.

EXERCISE 19.3. Prove that \mathbb{C} equipped with 0, 1 above and with the operations $+$, \times above is a field. Also note that the operations $+$ and \times on \mathbb{C} restricted to \mathbb{R} are the “old” operations $+$ and \times on \mathbb{R} .

DEFINITION 19.4. We set $i = (0, 1)$.

REMARK 19.5. $i^2 = -1$. Indeed

$$i^2 = (0, 1) \times (0, 1) = (0 \times 0 - 1 \times 1, 0 \times 1 + 1 \times 0) = (-1, 0) = -1.$$

REMARK 19.6. For every complex number $(a, b) = a + bi$. Indeed

$$(a, b) = (a, 0) + (0, b) = (a, 0) + (b, 0)(0, 1) = a + bi.$$

DEFINITION 19.7. For every complex number $z = a + bi$ we define its absolute value

$$|z| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}.$$

EXERCISE 19.8. Prove the so-called *triangle inequality*:

$$|a + b| \leq |a| + |b|$$

for all $a, b \in \mathbb{C}$.

DEFINITION 19.9. For every complex number $z = a + bi$ we define its conjugate

$$\bar{z} = a - bi.$$

(The upper bar is not to be confused with the notation used in the chapter on residues.)

EXERCISE 19.10. Prove that for every $z, w \in \mathbb{C}$ we have

- 1) $\overline{z + w} = \bar{z} + \bar{w}$;
- 2) $\overline{z \cdot w} = \bar{z} \cdot \bar{w}$;
- 3) $\overline{z^{-1}} = \bar{z}^{-1}$ for $z \neq 0$;
- 4) $z \cdot \bar{z} = |z|^2$.

DEFINITION 19.11. For every complex number $z = a + bi \in \mathbb{C}$ and every real number $r > 0$ we define the open disk with center z and radius r ,

$$D(z, r) = \{w \in \mathbb{C} \mid |w - z| < r\} \subset \mathbb{C}.$$

A subset $U \subset \mathbb{C}$ is called *open* if for every $z \in U$ there exists an open disk centered at z and contained in U . Let $\mathcal{T} \subset \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{C})$ be the set of all open sets of \mathbb{C} .

EXERCISE 19.12. Prove that \mathcal{T} is a topology on \mathbb{C} ; we call this the *Euclidean topology*.

EXERCISE 19.13. Prove that \mathbb{C} cannot be given the structure of an ordered ring.

The idea of constructing \mathbb{C} from \mathbb{R} can be applied to constructing finite fields. This idea originates with Galois. Here is an example of that.

EXERCISE 19.14. Let \mathbb{F}_4 be the set $\{0, 1\} \times \{0, 1\}$ and write $0 = (0, 0)$, $1 = (1, 0)$, $\iota = (0, 1)$. Define addition and multiplication on \mathbb{F}_4 by

$$\begin{aligned} (a, b) + (c, d) &= (a + c, b + d) \\ (a, b) \times (c, d) &= (ac + bd, ad + bc + bd) \end{aligned}$$

- 1) Prove that $(a, b) = a + b\iota$.
- 2) Prove that $\iota^2 = 1 + \iota$.
- 3) Prove that \mathbb{F}_4 is a field containing the field $\mathbb{F}_2 = \{0, 1\}$.

Arithmetic

Our main aim here is to introduce some of the basic “arithmetic” of \mathbb{Z} . In its turn arithmetic can be used to introduce the finite rings $\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}$ of residue classes modulo m and, in particular, the finite fields $\mathbb{F}_p = \mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$, where p is a prime. The arithmetic of \mathbb{Z} to be discussed below already appears in Euclid. Congruences and residue classes were introduced by Gauss.

DEFINITION 20.1. For integers a and b we say a divides b if there exists an integer n such that $b = an$. We write $a|b$. We also say a is a divisor of b . If a does not divide b we write $a \nmid b$.

EXAMPLE 20.2. $4|20$; $-4|20$; $6 \nmid 20$.

EXERCISE 20.3. Prove that

- 1) if $a|b$ and $b|c$ then $a|c$;
- 2) if $a|b$ and $a|c$ then $a|b + c$;
- 3) $a|b$ defines an order relation on \mathbb{N} but not on \mathbb{Z} .

THEOREM 20.4. (Euclid division) For every $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $b \in \mathbb{N}$ there exist unique $q, r \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $a = bq + r$ and $0 \leq r < b$.

Proof. We prove the existence of q, r . The uniqueness is left to the reader. We may assume $a \in \mathbb{N}$. We proceed by contradiction. So assume there exists b and $a \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $q, r \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $0 \leq r < b$ we have $a \neq qb + r$. Fix such a b . We may assume a is minimum with the above property. If $a < b$ we can write $a = 0 \times b + a$, a contradiction. If $a = b$ we can write $a = 1 \times a + 0$, a contradiction. If $a > b$ set $a' = a - b$. Since $a' < a$, there exist $q', r \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $0 \leq r < b$ and $a' = q'b + r$. But then $a = qb + r$, where $q = q' + 1$, a contradiction. \square

DEFINITION 20.5. For $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ denote $\langle a \rangle$ the set $\{na \mid n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ of integers divisible by a . For $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ denote by $\langle a, b \rangle$ the set $\{ma + nb \mid m, n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ of all numbers expressible as a multiple of a plus a multiple of b .

PROPOSITION 20.6. For every integers a, b there exists an integer c such that $\langle a, b \rangle = \langle c \rangle$.

Proof. If $a = b = 0$ we can take $c = 0$. Assume a, b are not both 0. Then the set $S = \langle a, b \rangle \cap \mathbb{N}$ is non-empty. Let c be the minimum of S . Clearly $\langle c \rangle \subset \langle a, b \rangle$. Let us prove that $\langle a, b \rangle \subset \langle c \rangle$. Let $u = ma + nb$ and let us prove that $u \in \langle c \rangle$. By Euclidean division $u = cq + r$ with $0 \leq r < c$. We want to show $r = 0$. Assume $r \neq 0$ and seek a contradiction. Write $c = m'a + n'b$. Then $r \in \mathbb{N}$ and also

$$r = u - cq = (ma + nb) - (m'a + n'b)q = (m - m'q)a + (n - n'q)b \in \langle a, b \rangle.$$

Hence $r \in S$. But $r < c$. So c is not the minimum of S , a contradiction. \square

PROPOSITION 20.7. *If a and b are integers and have no common divisor > 1 then there exist integers m and n such that $ma + nb = 1$.*

Proof. By the above Proposition $\langle a, b \rangle = \langle c \rangle$ for some $c \geq 1$. In particular $c|a$ and $c|b$. The hypothesis implies $c = 1$ hence $1 \in \langle a, b \rangle$. \square

One of the main definitions of number theory is

DEFINITION 20.8. An integer p is prime if $p > 1$ and if its only positive divisors are 1 and p .

PROPOSITION 20.9. *If p is a prime and a is an integer such that $p \nmid a$ then there exist integers m, n such that $ma + np = 1$.*

Proof. a and p have no common divisor > 1 and we conclude by Proposition 20.7. \square

PROPOSITION 20.10. (*Euclid Lemma*) *If p is a prime and $p|ab$ for integers a and b then either $p|a$ or $p|b$.*

Proof. Assume $p|ab$, $p \nmid a$, $p \nmid b$, and seek a contradiction. By Proposition 20.9 $ma + np = 1$ for some integers m, n and $m'b + n'p = 1$ for some integers m', n' . We get

$$1 = (ma + np)(m'b + n'p) = mm'ab + p(nm' + n'm + nn').$$

Since $p|ab$ we get $p|1$, a contradiction. \square

THEOREM 20.11. (*Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic*) *Any integer $n > 1$ can be written uniquely as a product of primes, i.e., there exist primes p_1, p_2, \dots, p_s , where $s \geq 1$, such that*

$$n = p_1 p_2 \dots p_s.$$

Moreover any such representation is unique in the following sense: if

$$p_1 p_2 \dots p_s = q_1 q_2 \dots q_t$$

with p_i and q_j prime and $p_1 \leq p_2 \leq \dots$, $q_1 \leq q_2 \leq \dots$ then $s = t$ and $p_1 = q_1$, $p_2 = q_2$, \dots

Proof. Uniqueness follows from Euclid's Lemma 20.10. To prove the existence part let S be the set of all integers > 1 which are not products of primes. We want to show $S = \emptyset$. Assume the contrary and seek a contradiction. Let n be the minimum of S . Then n is not prime. So $n = ab$ with $a, b > 1$ integers. So $a < n$ and $b < n$. So $a \notin S$ and $b \notin S$. So a and b are products of primes. So n is a product of primes, a contradiction. \square

EXERCISE 20.12. Prove the uniqueness part in the above theorem.

DEFINITION 20.13. Fix an integer $m \neq 0$. Define a relation \equiv_m on \mathbb{Z} by $a \equiv_m b$ if and only if $m|a - b$. Say a is congruent to b mod m (or modulo m). Instead of $a \equiv_m b$ one usually writes (following Gauss):

$$a \equiv b \pmod{m}.$$

EXAMPLE 20.14. $3 \equiv 17 \pmod{7}$.

EXERCISE 20.15. Prove that \equiv_m is an equivalence relation. Prove that the equivalence class \bar{a} of a consists of all the numbers of the form $mb + a$ where $m \in \mathbb{Z}$.

EXAMPLE 20.16. If $m = 7$ then $\bar{3} = \bar{10} = \{\dots, -4, 3, 10, 17, \dots\}$.

DEFINITION 20.17. For the equivalence relation \equiv_m on \mathbb{Z} the set of equivalence classes \mathbb{Z}/\equiv_m is denoted by $\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}$. The elements of $\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}$ are called *residue classes mod m* .

EXERCISE 20.18. Prove that

$$\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z} = \{\bar{0}, \bar{1}, \dots, \overline{m-1}\}.$$

So the residue classes mod m are: $\bar{0}, \bar{1}, \dots, \overline{m-1}$. Hint: Use Euclid division.

EXERCISE 20.19. Prove that if $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ and $c \equiv d \pmod{m}$ then $a + c \equiv b + d \pmod{m}$ and $ac \equiv bd \pmod{m}$.

DEFINITION 20.20. Define operations $+, \times, -$ on $\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}$ by

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{a} + \bar{b} &= \overline{a+b} \\ \bar{a} \times \bar{b} &= \overline{ab} \\ -\bar{a} &= \overline{-a}.\end{aligned}$$

EXERCISE 20.21. Check that the above definitions are correct, in other words that if $\bar{a} = \overline{a'}$ and $\bar{b} = \overline{b'}$ then

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{a+b} &= \overline{a'+b'} \\ \overline{ab} &= \overline{a'b'} \\ \overline{-a} &= \overline{-a'}.\end{aligned}$$

Furthermore check that $(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}, +, \times, -, \bar{0}, \bar{1})$ is a ring.

DEFINITION 20.22. If p is a prime we write \mathbb{F}_p in place of $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$.

EXERCISE 20.23. Prove that \mathbb{F}_p is a field. Hint: Use Proposition 20.9.

CHAPTER 21

Groups

Our next chapters investigate a few topics in algebra. Recall that algebra is the study of algebraic structures, i.e., sets with operations on them. We already introduced, and constructed, some elementary examples of algebraic structures such as rings and, in particular, fields. With rings/fields at our disposal one can study some other fundamental algebraic objects such as groups, vector spaces, polynomials. In what follows we briefly survey some of these. We begin with groups. In some sense groups are more fundamental than rings and fields; but in order to be able to look at more interesting examples we found it convenient to postpone the discussion of groups until this point. Groups appeared in Mathematics in the context of symmetries of roots of polynomial equations; cf. the work of Galois that involved finite groups. Galois' work inspired Lie who investigated differential equations in place of polynomial equations; this led to (continuous) Lie groups, in particular groups of matrices. Groups eventually penetrated most of Mathematics and Physics (Klein, Poincaré, Einstein, Cartan, Weyl).

Recall the following:

DEFINITION 21.1. A group is a tuple (G, \star, e) consisting of a set G , a binary operation \star on G , and an element $e \in G$ (called the *identity* element) such that the following conditions are satisfied:

- 1) For every $x, y, z \in G$, $x \star (y \star z) = (x \star y) \star z$;
- 2) For every $x \in G$, $x \star e = e \star x = x$;
- 3) For every $x \in G$ there exists $x' \in G$ such that $x \star x' = x' \star x = e$.

If in addition $x \star y = y \star x$ for all $x, y \in G$ we say G is commutative (or Abelian in honor of Abel).

REMARK 21.2. The element x' in 3) above is easily proved to be unique.

EXERCISE 21.3. Check the uniqueness of x' in 3).

Sometimes one writes $e = 1$, $x \star y = xy$, $x' = x^{-1}$, $x^n = x \star \dots \star x$ (n times). In the Abelian case one sometimes writes $e = 0$, $x \star y = x + y$, $x' = -x$, $x \star \dots \star x = nx$ (n times). These notations depend on the context and are justified by the following examples.

EXAMPLE 21.4. If R is a ring then R is an Abelian group with the following operations: $e = 0$, $x \star y = x + y$, $x' = -x$. Hence $\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{F}_p, \mathbb{Z}_p, \mathbb{Q}, \mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C}$ are groups "with respect to addition."

EXAMPLE 21.5. If R is a field then $R^\times = R \setminus \{0\}$ is an Abelian group with $e = 1$, $x \star y = xy$, $x' = x^{-1}$. Hence $\mathbb{Q}^\times, \mathbb{R}^\times, \mathbb{C}^\times, \mathbb{F}_p^\times$ are groups "with respect to multiplication."

EXAMPLE 21.6. The set $\text{Perm}(X)$ of bijections $\sigma : X \rightarrow X$ from a set X into itself is a group with $e = 1_X$ (the identity map), $\sigma * \tau = \sigma \circ \tau$ (composition), σ^{-1} = inverse map. If $X = \{1, \dots, n\}$ then one writes $S_n = \text{Perm}(X)$ and calls this group the *symmetric group*. If $\sigma(1) = i_1, \dots, \sigma(n) = i_n$ one usually writes

$$\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & \dots & n \\ i_1 & i_2 & \dots & i_n \end{pmatrix}.$$

EXERCISE 21.7. Compute

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 2 & 5 & 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 5 & 4 & 2 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Also compute

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 2 & 5 & 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}^{-1}.$$

EXAMPLE 21.8. A 2×2 matrix with coefficients in a field R is a map

$$A : \{1, 2\} \times \{1, 2\} \rightarrow R.$$

If the map is given by

$$A(1, 1) = a$$

$$A(1, 2) = b$$

$$A(2, 1) = c$$

$$A(2, 2) = d$$

we write A as

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}.$$

Define the sum and the product of two matrices by

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} a' & b' \\ c' & d' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a + a' & b + b' \\ c + c' & d + d' \end{pmatrix},$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} a' & b' \\ c' & d' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} aa' + bc' & ab' + bd' \\ ca' + dc' & cb' + dd' \end{pmatrix}.$$

Define the product of an element $r \in R$ with a matrix $A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ by

$$r \cdot \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} ra & rb \\ rc & rd \end{pmatrix}.$$

For a matrix $A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ define its determinant by

$$\det(A) = ad - bc.$$

Say that A is invertible if $\det(A) \neq 0$ and setting $\delta = \det(A)$ define the inverse of A by

$$A^{-1} = \delta^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{pmatrix}.$$

Define the identity matrix by

$$I = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and the zero matrix by

$$O = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Let $M_2(R)$ be the set of all matrices and $GL_2(R)$ be the set of all invertible matrices. Then the following are true:

- 1) $M_2(R)$ is a group with respect to addition of matrices;
- 2) $GL_2(R)$ is a group with respect to multiplication of matrices; it is called the *general linear group* of 2×2 matrices;
- 3) $(A+B)C = AC + BC$ and $C(A+B) = CA + CB$ for every matrices A, B, C ;
- 4) There exist matrices A, B such that $AB \neq BA$;
- 5) $\det(AB) = \det(A) \cdot \det(B)$.

EXERCISE 21.9. Prove 1), 2), 3), 4), 5) above.

EXAMPLE 21.10. Groups are examples of algebraic structures so there is a well-defined notion of homomorphism of groups (or group homomorphism). According to the general definition a group homomorphism is a map between the two groups $F : G \rightarrow G'$ such that for all $a, b \in G$:

- 1) $F(a \star b) = F(a) \star' F(b)$,
- 2) $F(a^{-1}) = F(a)^{-1}$ (this is automatic !),
- 3) $F(e) = e'$ (this is, again, automatic !).

Here \star and \star' are the operations on G and G' ; similarly e and e' are the corresponding identity elements.

DEFINITION 21.11. A subset H of a group G is called a *subgroup* if

- 1) For all $a, b \in H$ we have $a \star b \in H$.
- 2) For all $a \in H$ we have $a^{-1} \in H$.
- 3) $e \in H$.

EXERCISE 21.12. Show that if H is a subgroup of G then H , with the natural operation induced from G , is a group.

EXERCISE 21.13.

- 1) \mathbb{Z} is a subgroup of \mathbb{Q} .
- 2) \mathbb{Q} is a subgroup of \mathbb{R} .
- 3) \mathbb{R} is a subgroup of \mathbb{C} .
- 4) If R is a field then the set

$$SL_2(R) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \mid a, b \in R, ad - bc = 1 \right\}$$

is a subgroup of $GL_2(R)$; it is called the *special linear group*.

- 5) If R is a field then the set

$$SO_2(R) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -b & a \end{pmatrix} \mid a, b \in R, a^2 + b^2 = 1 \right\}$$

is a subgroup of $SL_2(R)$; it is called the *special orthogonal group*.

DEFINITION 21.14. If $F : G \rightarrow G'$ is a group homomorphism define the kernel of F ,

$$\text{Ker } F = \{a \in G \mid F(a) = e'\}$$

and the image of F :

$$\text{Im } F = \{b \in G' \mid \exists a \in G, F(a) = b\}.$$

EXERCISE 21.15. Prove that $\text{Ker } F$ is a subgroup of G and $\text{Im } F$ is a subgroup of G' .

We continue our investigation of groups and introduce the concept of order of elements in a group. (This has nothing to do with the word *order* used in the phrase *order relations*.)

DEFINITION 21.16. Let G be a group and $g \in G$; we denote by $\langle g \rangle$ the set of all elements $a \in G$ for which there exists $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $a = g^n$.

EXERCISE 21.17. Prove that $\langle g \rangle$ is a subgroup of G . We call $\langle g \rangle$ the subgroup generated by g .

DEFINITION 21.18. We say that a group G is *cyclic* if there exists $g \in G$ such that $G = \langle g \rangle$; g is called a *generator* of G .

EXAMPLE 21.19. \mathbb{Z} is cyclic. 1 is a generator of \mathbb{Z} ; -1 is also a generator of \mathbb{Z} .

EXERCISE 21.20. Prove that \mathbb{Q} is not cyclic.

DEFINITION 21.21. Let G be a group and $g \in G$. We say the order of g is infinite if $g^n \neq e$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. We say the order of g is $n \in \mathbb{N}$ if:

- 1) $g^n = e$;
- 2) $g^k \neq e$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$ with $k < n$.

We denote by $o(g)$ the order of g .

DEFINITION 21.22. The order of a finite group G is the cardinality $|G|$ of G .

EXERCISE 21.23. The order $o(g)$ of g equals the order $|\langle g \rangle|$ of $\langle g \rangle$.

EXERCISE 21.24. g has order $n \in \mathbb{N}$ if and only if:

- 1') $g^n = e$;
- 2') If $g^N = e$ for some $N \in \mathbb{N}$ then $n|N$.

Hint: If 1') and 2') above hold then clearly g has order n . Conversely if g has order n then 1') clearly holds. To check that 2') holds use Euclidean division to write $N = nq + r$ with $0 \leq r < n$. Then $g^r = (g^n)^q g^r = g^N = e$. By condition 2) in the definition of order $r = 0$ hence $n|N$.

In what follows we say that two integers are coprime if they have no common divisor > 1 .

PROPOSITION 21.25. Assume a, b are two elements in a group such that $ab = ba$ and assume $o(a)$ and $o(b)$ are coprime. Then

$$o(ab) = o(a)o(b).$$

Proof. Set $k = o(a)$, $l = o(b)$. Clearly, since $ab = ba$ we have

$$(ab)^{kl} \equiv (a^k)^l (b^l)^k = e.$$

Now assume $(ab)^N = e$. Raising to power l we get $a^{Nl} b^{Nl} = e$, hence $a^{Nl} = e$, hence, by Exercise 21.24, $k|Nl$. Since k and l are coprime $k|N$ (by the Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic). In a similar way raising $(ab)^N = e$ to power k we get $a^{Nk} b^{Nk} = e$, hence $b^{Nk} = e$, hence $l|Nk$, hence $l|N$. Again, since k and l are coprime, $l|N$ and $k|N$ imply $kl|N$ and we are done. \square

EXERCISE 21.26. Prove that if $o(a) = kl$ then $o(a^k) = l$.

THEOREM 21.27. (*Lagrange*) *If H is a subgroup of a finite group G then the order of H divides the order of G : if $n = |H|$, $m = |G|$ then $n|m$. In particular if $a \in G$ then the order $o(a)$ of a divides the order $|G|$ of the group. So if $n = |G|$ then $a^n = e$.*

Proof. For each $g \in G$ we let gH be the set of all elements of G of the form gh with $h \in H$. Let $\pi : G \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(G)$ be the map $\pi(g) = gH \in \mathcal{P}(G)$. Let $\mathcal{X} = \pi(G)$ and let $\sigma : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow G$ be any map such that $\pi \circ \sigma$ is the identity of \mathcal{X} . (The existence of σ follows by induction.) We claim that the map

$$(21.1) \quad \mathcal{X} \times H \rightarrow G, \quad (X, h) \mapsto \sigma(X)h, \quad X \in \mathcal{X}, \quad h \in H$$

is a bijection. Assuming the claim for a moment note that the claim implies

$$|\mathcal{X}| \times |H| = |G|,$$

from which the theorem follows. Let us check the claim. To prove that 21.1 is surjective let $g \in G$. Let $g' = \sigma(gH)$. Then $g'H = \pi(g') = \pi(\sigma(gH)) = gH$. So there exists $h \in H$ such that $g'h = ge = g$; hence $g = \sigma(gH)h$ which ends the proof of surjectivity. We leave the proof of injectivity to the reader. \square

EXERCISE 21.28. Check the injectivity of 21.1.

THEOREM 21.29. (*Fermat's Little Theorem*) *For every $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ and every prime p we have*

$$a^p \equiv a \pmod{p}.$$

Proof. If $p|a$ this is clear. If $p \nmid a$ let \bar{a} be the image of a in \mathbb{F}_p^\times . By Lagrange's theorem applied to the group \mathbb{F}_p^\times we have $\bar{a}^{p-1} = \bar{1}$. Hence $a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$. So $a^p \equiv a \pmod{p}$. \square

Vectors

Vectors implicitly appeared in a number of contexts such as mechanics (Galileo, Newton, etc.), hypercomplex numbers (Hamilton, Cayley, etc.), algebraic number theory (Dirichlet, Kummer, Eisenstein, Kronecker, etc.), and analysis (Hilbert, Banach, etc.). They are now a basic concept in linear algebra which is itself part of abstract algebra.

DEFINITION 22.1. Let R be a field. A vector space is an Abelian group $(V, +, -, 0)$ together with a map $R \times V \rightarrow V$, $(a, v) \mapsto av$ satisfying the following conditions for all $a, b \in R$ and all $u, v \in V$:

- 1) $(a + b)v = av + bv$;
- 2) $a(u + v) = au + av$;
- 3) $a(bv) = (ab)v$;
- 4) $1v = v$.

The elements of V are called *vectors*.

EXAMPLE 22.2. R^n is a vector space over R viewed with the operations

$$\begin{aligned}(a_1, \dots, a_n) + (b_1, \dots, b_n) &= (a_1 + b_1, \dots, a_n + b_n), \\ -(a_1, \dots, a_n) &= (-a_1, \dots, -a_n), \\ c(a_1, \dots, a_n) &= (ca_1, \dots, ca_n).\end{aligned}$$

DEFINITION 22.3. The elements $u_1, \dots, u_n \in V$ are linearly independent if whenever $a_1, \dots, a_n \in R$ satisfies $(a_1, \dots, a_n) \neq (0, \dots, 0)$ it follows that $a_1u_1 + \dots + a_nu_n \neq 0$.

DEFINITION 22.4. The elements $u_1, \dots, u_n \in V$ generate V if for every $u \in V$ there exist $a_1, \dots, a_n \in R$ such that $u = a_1u_1 + \dots + a_nu_n$. (We also say that u is a linear combination of u_1, \dots, u_n .)

DEFINITION 22.5. The elements $u_1, \dots, u_n \in V$ are a basis of V if they are linearly independent and generate V .

EXERCISE 22.6.

- 1) Show that $(-1, 1, 0)$ and $(0, 1, -1)$ are linearly independent in R^3 but they do not generate R^3 .
- 2) Show that $(-1, 1, 0), (0, 1, -1), (1, 0, 1), (0, 2, -1)$ generate R^3 but are not linearly independent in R^3 .
- 3) Show that $(-1, 1, 0), (0, 1, -1), (1, 0, 1)$ is a basis in R^3 .

EXERCISE 22.7. If V has a basis u_1, \dots, u_n then the map $R^n \rightarrow V$, $(a_1, \dots, a_n) \mapsto a_1u_1 + \dots + a_nu_n$ is bijective. Hint: Directly from definitions.

EXERCISE 22.8. If V is generated by u_1, \dots, u_n then V has a basis consisting of at most n elements. Hint: Considering a subset of $\{u_1, \dots, u_n\}$ minimal with the property that it generates V we may assume that every subset obtained from $\{u_1, \dots, u_n\}$

does not generate V . We claim that u_1, \dots, u_n are linearly independent. Assume not. Hence there exists $(a_1, \dots, a_n) \neq (0, \dots, 0)$ such that $a_1u_1 + \dots + a_nu_n = 0$. We may assume $a_1 = 1$. Then one checks that u_2, \dots, u_n generate V , contradicting minimality.

EXERCISE 22.9. Assume $R = \mathbb{F}_p$ and V has a basis with n elements. Then $|V| = p^n$.

THEOREM 22.10. *If V has a basis u_1, \dots, u_n and a basis v_1, \dots, v_m then $n = m$.*

Proof. We prove $m \leq n$; similarly one has $n \leq m$. Assume $m > n$ and seek a contradiction. Since u_1, \dots, u_n generate V we may write $v_1 = a_1u_1 + \dots + a_nu_n$ with not all a_1, \dots, a_n zero. Renumbering u_1, \dots, u_n we may assume $a_1 \neq 0$. Hence v_1, u_2, \dots, u_n generates V . Hence $v_2 = b_1v_1 + b_2u_2 + \dots + b_nu_n$. But not all b_2, \dots, b_n can be zero because v_1, v_2 are linearly independent. So renumbering u_2, \dots, u_n we may assume $b_2 \neq 0$. So $v_1, v_2, u_3, \dots, u_n$ generates V . Continuing (one needs induction) we get that v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n generates V . So $v_{n+1} = d_1v_n + \dots + d_nv_n$. But this contradicts the fact that v_1, \dots, v_m are linearly independent. \square

EXERCISE 22.11. Give a quick proof of the above theorem in case $R = \mathbb{F}_p$. Hint: We have $p^n = p^m$ hence $n = m$.

DEFINITION 22.12. We say V is finite dimensional (or that it has a finite basis) if there exists a basis u_1, \dots, u_n of V . Then we define the dimension of V to be n ; write $\dim V = n$. (The definition is correct due to Theorem 22.10.)

DEFINITION 22.13. If V and W are vector spaces a map $F : V \rightarrow W$ is called *linear* if for all $a \in K$, $u, v \in V$ we have:

- 1) $F(au) = aF(u)$,
- 2) $F(u + v) = F(u) + F(v)$.

EXAMPLE 22.14. If $a, b, c, d, e, f \in R$ then the map $F : R^3 \rightarrow R^2$ given by

$$F(u, v, w) = (au + bv + cw, du + ev + fw)$$

is a linear map.

EXERCISE 22.15. Prove that if $F : V \rightarrow W$ is a linear map of vector spaces then $V' = F^{-1}(0)$ and $V'' = F(V)$ are vector spaces (with respect to the obvious operations). If in addition V and W are finite dimensional then V' and V'' are finite dimensional and

$$\dim V = \dim V' + \dim V''.$$

Hint: Construct corresponding bases.

EXERCISE 22.16. Give an example of a vector space that is not finite dimensional.

CHAPTER 23

Matrices

Matrices appeared in the context of linear systems of equations and were studied in the work of Leibniz, Cramer, Cayley, Eisenstein, Hamilton, Sylvester, Jordan, etc. They were later rediscovered and applied in the context of Heisenberg's matrix mechanics. Nowadays they are a standard concept in linear algebra courses.

DEFINITION 23.1. Let $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$. An $m \times n$ matrix with coefficients in a field R is a map

$$A : \{1, \dots, m\} \times \{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow R.$$

If $A(i, j) = a_{ij}$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$, $1 \leq j \leq n$ then we write

$$A = (a_{ij}) = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{m1} & \dots & a_{mn} \end{pmatrix}.$$

We denote by

$$R^{m \times n} = M_{m \times n}(R)$$

the set of all $m \times n$ matrices. We also write $M_n(R) = M_{n \times n}(R)$. Note that $R^{1 \times n}$ identifies with R^n ; its elements are of the form

$$(a_1, \dots, a_n)$$

and are called *row* matrices (row vectors). Similarly the elements of $R^{m \times 1}$ are of the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ \dots \\ \dots \\ a_m \end{pmatrix}$$

and are called *column* matrices (column vectors). If $A = (a_{ij}) \in R^{m \times n}$ then

$$u^1 = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} \\ \dots \\ \dots \\ a_{m1} \end{pmatrix}, \dots, u^n = \begin{pmatrix} a_{1n} \\ \dots \\ \dots \\ a_{mn} \end{pmatrix}$$

are called the *columns* of A and we also write

$$A = (u^1, \dots, u^n).$$

Similarly

$$(a_{11}, \dots, a_{1n}), \dots, (a_{m1}, \dots, a_{mn})$$

are called the *rows* of A .

DEFINITION 23.2. Let $0 \in R^{m \times n}$ the matrix $0 = (z_{ij})$ with $z_{ij} = 0$ for all i, j ; 0 is called the *zero matrix*. Let $I \in R^{m \times n}$ the matrix $I = (\delta_{ij})$ where $\delta_{ii} = 1$ for all i and $\delta_{ij} = 0$ for all $i \neq j$; I is called the *identity matrix* and δ_{ij} is called the *Kronecker symbol*.

DEFINITION 23.3. If $A = (a_{ij}), B = (b_{ij}) \in R^{m \times n}$ we define the sum

$$C = A + B \in R^{m \times n}$$

as

$$C = (c_{ij}), \quad c_{ij} = a_{ij} + b_{ij}.$$

If $A = (a_{is}) \in R^{m \times k}$, $B = (b_{sj}) \in R^{k \times n}$, we define the product

$$C = AB \in R^{m \times n}$$

as

$$C = (c_{ij}), \quad c_{ij} = \sum_{s=1}^k a_{is}b_{sj}.$$

If $A = (a_{ij}) \in R^{n \times m}$ and $\lambda \in R$ define the matrix

$$\lambda A = (\lambda a_{ij}) \in R^{n \times m}.$$

EXERCISE 23.4. Prove that:

- 1) $R^{m \times n}$ is a group with respect to $+$.
- 2) $A(BC) = (AB)C$ for all $A \in R^{m \times k}$, $B \in R^{k \times l}$, $C \in R^{l \times n}$.
- 3) $A(B + C) = AB + AC$ for all $A \in R^{m \times k}$ and $B, C \in R^{k \times n}$.
- 4) $(B + C)A = BA + CA$ for all $B, C \in R^{m \times k}$ and $A \in R^{k \times n}$.
- 5) $AI = IA$ for all $A \in R^{m \times n}$.
- 6) $\lambda(A + B) = \lambda A + \lambda B$ and $(\lambda A)B = A(\lambda B) = \lambda(AB)$ for all $\lambda \in R$.

EXERCISE 23.5. If $A \in R^{m \times k}$, $B \in R^{k \times n}$, and the columns of B are $b^1, \dots, b^n \in R^{k \times 1}$ then the columns of AB are $Ab^1, \dots, Ab^n \in R^{m \times 1}$ (where Ab^i is the product of the matrices A and b^i). In other words

$$B = (b^1, \dots, b^n) \Rightarrow AB = (Ab^1, \dots, Ab^n).$$

DEFINITION 23.6.

$$\left(\begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 0 \\ \dots \\ 0 \end{array} \right), \left(\begin{array}{c} 0 \\ 1 \\ \dots \\ 0 \end{array} \right), \dots, \left(\begin{array}{c} 0 \\ 0 \\ \dots \\ 1 \end{array} \right)$$

is called the *standard basis* of $R^{m \times 1}$. These vectors are usually denoted by e^1, \dots, e^n .

EXERCISE 23.7. Prove that the above is indeed a basis of $R^{m \times 1}$.

Here is the link between linear maps and matrices:

DEFINITION 23.8. If $F : V \rightarrow W$ is a linear map of vector spaces and v_1, \dots, v_n and w_1, \dots, w_m are bases of V and W , respectively, then for $j = 1, \dots, n$ one can write uniquely

$$F(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^m a_{ij}w_i.$$

The matrix $A = (a_{ij}) \in R^{m \times n}$ is called the *matrix of F* with respect to the bases v_1, \dots, v_n and w_1, \dots, w_m .

EXERCISE 23.9. Consider a matrix $A = (a_{ij}) \in R^{m \times n}$ and consider the map

$$F : R^{n \times 1} \rightarrow R^{m \times 1}, \quad F(u) = Au \quad (\text{product of matrices}).$$

Then the matrix of F with respect to the canonical bases of $R^{n \times 1}$ and $R^{m \times 1}$ is A itself.

Hint: Let e^1, \dots, e^n be the standard basis of $R^{n \times 1}$ and let f^1, \dots, f^m be the standard basis of $R^{m \times 1}$. Then

$$F(e^1) = Ae^1 = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{m1} & \dots & a_{mn} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \dots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \\ \dots \\ a_{m1} \end{pmatrix} = a_{11}f^1 + \dots + a_{m1}f^m.$$

A similar computation can be done for e^2, \dots, e^n .

EXERCISE 23.10. Let $F : R^{n \times 1} \rightarrow R^{m \times 1}$ be a linear map and let $A \in R^{m \times n}$ be the matrix of F with respect to the standard bases. Then for all $u \in R^{n \times 1}$ we have $F(u) = Au$.

EXERCISE 23.11. Let $G : R^{n \times 1} \rightarrow R^{k \times 1}$ and let $F : R^{k \times 1} \rightarrow R^{m \times 1}$ be linear maps. Let A be the matrix of F with respect to standard bases and let B be the matrix of G with respect to the standard bases. Then the matrix of $F \circ G$ with respect to the standard bases is AB (product of matrices). Hint: $F(G(u)) = A(Bu) = (AB)u$.

DEFINITION 23.12. Let $F : V \rightarrow V$ be a linear map.

1) We say $\lambda \in R$ is an *eigenvalue* of F if there exists $v \in V$, $v \neq 0$, such that $F(v) = \lambda v$. We say that v belongs to λ . The vector space $V_\lambda = \{v \in V \mid F(v) = \lambda v\}$ is called the *eigenspace* of F corresponding to λ .

2) We say that $v \in V$ is an *eigenvector* of F if $v \neq 0$ there exists $\lambda \in R$ such that $F(v) = \lambda v$. We say that λ corresponds to v .

3) If $A \in R^{n \times n}$ and $V = R^{n \times 1}$ then the eigenvalues and the eigenvectors of the map $F : V \rightarrow V$, $F(v) = Av$, are referred to as the eigenvalues (resp. eigenvectors) of A .

EXERCISE 23.13. Let $A \in R^{n \times n}$ where R is a field. Prove that $\lambda \in R$ is an eigenvalue of A if and only if $\det(\lambda I - A) = 0$.

EXERCISE 23.14. Let $F, G : V \rightarrow V$ be linear maps with $F \circ G = G \circ F$, let $\lambda \in R$ be an eigenvalue of A , and let V_λ be the eigenspace of F corresponding to λ . Prove that $G(V_\lambda) \subset V_\lambda$.

REMARK 23.15. It follows from Exercises 23.13 and 23.14 plus the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra 25.13 to be stated (without proof) later that if $R = \mathbb{C}$ and $F, G : V \rightarrow V$ are linear maps with $F \circ G = G \circ F$ then F and G possess a common eigenvector. (Check!)

DEFINITION 23.16. If $A = (a_{ij}) \in R^{m \times n}$ is a matrix one defines the transpose of A as the matrix $A^t = (a'_{ij}) \in R^{n \times m}$ where $a'_{ij} = a_{ji}$.

EXAMPLE 23.17.

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \end{pmatrix}^t = \begin{pmatrix} a & d \\ b & e \\ c & f \end{pmatrix}.$$

EXERCISE 23.18. Prove that:

- 1) $(A + B)^t = A^t + B^t$ for $A, B \in R^{n \times m}$.
- 2) $(AB)^t = B^t A^t$ for $A \in R^{n \times m}$ and $B \in R^{m \times k}$.
- 3) $I^t = I$.

DEFINITION 23.19. For every $A = (a_{ij}) \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times m}$ we define $\bar{A} = (\bar{a}_{ij}) \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times m}$ and $A^* = \bar{A}^t \in \mathbb{C}^{m \times n}$.

EXERCISE 23.20. Prove that

- 1) $(A + B)^* = A^* + B^*$ for $A, B \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times m}$.
- 2) $(AB)^* = B^* A^*$ for $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times m}$ and $B \in \mathbb{C}^{m \times k}$.
- 3) $I^* = I$.

DEFINITION 23.21.

A matrix $A \in R^{n \times n}$ is called *orthogonal* if $AA^t = I$ (equivalently $A^t A = I$).

A matrix $A \in R^{n \times n}$ is called *symmetric* if $A^t = A$.

A matrix $A \in R^{n \times n}$ is called *anti-symmetric* if $A^t + A = 0$.

A matrix $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$ is called *unitary* if $AA^* = I$ (equivalently $A^* A = I$).

A matrix $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$ is called *Hermitian* if $A = A^*$.

A matrix $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$ is called *anti-Hermitian* if $A + A^* = 0$.

EXERCISE 23.22. For $\varphi, \psi \in V := \mathbb{C}^n = \mathbb{C}^{n \times 1}$ define their Hermitian product

$$\langle \varphi, \psi \rangle := \psi^* \varphi \in \mathbb{C} = \mathbb{C}^{1 \times 1}.$$

- 1) Prove that $\langle \varphi, \varphi \rangle \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ for $\varphi \neq 0$.
- 2) Prove that $\overline{\langle \varphi, \psi \rangle} = \langle \psi, \varphi \rangle$.
- 3) Prove that $\langle \lambda \varphi, \psi \rangle = \lambda \langle \varphi, \psi \rangle$ and $\langle \varphi, \lambda \psi \rangle = \bar{\lambda} \langle \varphi, \psi \rangle$ for $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$.
- 4) Prove that for all non-zero $\varphi, \psi \in \mathbb{C}^n$ we have the following inequality (of Cauchy-Schwarz):

$$|\langle \varphi, \psi \rangle|^2 \leq \langle \varphi, \varphi \rangle \langle \psi, \psi \rangle$$

with equality if and only if $\varphi + \lambda \psi = 0$ for some $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$.

5) Let us say that a basis ψ_1, \dots, ψ_n of V is orthonormal if $\langle \psi_i, \psi_j \rangle = \delta_{ij}$ for all i, j . Prove that if $\varphi = \sum_i u_i \psi_i$ with ψ_1, \dots, ψ_n orthonormal and $u_i \in \mathbb{C}$ then $\langle \varphi, \varphi \rangle = 1$ if and only if $\sum_i |u_i|^2 = 1$. Also, if the latter is the case then $u_i = \langle \varphi, \psi_i \rangle$.

6) Prove that for every matrix $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$ and all $\varphi, \psi \in V$ one has $\langle A\varphi, \psi \rangle = \langle \varphi, A^* \psi \rangle$.

7) Let ψ_1, \dots, ψ_n of V be a basis. Prove that a matrix $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$ is Hermitian if and only if $\langle A\psi_i, \psi_j \rangle = \langle \psi_i, A\psi_j \rangle$.

8) Let ψ_1, \dots, ψ_n of V be an orthonormal basis and $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n \in \mathbb{R}$. Let $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$ be the unique matrix such that $A\psi_i = \lambda_i \psi_i$. Prove that A is Hermitian and that for all φ the following holds:

$$\langle A\varphi, \varphi \rangle = \sum_i \lambda_i |\langle \varphi, \psi_i \rangle|^2 \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Hint for 4): We have

$$\langle \varphi + \lambda \psi, \varphi + \lambda \psi \rangle \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$$

for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ with $\varphi + \lambda \psi \neq 0$. Set $\lambda = r \langle \psi, \varphi \rangle$ with $r \in \mathbb{R}$ arbitrary and use the fact that if $a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$, $a \neq 0$ are such that $ar^2 + br + c > 0$ for all $r \in \mathbb{R}$ then $b^2 - 4ac < 0$; for the latter take $r = -\frac{b}{2a}$.

Hint for 7): Prove that $\langle A\varphi, \psi \rangle = \langle \varphi, A\psi \rangle$ for all φ, ψ and specialize to the case where the latter are members e^i, e^j of the standard basis.

EXAMPLE 23.23. (Quantum measurement). The discussion in this Remark will be informal. We are interested in using the language of Hermitian products to introduce some concepts from quantum mechanics. There are two types of behavior for quantum systems:

- 1) in between two measurements;
- 2) during a measurement.

The two types of behavior are mathematically (and conceptually) described in completely different ways and this is one of the theoretically unsatisfactory aspects of quantum mechanics. Type 1) is “deterministic” (described by Schrödinger differential equation) and we will ignore here. Type 2) is “probabilistic” and the following is a description of a “baby model” for it; we restrict ourselves to the “finite dimensional case” (which should only be viewed as an approximation of the full theory and, in particular, does not fully accommodate the Heisenberg uncertainty principle, cf. Remark 23.26).

One starts with a finite dimensional vector space V over \mathbb{C} which we identify with $Map(\{1, \dots, n\}, \mathbb{C}) = \mathbb{C}^n = \mathbb{C}^{n \times 1}$. The vectors $\varphi \in V$ with $\langle \varphi, \varphi \rangle = 1$ are called *states* (or *state vectors* or *wave vectors* or *wave functions* on the “discrete space” $\{1, \dots, n\}$). We denote by S the set of states. Two states $\varphi, \varphi' \in S$ are called *equivalent* if $\varphi' = z \cdot \varphi$ for some $z \in \mathbb{C}$ (which necessarily satisfies $|z| = 1$). Assume we are given a thing called (physical) *system*. The system can be in any of the states in S . One also considers a set \mathcal{O} whose elements are called *observables*. For each observable $A \in \mathcal{O}$ one postulates a measuring device that comes with the following data: a finite subset $\sigma(A) = \{\lambda_1^A, \dots, \lambda_n^A\}$ of \mathbb{R} of cardinality n (called the *spectrum* of A) and a collection L_1^A, \dots, L_n^A of one dimensional subspaces of V with $\langle L_i^A, L_j^A \rangle = 0$ for $i \neq j$. The device D^A receives inputs and produces outputs. The inputs of D^A can be any of the states $\varphi \in S$. Regardless of the input, the outputs of D^A can be any states in the union

$$\bigcup_{i=1}^n L_i^A.$$

If the output is in L_i^A we denote it by ψ_i^A . The process of passing from input to output is called the *measurement* of A by D^A . The output ψ_i^A is not empirically knowable and not determined by φ and A . (This is one of the unsatisfactory aspects of the phenomenology of quantum mechanics.) The value λ_i is not determined by φ and A but it is known after measurement and it is called the *result* of the measurement of A by our device. One calls $\langle \varphi, \psi_i^A \rangle$ the *probability amplitude* of obtaining the output ψ_i^A if the state of the system before the measurement was φ . (So this complex number is not empirically knowable.) One calls the real number $|\langle \varphi, \psi_i^A \rangle|^2$ the *probability* of obtaining the output ψ_i^A if the state of the system before the measurement was φ . (This real number can be compared with experimental data.) This latter number is between 0 and 1 in view of 4) in Exercise 23.22 and only depends of the equivalence class of φ and on L_i^A ; also by 5) in Exercise 23.22, the sum of these probabilities as i runs through $\{1, \dots, n\}$ is 1 which is what probabilities should satisfy. The above definitions/postulates agree with the experimental fact that if a measurement of A is performed with result λ_i^A and then a second measurement of A is performed immediately after (so that the

Schrödinger equation evolution does not have time to “kick in”) then the new result is always, again, λ_i^A which is compatible with the postulate that $\psi_i^A \in L_i^A$ so the second measurement is certain to yield, again, the value λ_i^A because $|\langle \psi_i^A, \psi_i^A \rangle|^2 = 1$. Finally given the real numbers $\{\lambda_1^A, \dots, \lambda_n^A\}$ and the spaces $\{L_1^A, \dots, L_n^A\}$ one can consider the unique matrix, which by abuse we still denote by A , such that $A\psi = \lambda_i^A \psi$ for $\psi \in L_i^A$; hence $A\psi_i^A = \lambda_i^A \psi_i^A$ for all i . By 8) in Exercise 23.22 A is Hermitian and it is reasonable to interpret the real number $\langle A\varphi, \varphi \rangle$ as the expectation value, or average value, of the measurement of A for a system which was in state φ before the measurement.

Note that $V = \mathbb{C}^n$ has a distinguished family of one dimensional subspaces, with bases the elements of the standard basis e^i , coming from the identification of V with $Map(\{1, \dots, n\}, \mathbb{C})$. This family of subspaces, together with a collection $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n$ of real numbers, are considered to correspond to the observable X called *position*: so $L_i^X = \{ze^i \mid z \in \mathbb{C}\}$ and $\lambda_i^X = \lambda_i$ is the coordinate of a point on the real axis that stands for the position of a particle. (So the particle can occupy only n positions.) If $\varphi = (z_1, \dots, z_n)^t \in \mathbb{C}^n$ then the probability that the particle is at the point with coordinate λ_i is $|z_i|^2$.

A remark on successive measurements. One postulates that the probability amplitude satisfies properties similar to those of probability relative to independent events; we will not review these here. Assume now that A, B, C, D are observables measured for a system, in this order. Assume we know that after the measurement of A the result was λ_i^A . Then, under this assumption, the probability amplitude that after the measurement of D the output is ψ_l^D when the input for the measurement of A was ψ_i^A is

$$\sum_{j,k=1}^n \langle \psi_i^A, \psi_j^B \rangle \langle \psi_j^B, \psi_k^C \rangle \langle \psi_k^C, \psi_l^D \rangle$$

which is the (i, l) -element of the matrix $S_{AB}S_{BC}S_{CD}$ where

$$S_{AB} = (\langle \psi_i^A, \psi_j^B \rangle)$$

and similarly for S_{BC}, S_{CD} . This probability amplitude only depends on

$$\psi_i^A, L_j^B, L_k^C, \psi_l^D$$

(and not on ψ_j^B, ψ_k^C .) The corresponding probability only depends on

$$L_i^A, L_j^B, L_k^C, L_l^D.$$

This probability is usually different from that obtained by measuring these observables in the following order: A, C, B, D . For this new probability amplitude is the (i, l) -element of the matrix $S_{AC}S_{CB}S_{BD}$ and, generally, we have

$$S_{AB}S_{BC}S_{CD} \neq S_{AC}S_{CB}S_{BD}.$$

However if we assume that B and C have the same eigenvectors, i.e., $L_i^B = L_i^C$ then we have

$$S_{AB}S_{BC}S_{CD} = S_{AB}S_{BD} = S_{AC}S_{CD} = S_{AC}S_{CB}S_{BD}.$$

In this case we also have $BC = CB$. Note that, conversely, by Exercise 23.14, if $BC = CB$ then each of L_1^B, \dots, L_n^B is one of L_1^C, \dots, L_n^C .

DEFINITION 23.24. For every matrix $A = (a_{ij}) \in R^{n \times n}$ define its trace

$$\text{Tr}(A) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{ii}.$$

EXERCISE 23.25. Let $A, B \in R^{n \times n}$ and $c \in R$.

- 1) Prove that $\text{Tr}(A + B) = \text{Tr}(A) + \text{Tr}(B)$ and $\text{Tr}(cA) = c \cdot \text{Tr}(A)$.
- 2) Prove that $\text{Tr}(AB) = \text{Tr}(BA)$.
- 3) Prove that if R contains \mathbb{Z} then $AB - BA \neq I$.

REMARK 23.26. Part 3) in the previous Exercise is relevant for the foundations of quantum mechanics. Indeed, a relation such as $AB - BA = I$ for $R = \mathbb{C}$ is necessary in quantum mechanics to express the ‘‘Heisenberg uncertainty principle.’’ Since, by 3) above, this relation is impossible one needs to replace the ‘‘baby model’’ for quantum mechanics (cf. Example 23.23) with one that uses infinite dimensional vector spaces and infinite matrices.

EXAMPLE 23.27. (Mechanics in 1 + 1 dimensions). The discussion in this Example will be informal. We are interested in showing how matrices can be used to introduce some concepts from classical and relativistic (non-quantum) mechanics.

Let M be a set which we refer to as space-time; the elements of M will be referred to as space-times points. By a chart (or frame) on M we mean a bijection $\Phi : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2 = \mathbb{R}^{2 \times 1}$. Let G be a subgroup of $SL_2(\mathbb{R})$ identified with a subset of the group of bijections $\mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$; for $A \in G$ we identify A with the bijection $v \mapsto Av$. By an atlas (or G -atlas) on M we mean a set of charts such that for every two charts Φ, Φ' we have that $\Phi' \circ \Phi \in G$. By a maximal atlas on M we mean an atlas such that for all chart Φ and all $A \in G$ we have that $A \circ \Phi$ is a chart. For every chart there is a unique maximal atlas containing that chart (prove this!). Fix, in what follows, a maximal atlas. There is a unique point $P_0 \in M$ such that $\Phi(P_0) = 0$ for all charts Φ (prove this!). For a vector $\xi = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ t \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^2$ with $t \neq 0$ we define the velocity of v to be the real number

$$\text{vel}(\xi) = \frac{x}{t}.$$

(The physical interpretation of this is the following: if a uniformly moving particle is present at both space-time points P_0 and P then the number $\text{vel}(\Phi(P))$ represents the velocity of the particle measured in the frame/chart Φ .) So if

$$A = \Phi' \circ \Phi = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \gamma & \delta \end{pmatrix}$$

and $\xi = \Phi(P) = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ t \end{pmatrix}$, $\xi' = \Phi'(P)$ then

$$\xi' = \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ t' \end{pmatrix} = A\xi = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha x + \beta t \\ \gamma x + \delta t \end{pmatrix}$$

hence if $v = \text{vel}(\xi)$ and $v' = \text{vel}(\xi')$ then

$$v' = \frac{\alpha x + \beta t}{\gamma x + \delta t} = \frac{\alpha v + \beta}{\gamma v + \delta} =: A \cdot v$$

when the latter denominator is non-zero. (The map $v \mapsto A \cdot v$ is called the *Mobius transformation* defined by A .) A momentum-energy vector is a vector $(\pi, \epsilon)^t$ of

functions $V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, where $V = (-c, c)$ is an open interval in \mathbb{R} , such that for all $m_1, m_2 \in \mathbb{R}$, all $v_1, v_2, w_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{R}$, and all $A \in G$ if

$$\sum_{i=1}^2 m_i \pi(v_i) = \sum_{i=1}^2 m_i \pi(w_i) \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{i=1}^2 m_i \epsilon(v_i) = \sum_{i=1}^2 m_i \epsilon(w_i),$$

then

$$\sum_{i=1}^2 m_i \pi(A \cdot v_i) = \sum_{i=1}^2 m_i \pi(A \cdot w_i) \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{i=1}^2 m_i \epsilon(A \cdot v_i) = \sum_{i=1}^2 m_i \epsilon(A \cdot w_i).$$

Here m_i are physically interpreted as the “rest masses” of two particles, v_i are the velocities of the particles before an elastic collision, and w_i are the velocities of the particles after the elastic collision. Moreover an expression of the form $p = m\pi(v)$ is interpreted as the momentum of a particle with rest mass m and velocity v , an expression of the form $E = m\epsilon(v)$ is interpreted as the energy of a particle with rest mass m and velocity v , and (following Galileo) an expression of the form $\frac{p}{v}$ is interpreted as the dynamical mass of a particle with momentum p and velocity v . (However Galileo postulated that the dynamical mass coincides with the rest mass, i.e. $\frac{p}{v} = m$, which in relativity theory ceases to be the case). So the condition above, defining a momentum-energy vector, says that if the conservation of the total momentum and energy after an elastic collision holds in one frame then it holds in any other frame. Note that if $\beta = (\pi, \epsilon)^t$ is a momentum-energy vector then for all matrices $\Lambda \in GL_2(\mathbb{R})$ and all $\tau \in \mathbb{R}^{2 \times 1}$ the vector $\Lambda\beta + \tau$ is a momentum-energy vector. Normalizing the situation depends on further physical interpretation.

EXERCISE 23.28. (Galilean mechanics). Let $M = \mathbb{R}^2$ and consider the unique maximal atlas containing the chart given by the identity. Let G be the group of all matrices of the form

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & u \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

1) Prove that if $v = \text{vel}(\xi)$, $\xi' = A\xi$, and $v' = \text{vel}(\xi')$. then

$$v' = v + u.$$

(This is interpreted as the law of addition of velocities.)

2) Prove that the vector $(\pi, \epsilon)^t$ where $V = \mathbb{R}$, $\pi(v) = v$ and $\epsilon(v) = v^2/2$ is a momentum-energy vector. (This corresponds to the classical momentum and energy.)

REMARK 23.29. Assuming, in this Remark only, that one is familiar with calculus note that in Galilean mechanics we have

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = v \cdot \frac{dp}{dt}.$$

One calls $\frac{dp}{dt}$ the *force*.

EXERCISE 23.30. (Relativistic mechanics). Let $M = \mathbb{R}^2$ and consider the unique maximal atlas containing the chart given by the identity. Let G be the group of all matrices of the form

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \beta & \alpha \end{pmatrix}, \quad \alpha^2 - \beta^2 = 1.$$

1) Let $q : \mathbb{R}^{2 \times 1} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be defined by $q(v) = v^t \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} q$. Prove that G consists of all matrices $A \in SL_2(\mathbb{R})$ such that $q(Av) = q(v)$ for all v .

2) Prove that if $\text{vel}(\xi) = 1$ then $\text{vel}(A\xi) = 1$ for all $A \in G$. (This is interpreted as saying that if a particle has velocity 1 in one frame then it has velocity 1 in any other frame; velocity 1 is interpreted as the velocity of light so the velocity of light is independent of the frame which is one of the axioms of relativity theory.)

3) For every $u \in \mathbb{R}$ with $-1 < u < 1$ let

$$\alpha_u := \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-u^2}}, \quad A_u := \alpha_u \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -u \\ -u & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Prove that for all such u we have that $A_u \in G$ and that for all $A \in G$ with $\alpha \neq 0$ there exists u such that $A = A_u$.

4) Prove that for all $-1 < u, v < 1$ we have

$$\alpha_{\frac{v-u}{1-vu}} = \alpha_u \alpha_v (1 - uv).$$

5) Prove that if $\text{vel}(\xi) = v$ with $-1 < v < 1$ then

$$\text{vel}(A_u \xi) = \frac{v-u}{1-vu}.$$

(This is interpreted as the law of composition of velocities in relativistic mechanics.)

6) Prove that

$$A_u \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_v v \\ \alpha_v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{\frac{v-u}{1-vu}} \cdot \frac{v-u}{1-vu} \\ \alpha_{\frac{v-u}{1-vu}} \end{pmatrix}$$

7) Prove that the pair (π, ϵ) defined for $V = (-1, 1)$ by $\pi(v) = \alpha_v \cdot v$ and $\epsilon(v) = \alpha_v$ is a momentum-energy pair.

Hint: consider the equality

$$\sum_{i=1}^2 m_i \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{v_i} v_i \\ \alpha_{v_i} \end{pmatrix} = \sum_{i=1}^2 m_i \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{w_i} w_i \\ \alpha_{w_i} \end{pmatrix}$$

multiply on the left by A_u and use 6).

REMARK 23.31. The interpretation of 7) above is that the “dynamical mass” $\frac{p}{v} = \frac{m\pi(v)}{v} = m\alpha_v$ is equal to the “energy” $E = m\epsilon(v) = m\alpha_v$. This is the “equivalence of mass and energy” in relativistic mechanics. Of course, replacing $\epsilon(v)$ by $\epsilon(v) + \epsilon_0$ for some universal constant ϵ_0 (which still leads to a momentum-energy vector) would alter this conclusion. So Einstein’s $E = mc^2 = m$ does not follow from the above considerations; one needs further arguments for that. On the other hand, assuming, in this Remark only, some familiarity with calculus, one can show that

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-v^2}} = 1 + \frac{v^2}{2} + O(v^4)$$

where $O(v^4)$ is v^4 times a function which stays bounded when $v \rightarrow 0$; this implies that

$$\frac{p}{v} - m = \frac{mv^2}{2} + mO(v^4),$$

i.e., for “small” velocities, the difference between the dynamical mass and the rest mass is “approximately equal” to the Galilean energy. This shows that dynamical

mass variation is reflected in a variation of energy and this conclusion stays true even if we replace $\epsilon(v)$ by $\epsilon(v) + \epsilon_0$ for some constant ϵ_0 (while keeping $\pi(v)$ unchanged). By the way, in relativistic mechanics, we again have (check!)

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = v \cdot \frac{dp}{dt}.$$

Again, we call $\frac{dp}{dt}$ the *force*.

Determinants

A fundamental concept in the theory of matrices is that of determinant of a matrix. The main results are due to Cauchy, Kronecker, and Weierstrass. In spite of the computational aspect of this concept the best way to approach it is via an “axiomatic” method as follows.

DEFINITION 24.1. Let V and W be vector spaces over a field R and let

$$f : V^n = V \times \dots \times V \rightarrow W$$

be a map. We say f is multilinear if for every $v_1, \dots, v_n \in V$ and every $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ we have:

1) If $v_i = v'_i + v''_i$ then

$$f(v_1, \dots, v_n) = f(v_1, \dots, v'_i, \dots, v_n) + f(v_1, \dots, v''_i, \dots, v_n).$$

2) If $v_i = cv'_i$ then

$$f(v_1, \dots, v_n) = cf(v_1, \dots, v'_i, \dots, v_n).$$

EXAMPLE 24.2. $f : R^{3 \times 1} \times R^{3 \times 1} \rightarrow R$ defined by

$$f \left(\left(\begin{array}{c} a \\ b \\ c \end{array} \right), \left(\begin{array}{c} d \\ e \\ f \end{array} \right) \right) = ad + 3bf - ce$$

is multilinear.

DEFINITION 24.3. A multilinear map $f : V^n = V \times \dots \times V \rightarrow W$ is called *alternating* if whenever $v_1, \dots, v_n \in V$ and there exist indices $i \neq j$ such that $v_i = v_j$ we have $f(v_1, \dots, v_n) = 0$.

EXAMPLE 24.4. f in Example 24.2 is not alternating. On the other hand $g : R^{2 \times 1} \times R^{2 \times 1} \rightarrow R$ defined by

$$g \left(\left(\begin{array}{c} a \\ c \end{array} \right), \left(\begin{array}{c} b \\ d \end{array} \right) \right) = 2ad - 2bc = 2 \det \left(\begin{array}{cc} a & b \\ c & d \end{array} \right)$$

is alternating.

LEMMA 24.5. If $f : V^n \rightarrow W$ is multilinear alternating and $v_1, \dots, v_n \in V$ then for every indices $i < j$ we have

$$f(v_1, \dots, v_i, \dots, v_j, \dots, v_n) = -f(v_1, \dots, v_j, \dots, v_i, \dots, v_n).$$

Here $v_1, \dots, v_j, \dots, v_i, \dots, v_n$ is obtained from $v_1, \dots, v_i, \dots, v_j, \dots, v_n$ by replacing v_i with v_j and v_j with v_i while leaving all the other v s unchanged.

Proof. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
f(v_1, \dots, v_i + v_j, \dots, v_i + v_j, \dots, v_n) &= f(v_1, \dots, v_i, \dots, v_i, \dots, v_n) \\
&\quad + f(v_1, \dots, v_i, \dots, v_j, \dots, v_n) \\
&\quad + f(v_1, \dots, v_j, \dots, v_i, \dots, v_n) \\
&\quad + f(v_1, \dots, v_j, \dots, v_j, \dots, v_n).
\end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$0 = f(v_1, \dots, v_i, \dots, v_j, \dots, v_n) + f(v_1, \dots, v_j, \dots, v_i, \dots, v_n).$$

□

EXERCISE 24.6. Let $\sigma : \{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, n\}$ be a bijection. Then there exists $\epsilon(\sigma) \in \{-1, 1\}$ with the following property. Let $f : V^n \rightarrow W$ be any multilinear alternating map and $v_1, \dots, v_n \in V$. Then

$$f(v_{\sigma(1)}, \dots, v_{\sigma(n)}) = \epsilon(\sigma) \cdot f(v_1, \dots, v_n).$$

Hint: Induction on n . For the induction step distinguish two cases: $\sigma(1) = 1$ and $\sigma(1) \neq 1$. In the first case one concludes directly by the induction hypothesis. The second case can be reduced to the first case via Lemma 24.5.

We identify $(R^{n \times 1})^n$ with $R^{n \times n}$ by identifying a tuple of columns (b^1, \dots, b^n) with the $n \times n$ matrix whose columns are b^1, \dots, b^n . We denote $I = I_n$ the identity $n \times n$ matrix.

LEMMA 24.7. *There exists a multilinear alternating map*

$$f : R^{n \times n} \rightarrow R$$

such that $f(I) = 1$.

Proof. We proceed by induction on n . For n we take $f(a) = a$. Assume we constructed a multilinear alternating map

$$f_{n-1} : R^{(n-1) \times (n-1)} \rightarrow R$$

such that $f_{n-1}(I_{n-1}) = 1$. Let $A = (a_{ij})$ be an $n \times n$ matrix and let A_{ij} be the $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ matrix obtained from A by deleting the i -th row and the j -th column. Fix i and define

$$f_n(A) = \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{i+j} a_{ij} f_{n-1}(A_{ij}).$$

One easily checks that f_n is multilinear, alternating, and takes value 1 on the identity matrix I_n . □

EXERCISE 24.8. Check the last sentence in the proof above.

LEMMA 24.9. *If f and g are multilinear alternating maps $R^{n \times n} \rightarrow R$ and $f(A) \neq 0$ then there exists $c \in R$ such that $g(A) = cf(A)$ for all A .*

Proof. Let $A = (a_{ij})$. Let e^1, \dots, e^n be the standard basis of $R^{n \times 1}$. Then

$$g(A) = g\left(\sum_{i_1} a_{i_1 1} e^{i_1}, \dots, \sum_{i_n} a_{i_n n} e^{i_n}\right) = \sum_{i_1} \dots \sum_{i_n} a_{i_1 1} \dots a_{i_n n} g(e^{i_1}, \dots, e^{i_n}).$$

The terms for which i_1, \dots, i_n are not distinct are zero. The terms for which i_1, \dots, i_n are distinct are indexed by permutations σ . By Exercise 24.6 we get

$$g(A) = \left(\sum_{\sigma} \epsilon(\sigma) a_{\sigma(1)1} \dots a_{\sigma(n)n} \right) g(I).$$

A similar formula holds for $f(A)$ and the Lemma follows. \square

By Lemmas 24.7 and 24.9 we get:

THEOREM 24.10. *There exists a unique multilinear alternating map (called determinant)*

$$\det : R^{n \times n} \rightarrow R$$

such that $\det(I) = 1$.

EXERCISE 24.11. Using the notation in the proof of Lemma 24.7 prove that:

1) For all i we have

$$\det(A) = \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{i+j} a_{ij} \det(A_{ij}).$$

2) For all j we have

$$\det(A) = \sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{i+j} a_{ij} \det(A_{ij}).$$

Hint: Use Lemma 24.9.

We also have:

THEOREM 24.12. *For every two matrices $A, B \in R^{n \times n}$ we have*

$$\det(AB) = \det(A) \det(B).$$

Proof. Consider the multilinear alternating map $f : R^{n \times n} \rightarrow R$ defined by

$$f(u^1, \dots, u^n) = \det(Au^1, \dots, Au^n)$$

for $u^1, \dots, u^n \in R^{n \times 1}$. By Lemma 24.9 there exists $c \in R$ such that

$$f(u^1, \dots, u^n) = c \cdot \det(u^1, \dots, u^n).$$

Hence

$$\det(Au^1, \dots, Au^n) = c \cdot \det(u^1, \dots, u^n).$$

Setting $u^i = e^i$ we get $\det(A) = c \cdot \det(I) = c$. Setting $u^i = b^i$, the columns of B , we get $\det(AB) = c \cdot \det(B)$ and the theorem is proved. \square

EXERCISE 24.13. Prove that $\epsilon(\sigma\tau) = \epsilon(\sigma)\epsilon(\tau)$ for every permutations $\sigma, \tau \in S_n$; in other words $\epsilon : S_n \rightarrow \{1, -1\}$ is a group homomorphism.

EXERCISE 24.14. Prove that if $A \in R^{n \times n}$ is a matrix such that $\det(A) \neq 0$ then A is invertible i.e., there exists $B \in R^{n \times n}$ such that $AB = BA = I$.

Hint: Define $B = (b_{ij})$ where

$$b_{ij} = (-1)^{i+j} \det(A_{ji})$$

(notation as in Lemma 24.7). Prove that $AB = BA = I$ using Exercise 24.11.

EXERCISE 24.15. Prove that if $A \in R^{n \times n}$ is a matrix then $\det(A) = \det(A^t)$.

EXERCISE 24.16. Let R be a field.

1) Prove that the set $GL_n(R) = \{A \in R^{n \times n} \mid \det(A) \neq 0\}$ is a group with respect to multiplication; $GL_n(R)$ is called the *general linear group*.

2) Prove that the set $SL_n(R) = \{A \in R^{n \times n} \mid \det(A) = 1\}$ is a subgroup of $GL_n(R)$; $SL_n(R)$ is called the *special linear group*.

3) Prove that the set $SO_n(R) = \{A \in R^{n \times n} \mid \det(A) = 1, AA^t = I\}$ is a subgroup of $SL_n(R)$; $SO_n(R)$ is called the *special orthogonal group*.

Check that for $n = 2$ the above correspond to the previously defined groups $GL_2(R), SL_2(R), SO_2(R)$.

EXERCISE 24.17.

1) Prove that if a linear map $F : V \rightarrow W$ is bijective then its inverse $F^{-1} : W \rightarrow V$ is also linear. Such a map will be called an *isomorphism* (of vector spaces).

2) Prove that the set $GL(V)$ of all isomorphisms $V \rightarrow V$ is a group under composition.

3) Assume V has a basis v_1, \dots, v_n and consider the map $GL(V) \rightarrow GL_n(R)$, $F \mapsto A_F$ where A_F is the matrix of F with respect to v_1, \dots, v_n . Prove that $GL(V) \rightarrow GL_n(R)$ is an isomorphism of groups.

EXERCISE 24.18. Define the function $\|\cdot\|^2 : \mathbb{R}^{n \times 1} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ by sending every column vector $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)^t \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times 1}$ into

$$\|x\|^2 = x^t x = x_1^2 + \dots + x_n^2 \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}.$$

Prove that

$$SO_n(\mathbb{R}) = \{A \in SL_n(\mathbb{R}) \mid \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}, \|Ax\|^2 = \|x\|^2\}.$$

EXERCISE 24.19. Define the *special unitary group*

$$SU_n(\mathbb{C}) = \{A \in SL_n(\mathbb{C}) \mid A^* A = I\}.$$

1) Prove that $SU_n(\mathbb{C})$ is a group with respect to multiplication of matrices.

2) Prove that

$$SU_2(\mathbb{C}) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} z & w \\ \bar{w} & \bar{z} \end{pmatrix} \mid |z|^2 + |w|^2 = 1 \right\}.$$

REMARK 24.20. By 2), if one sets $z = x_1 + ix_2$ and $w = x_3 + ix_4$ with x_i real then $SU_2(\mathbb{C})$ identifies with the “unit sphere” $x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2 + x_4^2 = 1$ in \mathbb{R}^4 .

EXERCISE 24.21. Define the vector space (called the *Lie algebra of the special unitary group*):

$$su_2(\mathbb{C}) = \{M \in \mathbb{C}^{2 \times 2} \mid M + M^* = 0, \text{Tr}(M) = 0\}.$$

1) Prove that

$$su_2(\mathbb{C}) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} ix_1 & x_2 + ix_3 \\ -x_2 + ix_3 & -ix_1 \end{pmatrix} \mid x_1, x_2, x_3 \in \mathbb{R} \right\}.$$

2) Let $su_2(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 1}$ be the isomorphism of vector spaces sending every

$$X = \begin{pmatrix} ix_1 & x_2 + ix_3 \\ -x_2 + ix_3 & -ix_1 \end{pmatrix} \in su_2(\mathbb{C})$$

into the column vector $\hat{X} = (x_1, x_2, x_3)^t \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 1}$. Prove that

$$\det(X) = \|\hat{X}\|^2.$$

3) Show that there is a group homomorphism

$$\pi : SU_2(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow SO_3(\mathbb{R})$$

such that $f^{-1}(I) = \{\pm I\}$.

Hint: For $A \in SU_2(\mathbb{C})$ we let $\pi(A)$ be the 3×3 matrix \widehat{A} defined by

$$\widehat{A}\widehat{X} = \widehat{AXA^*}$$

for $X \in su_2(\mathbb{C})$. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|\widehat{A}\widehat{X}\|^2 &= \|\widehat{AXA^*}\|^2 = \det(AXA^*) = \det(A)\det(X)\det(A^*) \\ &= \det(AA^*)\det(X) = \det(X) = \|\widehat{X}\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

which proves that $\widehat{A}\widehat{A}^* = I$. In particular \widehat{A} has determinant ± 1 ; to check the determinant is 1 one needs a more explicit analysis of this construction (or one can use a topological argument).

REMARK 24.22. The map π above can be shown to also be surjective but this is harder. The group $SU_2(\mathbb{C})$ plays a role in the non-relativistic quantum mechanics (spin of the electron) while $SO_3(\mathbb{R})$ plays a role in the Newtonian mechanics; the map π relates them.

EXERCISE 24.23. Define

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Define the *Lorentz group*

$$O_{1,3}(\mathbb{C}) = \{A \in GL_4(\mathbb{R}) \mid A^tQA = Q\}$$

and consider the map $q : \mathbb{R}^{4 \times 1} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by

$$q(x) = x_0^2 - x_1^2 - x_2^2 - x_3^2.$$

- 1) Prove that $O_{1,3}(\mathbb{R})$ is a group under usual matrix multiplication.
- 2) Prove that $O_{1,3}(\mathbb{R}) = \{A \in GL_4(\mathbb{R}) \mid \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}^{4 \times 1}, q(Ax) = q(x)\}$.

EXERCISE 24.24. Define the space of *Hermitian matrices*,

$$h_4(\mathbb{C}) = \{M \in \mathbb{C}^{4 \times 4} \mid M^* = M\}.$$

1) Prove that

$$h_4(\mathbb{C}) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_0 + x_3 & x_1 - ix_2 \\ x_1 + ix_2 & x_0 - x_3 \end{pmatrix} \mid x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3 \in \mathbb{R} \right\}.$$

2) Let $h_4(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{4 \times 1}$ be the isomorphism of vector spaces sending every

$$X = \begin{pmatrix} x_0 + x_3 & x_1 - ix_2 \\ x_1 + ix_2 & x_0 - x_3 \end{pmatrix} \in h_4(\mathbb{C})$$

into the column vector $\widehat{X} = (x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3)^t \in \mathbb{R}^{4 \times 1}$. Prove that

$$\det(X) = q(\widehat{X}).$$

3) Prove that there is a non-trivial group homomorphism

$$\pi : SL_2(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow O_{1,3}(\mathbb{R}).$$

Hint: Let π attach to every $A \in SL_2(\mathbb{C})$ the 4×4 matrix \widehat{A} defined by $\widehat{A}\widehat{X} = \widehat{AXA^*}$ for $X \in \mathfrak{h}_4(\mathbb{C})$.

REMARK 24.25. The Lorentz group $O_{1,3}(\mathbb{R})$ plays a key role in Relativity Theory and the group $SL_2(\mathbb{C})$ plays a role in relativistic quantum mechanics; the map π above relates them. The space $\mathbb{R}^{4 \times 1}$ is called the *Minkovski space-time* and the map $(x, y) \mapsto q(x - y)$ is called the *interval* between two space-time points $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^{4 \times 1}$.

Polynomials

Determining the roots of polynomials was one of the most important motivating problems in the development of algebra, especially in the work of Cardano, Lagrange, Gauss, Abel, and Galois. Here we introduce polynomials and discuss some basic facts about their roots.

DEFINITION 25.1. Let R be a ring. We define the ring of polynomials $R[x]$ in one variable with coefficients in R as follows. An element of $R[x]$ is a map $f : \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\} \rightarrow R$, $i \mapsto a_i$ with the property that there exists $i_0 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $i \geq i_0$ we have $a_i = 0$; we also write such a map as

$$f = (a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots).$$

We define $0, 1 \in R[x]$ by

$$0 = (0, 0, 0, 0, \dots),$$

$$1 = (1, 0, 0, 0, \dots).$$

If f is as above and $g = (b_0, b_1, b_2, b_3, \dots)$ then addition and multiplication are defined by

$$\begin{aligned} f + g &= (a_0 + b_0, a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, a_3 + b_3, \dots), \\ fg &= (a_0b_0, a_0b_1 + a_1b_0, a_0b_2 + a_1b_1 + a_2b_0, a_0b_3 + a_1b_2 + a_2b_1 + a_3b_0, \dots). \end{aligned}$$

We define the degree of $f = (a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots)$ as

$$\deg(f) = \min\{i \mid a_i \neq 0\}$$

if $f \neq 0$ and $\deg(0) = 0$. We also define

$$x = (0, 1, 0, 0, \dots)$$

and we write

$$a = (a, 0, 0, 0, \dots)$$

for every $a \in R$.

EXERCISE 25.2.

- 1) Prove that $R[x]$ with the operations above is a ring.
- 2) Prove that the map $R \rightarrow R[x]$, $a \mapsto a = (a, 0, 0, 0, \dots)$ is a ring homomorphism.
- 3) Prove that $x^2 = (0, 0, 1, 0, \dots)$, $x^3 = (0, 0, 0, 1, 0, \dots)$, etc.
- 4) Prove that if $f = (a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots)$ then

$$f = a_n x^n + \dots + a_1 x + a_0$$

where $n = \deg(f)$. (We also write $f = f(x)$ but we DO NOT SEE $f(x)$ as a function; this is just a notation.)

EXAMPLE 25.3. If $R = \mathbb{Z}$ then

$$\begin{aligned} & (3x^2 + 5x + 1)(8x^3 + 7x^2 - 2x - 1) = \\ & = (3 \times 8)x^5 + (3 \times 7 + 5 \times 8)x^4 + (3 \times (-2) + 5 \times 7 + 1 \times 8)x^3 + \dots \end{aligned}$$

DEFINITION 25.4. For every $b \in R$ we define an element $f(b) \in R$ by

$$f(b) = a_n b^n + \dots + a_1 b + a_0.$$

So for every polynomial $f \in R[x]$ we can define a map (called the *polynomial map* defined by the polynomial f):

$$R \rightarrow R, b \mapsto f(b).$$

(The polynomial map defined by f should not be confused with the polynomial f itself; they are two different entities.) An element $b \in R$ is called a *root* of f (or a zero of f) if $f(b) = 0$. (Sometimes we say “a root in R ” instead of “a root.”)

EXAMPLE 25.5. If $R = \mathbb{F}_2$ and we consider the polynomial $f(x) = x^2 + x \in R[x]$ then $f = (\bar{0}, \bar{1}, \bar{1}, \bar{0}, \dots) \neq (\bar{0}, \bar{0}, \bar{0}, \dots) = 0$ as an element of $R[x]$; but the polynomial map $R \rightarrow R$ defined by f sends $\bar{1} \mapsto \bar{1}^2 + \bar{1} = \bar{0}$ and $\bar{0} \mapsto \bar{0}^2 + \bar{0} = \bar{0}$ so this map is the constant map with value $\bar{0}$. This shows that different polynomials (in our case f and 0) can define the same polynomial map.

EXERCISE 25.6. Let $R = \mathbb{R}$. Show that

- 1) $x^2 + 1$ has no root in \mathbb{R} .
- 2) $\sqrt{\sqrt{3} + 1}$ is a root of $x^4 - 2x^2 - 1 = 0$.

REMARK 25.7. One can ask if every root in \mathbb{C} of a polynomial with coefficients in \mathbb{Q} can be expressed, using (possibly iterated) radicals of rational numbers. The answer to this is negative as shown by Galois in the early 19th century.

EXERCISE 25.8. Let $R = \mathbb{C}$. Show that

- 1) i is a root of $x^2 + 1$ in \mathbb{C} .
- 2) $\frac{1+i}{\sqrt{2}}$ is a root of $x^4 + 1 = 0$ in \mathbb{C} .

REMARK 25.9. Leibniz mistakenly thought that the polynomial $x^4 + 1$ should have no root in \mathbb{C} .

EXERCISE 25.10. Let $R = \mathbb{F}_7$. Show that:

- 1) $x^2 + \bar{1}$ has no root in R .
- 2) $\bar{2}$ is a root of $x^3 - x + \bar{1}$ in R .

EXERCISE 25.11. Let $R = \mathbb{F}_5$. Show that:

- 1) $\bar{2}$ is a root of $x^2 + \bar{1}$ in R .
- 2) $x^5 - x + 1$ has no root in \mathbb{F}_5 .

The study of roots of polynomial functions is one of the main concerns of algebra. Here are two of the main basic theorems about roots.

THEOREM 25.12. (*Lagrange*) *If R is a field then every polynomial of degree $d \geq 1$ has at most d roots in R .*

THEOREM 25.13. (*Fundamental Theorem of Algebra, Gauss*) *If $R = \mathbb{C}$ is the complex field then every polynomial of degree ≥ 1 has at least one root in \mathbb{C} .*

In what follows we prove Theorem 25.12. (Theorem 25.13 is beyond the scope of this course.) We need a preparation.

DEFINITION 25.14. A polynomial $f(x) = a_n x^n + \dots + a_1 x + a_0$ of degree n is monic if $a_n = 1$.

PROPOSITION 25.15. (*Long division*) Let $f(x), g(x) \in R[x]$ with $g(x)$ monic of degree ≥ 1 . Then there exist unique $q(x), r(x) \in R[x]$ such that

$$f(x) = g(x)q(x) + r(x)$$

and $\deg(r) < \deg(g)$.

Proof. Fix g (of degree m) and let us prove by induction on n that the statement above is true if $\deg(f) \leq n$. The case $\deg(f) = 0$ is clear because we can then take $q(x) = 0$ and $r(x) = f(x)$. For the induction step we may take f of degree n and let $f(x) = a_n x^n + \dots + a_0$, $a_n \neq 0$. We may assume $n \geq m$. Then

$$\deg(f - a_n x^{n-m} g) \leq n - 1$$

so by the induction hypothesis

$$f(x) - a_n x^{n-m} g(x) = g(x)q(x) + r(x)$$

with $\deg(r) < m$. So

$$f(x) = g(x)(a_n x^{n-m} + q(x)) + r(x)$$

and we are done. \square

Proof of Theorem 25.12. Assume there exists a polynomial f of degree $d \geq 1$ that has $d + 1$ roots. Choose f such that d is minimal and seek a contradiction. Let $a_1, \dots, a_{d+1} \in R$ be distinct roots of f . By Long Division we can write

$$f(x) = (x - a_{d+1})g(x) + r(x)$$

with $\deg(r) < \deg(x - a_{d+1}) = 1$. So $\deg(r) = 0$ i.e., $r(x) = c \in R$. Since $f(a_{d+1}) = 0$ we get $r(x) = 0$ hence $c = 0$. Since $0 = f(a_k) = (a_k - a_{d+1})g(a_k) + c$ for $k = 1, \dots, d$ it follows that $0 = (a_k - a_{d+1})g(a_k)$. Since R is a field and $a_k - a_{d+1} \neq 0$ for $k = 1, \dots, d$ it follows that $g(a_k) = 0$ for $k = 1, \dots, d$. But $\deg(g) = d - 1$ which contradicts the minimality of d . \square

DEFINITION 25.16. A number $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$ is called *algebraic* if there exists a polynomial $f(x) = a_n x^n + \dots + a_1 x + a_0$ of degree $n \geq 1$ with coefficients in \mathbb{Q} such that $f(\alpha) = 0$. A number $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$ is called *transcendental* if it is not algebraic.

EXAMPLE 25.17. $\sqrt{2}$ is algebraic because it is a root of $x^2 - 2$.

REMARK 25.18. It is not clear that transcendental numbers exist. We will check that later.

EXERCISE 25.19. Prove that the set of algebraic numbers in \mathbb{C} is countable.

REMARK 25.20. The main problems about roots are:

- 1) Find the number of roots; in case $R = \mathbb{F}_p$ this leads to some of the most subtle problems in number theory.
- 2) Understand when roots of polynomials with rational coefficients, say, can be expressed by radicals; this leads to Galois theory.

DEFINITION 25.21. Let R be a ring. We defined the ring of polynomials $R[x]$ in one variable x with coefficients in R . Now $R[x]$ is again a ring so we can consider the ring of polynomials $R[x][y]$ in one variable y with coefficients in $R[x]$ which we simply denote by $R[x, y]$ and refer to as the ring of polynomials in two variables

x, y with coefficients in R . Again $R[x, y]$ is a ring so we can consider the ring of polynomials $R[x, y][z]$ in one variable z with coefficients in $R[x, y]$ which we denote by $R[x, y, z]$ and which we refer to as the ring of polynomials in 3 variables x, y, z with coefficients in R , etc.

EXAMPLE 25.22.

$$3x^7y^4z - x^8 + x^4y^9z^2 + 5xyz^2 = ((x^4)y^9 + (5x)y)z^2 - ((3x^7)y^4)z - (x^8) \in \mathbb{Z}[x, y, z].$$

CHAPTER 26

Congruences

We discuss here polynomial congruences which lie at the heart of number theory. The main results below are due to Fermat, Lagrange, Euler, and Gauss.

DEFINITION 26.1. Let $f(x) \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$ be a polynomial and p a prime. An integer $c \in \mathbb{Z}$ is called a *root of $f(x) \pmod{p}$* (or a solution to the congruence $f(x) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$) if $f(c) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$; in other words if $p|f(c)$. Let $\bar{f} \in \mathbb{F}_p[x]$ be the polynomial obtained from $f \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$ by replacing the coefficients of f with their images in \mathbb{F}_p . Then c is a root of $f \pmod{p}$ if and only if the image \bar{c} of c in \mathbb{F}_p is a root of \bar{f} . We denote by $N_p(f)$ the number of roots of $f(x) \pmod{p}$ contained in $\{0, 1, \dots, p-1\}$; equivalently $N_p(f)$ is the number of roots of \bar{f} in \mathbb{F}_p . If f, g are polynomials in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$ we write $N_p(f = g)$ for $N_p(f - g)$. If $Z_p(f)$ is the set of roots of \bar{f} in \mathbb{F}_p then of course $N_p(f) = |Z_p(f)|$.

EXERCISE 26.2.

- 1) 3 is a root of $x^3 + x - 13 \pmod{17}$.
- 2) Any integer a is a root of $x^p - x \pmod{p}$; this is Fermat's Little Theorem. In particular $N_p(x^p - x) = p$, $N_p(x^{p-1} - 1) = p - 1$.
- 3) $N_p(ax - b) = 1$ if $p \nmid a$.
- 4) $N_p(x^2 - 1) = 2$ if $p \neq 2$.

PROPOSITION 26.3. For any two polynomials $f, g \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$ we have

$$N_p(fg) \leq N_p(f) + N_p(g).$$

Proof. Clearly $Z_p(fg) \subset Z_p(f) \cup Z_p(g)$. Hence

$$|Z_p(fg)| = |Z_p(f) \cup Z_p(g)| \leq |Z_p(f)| + |Z_p(g)|.$$

□

EXERCISE 26.4. Consider the polynomials

$$f(x) = x^{p-1} - 1 \text{ and } g(x) = (x-1)(x-2)\dots(x-p+1) \in \mathbb{Z}[x].$$

Prove that all the coefficients of the polynomial $f(x) - g(x)$ are divisible by p . Conclude that p divides the sums

$$\sum_{a=1}^{p-1} a = 1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + (p-1)$$

and

$$\sum_{1 \leq a < b \leq p-1} ab = 1 \times 2 + 1 \times 3 + \dots + 1 \times (p-1) + 2 \times 3 + \dots + 2 \times (p-1) + \dots + (p-2) \times (p-1).$$

EXERCISE 26.5. Assume $p \geq 5$ is a prime. Prove that the numerator of any fraction that is equal to

$$1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \dots + \frac{1}{p-1}$$

is divisible by p^2 .

REMARK 26.6. Fix a polynomial $f(x) \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$. Some of the deepest problems and theorems in number theory can be formulated as special cases of the following two problems:

1) Understand the set of primes p such that the congruence $f(x) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ has a solution or, equivalently, such that $p|f(c)$ for some $c \in \mathbb{Z}$.

2) Understand the set of primes p such that $p = f(c)$ for some $c \in \mathbb{Z}$.

In regards to problem 1) one would like more generally to understand the function whose value at a prime p is the number $N_p(f)$. In particular one would like to understand the set of all primes p such that $N_p(f) = k$ for a given k (equivalently such that the congruence $f(x) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ has k solutions in $\{0, 1, \dots, p-1\}$). We note that if $\deg(f) = 1$ the problem is trivial. For $\deg(f) = 2$ the problem is already highly non-trivial although a complete answer was given by Gauss in his Quadratic Reciprocity Law (to be proved later). For the quadratic polynomial $f(x) = x^2 + 1$, for instance, we will prove below (without using quadratic reciprocity) that $p|f(c)$ for some c if and only if p is of the form $4k+1$. For $\deg(f)$ arbitrary the problem (and its generalizations for polynomials $f(x, y, z, \dots)$ of several variables) is essentially open and part of an array of tantalizing conjectures (part of the Langlands program) that link the function $N_p(f)$ to Fourier analysis and the theory of complex analytic functions. This is beyond the scope of our course.

In regards to problem 2), by a theorem of Dirichlet, for every linear polynomial $f(x) = ax + b$ for which a and b are coprime there exist infinitely many integers k such that $f(k)$ is prime. But it is not known, for instance, if there are infinitely many integers k such that $f(k)$ is prime when $f(x)$ is a quadratic polynomial such as $f(x) = x^2 + 1$. Problem 2) has an obvious analogue for polynomials in several variables.

The following is a direct consequence of Lagrange's Theorem 25.12:

COROLLARY 26.7. Assume $p \equiv 1 \pmod{d}$. Then $N_p(x^d - 1) = d$.

Proof. By Lagrange's Theorem $N_p(x^d - 1) \leq d$. Assume $N_p(x^d - 1) < d$ and seek a contradiction. If $p - 1 = kd$ then $x^{p-1} - 1 = (x^d - 1)g(x)$ where

$$g(x) = x^{d(k-1)} + x^{d(k-2)} + \dots + x^d + 1.$$

Since by Lagrange's Theorem $N_p(g) \leq d(k-1)$ we get

$$p-1 = N_p(x^{p-1}-1) = N_p((x^d-1)g) \leq N_p(x^d-1) + N_p(g) < d + d(k-1) = dk = p-1,$$

a contradiction. \square

COROLLARY 26.8.

1) If $p \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ then $N_p(x^2 - 1) = 2$. Equivalently every prime p of the form $4k + 1$ divides some number of the form $c^2 + 1$ where c is an integer.

2) If $p \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ then $N_p(x^2 - 1) = 0$. Equivalently no prime p of the form $4k + 3$ can divide a number of the form $c^2 + 1$ where c is an integer.

Proof. 1) By Corollary 26.7 if $p \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ then $N_p(x^4 - 1) = 4$. But $4 = N_p(x^4 - 1) \leq N_p((x^2 - 1)(x^2 + 1)) \leq N_p(x^2 - 1) + N_p(x^2 + 1) \leq N_p(x^2 + 1) + 2$ hence $N_p(x^2 + 1) \geq 2$ and we are done.

2) Assume $p \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ so $p = 4k + 3$ and assume $N_p(x^2 = -1) > 0$ so there exists $c \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $c^2 \equiv -1 \pmod{p}$; we want to derive a contradiction. We have (by Fermat's Little Theorem) that $c^p \equiv c \pmod{p}$. Since $p \nmid c$ we get $c^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$. But

$$c^{p-1} \equiv c^{4k+2} \equiv (c^2)^{2k+1} \equiv (-1)^{2k+1} \equiv -1 \pmod{p},$$

a contradiction. \square

EXERCISE 26.9. Prove that:

1) If $p \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ then $N_p(x^2 + x + 1) = 2$. Equivalently every prime p of the form $3k + 1$ divides some number of the form $c^2 + c + 1$.

2) If $p \equiv 2 \pmod{3}$ then $N_p(x^2 + x + 1) = 0$. Equivalently no prime p of the form $3k + 2$ can divide a number of the form $c^2 + c + 1$.

DEFINITION 26.10. Let a be an integer not divisible by a prime p . The order of $a \pmod{p}$ is the smallest positive integer k such that $a^k \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$. We write $k = o_p(a)$. Clearly $o_p(a)$ equals the order $o(\bar{a})$ of the image \bar{a} of a in \mathbb{F}_p .

DEFINITION 26.11. An integer g is a primitive root mod p if it is not divisible by p and $o_p(g) = p - 1$, equivalently, if the image \bar{g} of g in \mathbb{F}_p^\times is a generator of the group \mathbb{F}_p^\times .

EXERCISE 26.12. Prove that g is a primitive root mod p if and only if it is not divisible by p and

$$g^{(p-1)/q} \not\equiv 1 \pmod{p}$$

for all primes $q|p - 1$.

EXERCISE 26.13. Prove that 3 is a primitive root mod 7 but 2 is not a primitive root mod 7.

The following Theorem about the existence of primitive roots was proved by Gauss:

THEOREM 26.14. (Gauss) If p is a prime there exists a primitive root mod p . Equivalently the group \mathbb{F}_p^\times is cyclic.

Proof. By the Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic, $p - 1 = p_1^{e_1} \dots p_s^{e_s}$ with p_1, \dots, p_s distinct primes and $e_1, \dots, e_s \geq 1$. Let $i \in \{1, \dots, s\}$. By Corollary 26.7 $N_p(x^{p_i^{e_i}} - 1) = p_i^{e_i}$ and $N_p(x^{p_i^{e_i-1}} - 1) = p_i^{e_i-1}$. So $x^{p_i^{e_i}} - 1$ has a root $c_i \pmod{p}$ which is not a root mod p of $x^{p_i^{e_i-1}} - 1$. So

$$c_i^{p_i^{e_i}} \equiv 1 \pmod{p},$$

$$c_i^{p_i^{e_i-1}} \not\equiv 1 \pmod{p}.$$

It follows that the order of c_i is a divisor of $p_i^{e_i}$ but not a divisor of $p_i^{e_i-1}$. Hence

$$o_p(c_i) = p_i^{e_i}.$$

By Proposition 21.25

$$o_p(c_1 \dots c_s) = p_1^{e_1} \dots p_s^{e_s} = p - 1$$

so $c_1 \dots c_s$ is a primitive root mod p . \square

CHAPTER 27

Geometry

Geometry is the study of shapes such as lines and planes, or, more generally, curves and surfaces, etc. There are two paths towards this study: the synthetic one and the analytic (or algebraic) one. Synthetic geometry is geometry without algebra. Analytic geometry is geometry through algebra. Synthetic geometry originates with the Greek Mathematics of antiquity (e.g., the treatise of Euclid). Analytic geometry was invented by Fermat and Descartes. We already encountered the synthetic approach in the discussion of the affine plane and the projective plane which were purely combinatorial objects. Here we introduce some of the most elementary structures of analytic geometry. We start with lines. Later we will look at more complicated curves.

DEFINITION 27.1. Let R be a field. The affine plane $\mathbb{A}^2 = \mathbb{A}^2(R)$ over R is the set $R^2 = R \times R$. A point $P = (x, y)$ in the plane is an element of $R \times R$. A subset $L \subset R \times R$ is called a *line* if there exist $a, b, c \in R$ such that $(a, b) \neq (0, 0)$ and

$$L = \{(x, y) \in R^2 \mid ax + by + c = 0\}.$$

We say a point P lies on the line L (or we say L passes through P) if $P \in L$. Two lines are said to be *parallel* if they either coincide or their intersection is empty (in the last case we say they don't meet). Three points are collinear if they lie on the same line.

DEFINITION 27.2. We sometimes write $L = L(R)$ if we want to stress that coordinates are in R .

EXERCISE 27.3. Prove that:

- 1) There exist 3 points which are not collinear.
- 2) For any two distinct points P_1 and P_2 there exists a unique line L (called sometimes P_1P_2) passing through P_1 and P_2 . Hint: If $P_1 = (x_1, y_1)$, $P_2 = (x_2, y_2)$, and if

$$m = (y_2 - y_1)(x_2 - x_1)^{-1}$$

then the unique line through P_1 and P_2 is:

$$L = \{(x, y) \in R \times R \mid y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)\}.$$

In particular every two non-parallel distinct lines meet in exactly one point.

- 3) Given a line L and a point P there exists exactly one line L' passing through P and parallel to L . (This is called *Euclid's fifth postulate* but in our exposition here this is not a postulate.)

Hence $\mathbb{A}^2 = R^2 = R \times R$ together with the set \mathcal{L} of all lines (in the sense above) is an affine plane in the sense of Definition 10.42.

REMARK 27.4. Not all affine planes in the sense of Definition 10.42 are affine planes over a field in the sense above. Hilbert proved that an affine plane is the

affine plane over some field if and only if the theorems of Desargues (Parts I and II) and Pappus (stated below) hold. See below for the “only if direction.”

EXERCISE 27.5. Prove that every line in $\mathbb{F}_p \times \mathbb{F}_p$ has exactly p points.

EXERCISE 27.6. How many lines are there in the plane $\mathbb{F}_p \times \mathbb{F}_p$?

EXERCISE 27.7. (Desargues' Theorem, Part I) Let $A_1, A_2, A_3, A'_1, A'_2, A'_3$ be distinct points in the plane. Also for all $i \neq j$ assume $A_i A_j$ and $A'_i A'_j$ are not parallel and let P_{ij} be their intersection. Assume the 3 lines $A_1 A'_1, A_2 A'_2, A_3 A'_3$ have a point in common. Then prove that the points L_{12}, L_{13}, L_{23} are collinear (i.e., lie on some line). Hint: Consider the “space” $R \times R \times R$ and define planes and lines in this space. Prove that if two planes meet and don't coincide then they meet in a line. Then prove that through any two points in space there is a unique line and through any 3 non-collinear points there is a unique plane. Now consider the projection $R \times R \times R \rightarrow R \times R, (x, y, z) \mapsto (x, y)$ and show that lines project onto lines. Next show that configuration of points $A_i, A'_i \in R \times R$ can be realized as the projection of a similar configuration of points $B_i, B'_i \in R \times R \times R$ not contained in a plane. (Identifying $R \times R$ with the set of points in space with zero third coordinate we take $B_i = A_i, B'_i = A'_i$ for $i = 1, 2$, we let B_3 have a nonzero third coordinate, and then we choose B'_3 such that the lines $B_1 B'_1, B_2 B'_2, B_3 B'_3$ have a point in common.) Then prove “Desargues' Theorem in Space” (by noting that if Q_{ij} is the intersection of $B_i B_j$ with $B'_i B'_j$ then Q_{ij} is in the plane containing B_1, B_2, B_3 and also in the plane containing B'_1, B'_2, B'_3 ; hence Q_{ij} is in the intersection of these planes which is a line). Finally deduce the original plane Desargues by projection.

EXERCISE 27.8. (Desargues' Theorem, Part II) Let $A_1, A_2, A_3, A'_1, A'_2, A'_3$ be distinct points in the plane. Assume the 3 lines $A_1 A'_1, A_2 A'_2, A_3 A'_3$ have a point in common or they are parallel. Assume $A_1 A_2$ is parallel to $A'_1 A'_2$ and $A_1 A_3$ is parallel to $A'_1 A'_3$. Prove that $A_2 A_3$ is parallel to $A'_2 A'_3$. Hint: Compute coordinates. There is an alternative proof that reduces Part II to Part I by using the “projective plane over our field.”

EXERCISE 27.9. (Pappus' Theorem) Let P_1, P_2, P_3 be points on a line L and let Q_1, Q_2, Q_3 be points on a line $M \neq L$. Assume the lines $P_2 Q_3$ and $P_3 Q_2$ are not parallel and let A_1 be their intersection; define A_2, A_3 similarly. Then prove that A_1, A_2, A_3 are collinear. Hint (for the case L and M meet): One can assume $L = \{(x, 0) \mid x \in R\}, M = \{(0, y) \mid y \in R\}$ (explain why). Let the points $P_i = (x_i, 0)$ and $Q_i = (0, y_i)$ and compute the coordinates of A_i . Then check that the line through A_1 and A_2 passes through A_3 .

REMARK 27.10. One can identify the projective plane $(\overline{\mathbb{A}^2}, \overline{\mathcal{L}})$ attached to the affine plane $(\mathbb{A}^2, \mathcal{L})$ with the pair $(\mathbb{P}^2, \check{\mathbb{P}}^2)$ defined as follows. Let $\mathbb{P}^2 = R^3 / \sim$ where $(x, y, z) \sim (x', y', z')$ if and only if there exists $0 \neq \lambda \in R$ such that $(x', y', z') = (\lambda x, \lambda y, \lambda z)$. Denote the equivalence class of (x, y, z) by $(x : y : z)$. Identify a point (x, y) in the affine plane $\mathbb{A}^2 = R^2 = R \times R$ with the point $(x : y : 1) \in \mathbb{P}^2$. Identify a point $(x_0 : y_0 : 0)$ in the complement $\mathbb{P}^2 \setminus \mathbb{A}^2$ with the class of lines in \mathbb{A}^2 parallel to the line $y_0 x - x_0 y = 0$. This allows one to identify the complement $\mathbb{P}^2 \setminus \mathbb{A}^2$ with the line at infinity L_∞ of \mathbb{A}^2 . Hence we get an identification of \mathbb{P}^2 with $\overline{\mathbb{A}^2}$. Finally define a line in \mathbb{P}^2 as a set of the form

$$\overline{L} = \{(x : y : z) \mid ax + by + cz = 0\}.$$

So under the above identifications,

$$\bar{L} = \{(x : y : 1) \mid ax + by + c = 0\} \cup \{(x : y : 0) \mid ax + by = 0\} = L \cup \{\widehat{L}\}$$

where L is the line in R^2 defined by $ax + by + c = 0$. Then define $\widehat{\mathbb{P}^2}$ to be the set of all lines \bar{L} in \mathbb{P}^2 . We get an identification of $\widehat{\mathbb{P}^2}$ with $\bar{\mathcal{L}}$.

Some familiar concepts such as area and distance can be defined in the above context. Assume in what follows that R is a field such that $2 \neq 0$ and identify R^2 with $R^{2 \times 1}$.

DEFINITION 27.11. Let $P_1, P_2, P_3 \in R^{2 \times 1}$ be 3 points in the plane. Define

$$\text{area}(P_1, P_2, P_3) = \frac{1}{2} \det(P_2 - P_1, P_3 - P_1) \in R.$$

EXERCISE 27.12. Prove that

- 1) $\text{area}(P_{\sigma(1)}, P_{\sigma(2)}, P_{\sigma(3)}) = \epsilon(\sigma) \cdot \text{area}(P_1, P_2, P_3)$ for all permutations $\sigma \in S_3$.
- 2) $\text{area}(P_1, P_2, P_3) = 0$ if and only if P_1, P_2, P_3 are collinear.
- 3) Let $F : R^2 \rightarrow F^2$ be an isomorphism of vector spaces and A its matrix with respect to the canonical basis. Then $A \in SL_2(R)$ if and only if “ F preserves areas” in the sense that for all $P_1, P_2, P_3 \in R^2$ we have

$$\text{area}(F(P_1), F(P_2), F(P_3)) = \text{area}(P_1, P_2, P_3).$$

- 4) For every $P_0 \in R^{2 \times 1}$ area is “invariant under translation by P_0 ” in the sense that

$$\text{area}(P_1 + P_0, P_2 + P_0, P_3 + P_0) = \text{area}(P_1, P_2, P_3).$$

DEFINITION 27.13. Let $P_1, P_2 \in R^{2 \times 1}$ be 2 points in the plane. Define the distance squared between these points as

$$\text{dist}^2(P_1, P_2) = (P_2 - P_1)^t(P_2 - P_1) \in R.$$

EXERCISE 27.14. Prove that

- 1) $\text{dist}^2(P_1, P_2) = \text{dist}^2(P_2, P_1)$.
- 2) If $R = \mathbb{R}$ then $\text{dist}^2(P_1, P_2) = 0$ if and only if $P_1 = P_2$. (Show that this may fail for other fields.)
- 3) Let $F : R^2 \rightarrow F^2$ be an isomorphism of vector spaces and A its matrix with respect to the canonical basis. Then $A \in SO_2(R)$ if and only if “ F preserves areas” and also “preserves distances” in the sense that for all $P_1, P_2 \in R^{2 \times 1}$ we have

$$\text{dist}^2(F(P_1), F(P_2)) = \text{dist}^2(P_1, P_2).$$

- 4) For every $P_0 \in R^{2 \times 1}$, dist^2 is “invariant under translation by P_0 ” in the sense that

$$\text{dist}^2(P_1 + P_0, P_2 + P_0) = \text{dist}^2(P_1, P_2).$$

So far we were concerned with lines in the plane. Let us discuss now “higher degree curves.” We start with conics. Assume R is a field with $2 = 1 + 1 \neq 0$; equivalently R does not contain the field \mathbb{F}_2 .

DEFINITION 27.15. The circle of center $(a, b) \in R \times R$ and radius r is the set

$$C(R) = \{(x, y) \in R \times R \mid (x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = r^2\}.$$

DEFINITION 27.16. A line is tangent to a circle if it meets it in exactly one point. (We say that the line is tangent to the circle at that point.) Two circles are tangent if they meet in exactly one point.

EXERCISE 27.17. Prove that for every circle and every point on it there is exactly one line tangent to the circle at that point.

EXERCISE 27.18. Prove that:

1) A circle and a line meet in at most 2 points.

2) Two circles meet in at most 2 points.

EXERCISE 27.19. How many points does a circle of radius 1 have if $R = \mathbb{F}_{13}$? Same problem for \mathbb{F}_{11} .

EXERCISE 27.20. Prove that the circle $C(R)$ with center $(0, 0)$ and radius 1 is an Abelian group with $e = (1, 0)$, $(x, y)' = (x, -y)$, and group operation

$$(x_1, y_1) \star (x_2, y_2) = (x_1x_2 - y_1y_2, x_1y_2 + x_2y_1).$$

Prove that the map

$$C(R) \rightarrow SO_2(R), \quad (a, b) \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -b & a \end{pmatrix}$$

is a bijective group homomorphism. (Cf. Exercise 21.13 for $SO_2(R)$.)

EXERCISE 27.21. Consider the circle $C(\mathbb{F}_{17})$. Show that $(\bar{3}, \bar{3}), (\bar{1}, \bar{0}) \in C(\mathbb{F}_{17})$ and compute $(\bar{3}, \bar{3}) \star (\bar{1}, \bar{0})$ and $2(\bar{1}, \bar{0})$ (where the latter is, of course, $(\bar{1}, \bar{0}) \star (\bar{1}, \bar{0})$).

Circles are special cases of conics:

DEFINITION 27.22. A conic is a subset $Q \subset R \times R$ of the form

$$Q = Q(R) = \{(x, y) \in R \times R \mid ax^2 + bxy + cy^2 + dx + ey + f = 0\}$$

for some $(a, b, c, d, e, f) \in R \times \dots \times R$, where $(a, b, c) \neq (0, 0, 0)$.

We refer to (a, b, c, d, e) as the equation of the conic and if the corresponding conic passes through a point we say that the equation of the conic passes through the point. We sometimes say “conic” instead of “equation of the conic.”

EXERCISE 27.23. Prove that if 5 points are given in the plane such that no 4 of them are collinear then there exists a unique conic passing through these given 5 points. Hint: Consider the vector space of all (equations of) conics that pass through a given set S of points. Next note that if one adds a point to S the dimension of this space of conics either stays the same or drops by one. Since the space of all conics has dimension 6 it is enough to show that for $r \leq 5$ the conics passing through r points are fewer than those passing through $r - 1$ of the r points. For $r = 4$, for instance, this is done by taking a conic that is a union of 2 lines.

We next investigate cubics.

DEFINITION 27.24. Let R be a field in which $2 = 1 + 1 \neq 0$, $3 = 1 + 1 + 1 \neq 0$. Equivalently R does not contain \mathbb{F}_2 or \mathbb{F}_3 . A subset $Z = Z(R) \subset R \times R$ is called an *affine elliptic curve* if there exist $a, b \in R$ with $4a^3 + 27b^2 \neq 0$ such that

$$Z(R) = \{(x, y) \in R \times R \mid y^2 = x^3 + ax + b\}.$$

We call $Z(R)$ the *elliptic curve* over R defined by the equation $y^2 = x^3 + ax + b$. Next we define the projective elliptic curve defined by the equation $y^2 = x^3 + ax + b$ as the set

$$E(R) = Z(R) \cup \{\infty\}$$

where ∞ is an element not belonging to $Z(R)$. (We usually drop the word “projective” and we call ∞ the *point at infinity* on $E(R)$.) If $(x, y) \in E(R)$ define $(x, y)' = (x, -y)$. Also define $\infty' = \infty$. Next we define a binary operation \star on $E(R)$ called the *chord-tangent* operation; we will see that $E(R)$ becomes a group with respect to this operation. First define $(x, y) \star (x, -y) = \infty$, $\infty \star (x, y) = (x, y) \star \infty = (x, y)$, and $\infty \star \infty = \infty$. Also define $(x, 0) \star (x, 0) = \infty$. Next assume $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2) \in E(R)$ with $(x_2, y_2) \neq (x_1, -y_1)$. If $(x_1, y_1) \neq (x_2, y_2)$ we let L_{12} be the unique line passing through (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) . Recall that explicitly

$$L_{12} = \{(x, y) \in R \times R \mid y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)\}$$

where

$$m = (y_2 - y_1)(x_2 - x_1)^{-1}.$$

If $(x_1, y_1) = (x_2, y_2)$ we let L_{12} be the “line tangent to $Z(R)$ at (x_1, y_1) ” which is by definition given by the same equation as before except now m is defined to be

$$m = (3x_1^2 + a)(2y_1)^{-1}.$$

(This definition is inspired by the definition of slope in analytic geometry.) Finally one defines

$$(x_1, y_1) \star (x_2, y_2) = (x_3, -y_3)$$

where (x_3, y_3) is the “third point of intersection of $E(R)$ with L_{12} ”; more precisely (x_3, y_3) is defined by solving the system consisting of the equations defining $E(R)$ and L_{12} as follows: replacing y in $y^2 = x^3 + ax + b$ by $y_1 + m(x - x_1)$ we get a cubic equation in x :

$$(y_1 + m(x - x_1))^2 = x^3 + ax + b$$

which can be rewritten as

$$x^3 - m^2x^2 + \dots = 0.$$

x_1, x_2 are known to be roots of this equation. We define x_3 to be the third root which is then

$$x_3 = m^2 - x_1 - x_2;$$

so we define

$$y_3 = y_1 + m(x_3 - x_1).$$

Summarizing, the definition of (x_3, y_3) is

$$(x_3, y_3) = ((y_2 - y_1)^2(x_2 - x_1)^{-2} - x_1 - x_2, y_1 + (y_2 - y_1)(x_2 - x_1)^{-1}(x_3 - x_1))$$

if $(x_1, y_1) \neq (x_2, y_2)$, $(x_1, y_1) \neq (x_2, -y_2)$ and

$$(x_3, y_3) = ((3x_1^2 + a)^2(2y_1)^{-2} - x_1 - x_2, y_1 + (3x_1^2 + a)(2y_1)^{-1}(x_3 - x_1))$$

if $(x_1, y_1) = (x_2, y_2)$, $y_1 \neq 0$.

Then $E(R)$ with the above definitions is an Abelian group.

EXERCISE 27.25. Check the last statement. (N.B. Checking associativity is a very laborious exercise.)

EXERCISE 27.26. Consider the group $E(\mathbb{F}_{13})$ defined by the equation $y^2 = x^3 + 8$. Show that $(\bar{1}, \bar{3}), (\bar{2}, \bar{4}) \in E(\mathbb{F}_{13})$ and compute $(\bar{1}, \bar{3}) \star (\bar{2}, \bar{4})$ and $2(\bar{2}, \bar{4})$ (where the latter is, of course, $(\bar{2}, \bar{4}) \star (\bar{2}, \bar{4})$).

Affine elliptic curves are special examples of cubics:

DEFINITION 27.27. A cubic is a subset $X = X(R) \subset R \times R$ of the form $X(R) = \{(x, y) \in R \times R \mid ax^3 + bx^2y + cxy^2 + dy^3 + ex^2 + fxy + gy^2 + hx + iy + j = 0\}$ where $(a, b, c, \dots, j) \in R \times \dots \times R$, $(a, b, c, d) \neq (0, \dots, 0)$.

As usual we refer to the tuple (a, b, c, \dots, j) as the equation of a cubic (or, by abuse, simply a cubic).

EXERCISE 27.28. (Three Cubics Theorem) Prove that if two cubics meet in exactly 9 points and if a third cubic passes through 8 of the 9 points then the third cubic must pass through the 9th point. Hint: First show that if $r \leq 8$ and r points are given then the set of cubics passing through them is strictly larger than the set of cubics passing through $r - 1$ of the r points. (To show this show first that no 4 of the 9 points are on a line. Then in order to find, for instance, a cubic passing through P_1, \dots, P_7 but not through P_8 one considers the cubics $C_i = Q_{1234i} + L_{jk}$, $\{i, j, k\} = \{5, 6, 7\}$, where Q_{1234i} is the unique conic passing through P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_i and L_{jk} is the unique line through P_j and P_k . Assume C_5, C_6, C_7 all pass through P_8 and derive a contradiction as follows. Note that P_8 cannot lie on 2 of the 3 lines L_{jk} because this would force us to have 4 collinear points. So we may assume P_8 does not lie on either of the lines L_{57}, L_{67} . Hence P_8 lies on both Q_{12345} and Q_{12346} . So these conics have 5 points in common. From here one immediately gets a contradiction.) Once this is proved let P_1, \dots, P_9 be the points of intersection of the cubics with equations F and G . We know that the space of cubics passing through P_1, \dots, P_8 has dimension 2 and contains F and G . So every cubic in this space is a linear combination of F and G , hence will pass through P_9 .

EXERCISE 27.29. (Pascal's Theorem) Let $P_1, P_2, P_3, Q_1, Q_2, Q_3$ be points on a conic C . Let A_1 be the intersection of P_2Q_3 with P_3Q_2 , and define A_2, A_3 similarly. (Assume the lines in question are not parallel.) Then prove that A_1, A_2, A_3 are collinear. Hint: The cubics

$$Q_1P_2 \cup Q_2P_3 \cup Q_3P_1 \quad \text{and} \quad P_1Q_2 \cup P_2Q_3 \cup P_3Q_1$$

pass through all of the following 9 points:

$$P_1, P_2, P_3, Q_1, Q_2, Q_3, A_1, A_2, A_3.$$

On the other hand the cubic $C \cup A_2A_3$ passes through all these points except possibly A_1 . Then by the Three Cubics Theorem $C \cup A_2A_3$ passes through A_1 . Hence A_2A_3 passes through A_1 .

EXERCISE 27.30. Show how Pascal's Theorem implies Pappus' Theorem.

REMARK 27.31. An extended version of the Three Cubics Theorem implies the associativity of the chord-tangent operation on a cubic. (The extended version, to be used below, follows from the usual version by passing to the "projective plane"; we will not explain this proof here.) The rough idea is as follows. Let E be the elliptic curve and Q, P, R points on it. Let

$$\begin{aligned} PQ \cup E &= \{P, Q, U\} \\ \infty U \cup E &= \{\infty, U, V\} \\ VR \cup E &= \{V, R, W\} \\ PR \cap E &= \{P, R, X\} \end{aligned}$$

$$\infty X \cap E = \{\infty, X, Y\}.$$

Here ∞A is the vertical passing through a point A . Note that

$$Q \star P = V, \quad V \star R = W', \quad P \star R = Y.$$

We want to show that

$$(Q \star P) \star R = Q \star (P \star R).$$

This is equivalent to

$$V \star R = Q \star Y$$

i.e., that

$$W' = Q \star Y$$

i.e., that Q, Y, W are collinear. Now the two cubics

$$E \quad \text{and} \quad PQ \cup WR \cup YX$$

both pass through the 9 points

$$P, Q, R, U, V, W, X, Y, \infty.$$

On the other hand the cubic

$$\Gamma = UV \cup PR \cup QY$$

passes through all 9 points except W . By a generalization of the Three Cubics Theorem (covering the case when one of the points is ∞) we get that Γ passes through W hence QY passes through W . The above argument only applies to chords and not to tangents. When dealing with tangents one needs to repeat the argument and look at multiplicities. So making the argument rigorous becomes technical.

CHAPTER 28

Limits

We start discussing now some simple topics in analysis. Analysis is the study of “passing to the limit.” The key words are sequences, convergence, limits, and later differential and integral calculus. Here we will discuss limits. Analysis emerged through work of Abel, Cauchy, Riemann, and Weierstrass, as a clarification of the early calculus of Newton, Leibniz, Euler, and Lagrange.

DEFINITION 28.1. A sequence in \mathbb{R} is a map $F : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$; if $F(n) = a_n$ we denote the sequence by a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots or by (a_n) . We let $F(\mathbb{N})$ be denoted by $\{a_n \mid n \geq 1\}$; the latter is a subset of \mathbb{R} .

DEFINITION 28.2. A subsequence of a sequence $F : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a sequence of the form $F \circ G$ where $G : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ is an increasing map. If a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots is F then $F \circ G$ is $a_{k_1}, a_{k_2}, a_{k_3}, \dots$ (or (a_{k_n})) where $G(n) = k_n$.

DEFINITION 28.3. A sequence (a_n) is convergent to $a_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ if for every real number $\epsilon > 0$ there exists an integer N such that for all $n \geq N$ we have $|a_n - a_0| < \epsilon$. We write $a_n \rightarrow a_0$ and we say a_0 is the limit of (a_n) . A sequence is called *convergent* if there exists $a \in \mathbb{R}$ such that the sequence converges to a . A sequence is called *divergent* if it is not convergent.

EXERCISE 28.4. Prove that $a_n = \frac{1}{n}$ converges to 0.

Hint: Let $\epsilon > 0$; we need to find N such that for all $n \geq N$ we have

$$\left| \frac{1}{n} - 0 \right| < \epsilon;$$

it is enough to take N to be any integer such that $N > \frac{1}{\epsilon}$.

EXERCISE 28.5. Prove that $a_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}$ converges to 0.

EXERCISE 28.6. Prove that $a_n = \frac{1}{n^2}$ converges to 0.

EXERCISE 28.7. Prove that $a_n = n$ is divergent.

EXERCISE 28.8. Prove that $a_n = (-1)^n$ is divergent.

EXERCISE 28.9. Prove that if $a_n \rightarrow a_0$ and $b_n \rightarrow b_0$ then

1) $a_n + b_n \rightarrow a_0 + b_0$

2) $a_n b_n \rightarrow a_0 b_0$.

If in addition $b_0 \neq 0$ then there exists N such that for all $n \geq N$ we have $b_n \neq 0$; moreover if $b_n \neq 0$ for all n then

3) $\frac{a_n}{b_n} \rightarrow \frac{a_0}{b_0}$.

Hint for 1: Consider any $\epsilon > 0$. Since $a_n \rightarrow a_0$ there exists N_a such that for all $n \geq N_a$ we have $|a_n - a_0| < \frac{\epsilon}{2}$. Since $b_n \rightarrow b_0$ there exists N_b such that for all

$n \geq N_b$ we have $|b_n - b_0| < \frac{\epsilon}{2}$. Let $N = \max\{N_a, N_b\}$ be the maximum between N_a and N_b . Then for all $n \geq N$ we have

$$|(a_n + b_n) - (a_0 + b_0)| \leq |a_n - a_0| + |b_n - b_0| < \frac{\epsilon}{2} + \frac{\epsilon}{2} = \epsilon.$$

EXERCISE 28.10. Prove that if $a_n \rightarrow a$, $b_n \rightarrow b$, and $a_n \leq b_n$ for all $n \geq 1$ then $a \leq b$.

DEFINITION 28.11. A sequence F is bounded if the set $F(\mathbb{N}) \subset \mathbb{R}$ is bounded.

DEFINITION 28.12. A sequence F is increasing if F is increasing. A sequence F is decreasing if $-F$ is increasing.

DEFINITION 28.13. A sequence (a_n) is Cauchy if for every real $\epsilon > 0$ there exists an integer N such that for all integers $m, n \geq N$ we have $|a_n - a_m| < \epsilon$.

EXERCISE 28.14. Prove that every convergent sequence is Cauchy.

EXERCISE 28.15. Prove the following statements in the prescribed order:

- 1) Every Cauchy sequence is bounded.
- 2) Every bounded sequence contains a sequence which is either increasing or decreasing.
- 3) Every bounded sequence which is either increasing or decreasing is convergent.
- 4) Every Cauchy sequence which contains a convergent subsequence is itself convergent.
- 5) Every Cauchy sequence is convergent.

Hints: For 1 let $\epsilon = 1$, let N correspond to this ϵ , and get that $|a_n - a_N| < 1$ for all $n \geq N$; conclude from here. For 2 consider the sets $A_n = \{a_m \mid m \geq n\}$. If at least one of these sets has no maximal element we get an increasing subsequence by Proposition 16.7. If each A_n has a maximal element b_n then $b_n = a_{k_n}$ for some k_n and the subsequence a_{k_n} is decreasing. For 3 we view each $a_n \in \mathbb{R}$ as a Dedekind cut i.e., as a subset $a_n \subset \mathbb{Q}$; the limit will be either the union of the sets a_n or the intersection. Statement 4 is easy. Statement 5 follows by combining the previous statements.

DEFINITION 28.16. A function $F : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous at a point $a_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ if for every sequence (a_n) converging to a_0 we have that the sequence $(F(a_n))$ converges to $F(a_0)$.

EXERCISE 28.17. (ϵ and δ criterion). Prove that a function $F : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous at a_0 if and only if for every real $\epsilon > 0$ there exists a real $\delta > 0$ such that for every $a \in \mathbb{R}$ with $|a - a_0| < \delta$ we have $|F(a) - F(a_0)| < \epsilon$.

EXERCISE 28.18. Prove that a function $F : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous (for the Euclidean topology on both the source and the target) if and only if it is continuous at every point of \mathbb{R} .

EXERCISE 28.19. Prove that every polynomial function $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ (i.e., every function of the form $a \mapsto f(a)$ where f is a polynomial) is continuous.

EXERCISE 28.20. Prove that \mathbb{R} with the Euclidean topology is connected.

Hint: Assume $\mathbb{R} = A \cup B$ with A, B open, non-empty, and disjoint, and seek a contradiction. Let $a \in A$ and $b \in B$. Assume $a \leq b$; the case $b \leq a$ is similar. Show that there exists sequences (a_n) and (b_n) , the first increasing, the second

decreasing, with $a_n \leq b_n$ and $b_n - a_n \rightarrow 0$. (To check this use recursion to define a_{n+1}, b_{n+1} in terms of a_n, b_n by the following rule: if $c_n = \frac{a_n + b_n}{2}$ then set $a_{n+1} = c_n$ and $b_{n+1} = b_n$ in case $c_n \in A$; and set $a_{n+1} = a_n$ and $b_{n+1} = c_n$ in case $c_n \in B$.) Note that $a_n \rightarrow a_0$ and $b_n \rightarrow b_0$ and $a_0 = b_0$. Since A, B are open and disjoint they are closed. So $a_0 \in A$ and $b_0 \in B$. But this contradicts the fact that A and B are disjoint.

DEFINITION 28.21. For $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ the closed interval $[a, b] \subset \mathbb{R}$ is defined as

$$[a, b] = \{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid a \leq x \leq b\}.$$

EXERCISE 28.22. Prove that $[a, b]$ are closed in the Euclidean topology.

EXERCISE 28.23. Prove that the open intervals (a, b) and the closed intervals $[a, b]$ are connected in \mathbb{R} .

EXERCISE 28.24. (Heine-Borel Theorem) Prove that every closed interval in \mathbb{R} is compact. Hint: Assume $[a, b]$ is not compact and derive a contradiction as follows. We know $[a, b]$ has an open covering $(U_i)_{i \in I}$ that does not have a finite open subcovering. Show that there exists sequences (a_n) and (b_n) , the first increasing, the second decreasing, with $a_n \leq b_n$ and $b_n - a_n \rightarrow 0$, such that $[a_n, b_n]$ cannot be covered by finitely many U_i s. (To check this use recursion to define a_{n+1}, b_{n+1} in terms of a_n, b_n by the following rule: let $c_n = \frac{a_n + b_n}{2}$; then at least one of the two intervals $[a_n, c_n]$ or $[c_n, b_n]$ cannot be covered by finitely many U_i s; if this is the case with the first interval then set $a_{n+1} = a_n$ and $b_{n+1} = c_n$; in the other case set $a_{n+1} = c_n$ and $b_{n+1} = b_n$.) Note that $a_n \rightarrow a_0$ and $b_n \rightarrow b_0$ and $a_0 = b_0$. But $a_0 = b_0$ is in one of the U_i s; this U_i will completely contain one of the intervals $[a_n, b_n]$ which is a contradiction.

CHAPTER 29

Series

DEFINITION 29.1. Let (a_n) be a sequence and $s_n = \sum_{k=1}^n a_k$. The sequence (s_n) is called the sequence of *partial sums*. If (s_n) is convergent to some s we say $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_n$ is a convergent series and that this series converges to s ; we write

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_n = s.$$

If the sequence (s_n) is divergent we say that $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_n$ is a divergent series.

EXERCISE 29.2. Prove that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n(n+1)} = 1.$$

Hint: Start with the equality

$$\frac{1}{n(n+1)} = \frac{1}{n} - \frac{1}{n+1}$$

and compute

$$\sum_{n=1}^N \frac{1}{n(n+1)} = 1 - \frac{1}{N}.$$

EXERCISE 29.3. Prove that the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2}$$

is convergent.

Hint: Prove the sequence of partial sums is bounded using the inequality

$$\frac{1}{n^2} \leq \frac{1}{n(n+1)}$$

plus Exercise 29.2.

EXERCISE 29.4. Prove that the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^k}$$

is convergent for $k \geq 3$.

EXERCISE 29.5. Prove that the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}$$

is divergent. This series is called the *harmonic series*.

Hint: Assume the series is convergent. Then the sequence of partial sums is convergent hence Cauchy. Get a contradiction from the inequality:

$$\frac{1}{2^n + 1} + \frac{1}{2^n + 2} + \frac{1}{2^n + 3} + \dots + \frac{1}{2^n + 2^n} > 2^n \times \frac{1}{2^n + 2^n} = \frac{1}{2}.$$

EXERCISE 29.6. Prove that $a^n \rightarrow 0$ if $|a| < 1$.

Hint: We may assume $0 < a < 1$. Note that (a^n) is decreasing. Since it is bounded it is convergent. Let α be its limit. Assume $\alpha \neq 0$ and get a contradiction by noting that

$$\frac{1}{a} = \frac{a^n}{a^{n+1}} \rightarrow \frac{\alpha}{\alpha} = 1.$$

EXERCISE 29.7. Prove that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a^n = \frac{1}{1-a}$$

if $|a| < 1$.

EXERCISE 29.8. Prove that the series

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{a^n}{n!}$$

is convergent for all $a \in \mathbb{R}$; its limit is denoted by $e^a = \exp(a)$; $e = e^1$ is called the *Euler number*; the map

$$\mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, \quad a \mapsto \exp(a)$$

is called the *exponential map*. Prove that

$$\exp(a+b) = \exp(a)\exp(b).$$

EXERCISE 29.9. Prove that the function $\exp : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous.

Hint: Let $a \in \mathbb{R}$ and $\epsilon > 0$. It is enough to show that there exists $\delta > 0$ such that if $|b - a| < \delta$ then $|\exp(b) - \exp(a)| < \epsilon$. Show that there is a δ such that for every b with $|b - a| < \delta$ there exists an n such that for all $m \geq n$

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \sum_{k=0}^m \frac{a^k}{k!} - \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{a^k}{k!} \right| &< \frac{\epsilon}{3} \\ \left| \sum_{k=0}^m \frac{b^k}{k!} - \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{b^k}{k!} \right| &< \frac{\epsilon}{3} \\ \left| \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{b^k}{k!} - \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{a^k}{k!} \right| &< \frac{\epsilon}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

From the first two inequalities we get

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \exp(a) - \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{a^k}{k!} \right| &\leq \frac{\epsilon}{3} \\ \left| \exp(b) - \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{b^k}{k!} \right| &\leq \frac{\epsilon}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$|\exp(b) - \exp(a)| < \frac{\epsilon}{3} + \frac{\epsilon}{3} + \frac{\epsilon}{3} = \epsilon.$$

EXERCISE 29.10. Let $S \subset \text{Map}(\mathbb{N}, \{0, 1\})$ be the set of all sequences (a_n) such that there exist N with $a_n = 1$ for all $n \geq N$. Prove that the map

$$\{0, 1\}^{\mathbb{N}} \setminus S \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, \quad (a_n) \mapsto \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_n}{2^n}$$

is (well defined and) injective. Conclude that \mathbb{R} is uncountable.

EXERCISE 29.11. Prove that there exist transcendental numbers in \mathbb{R} . Hint: \mathbb{R} is uncountable whereas the set of algebraic numbers is countable; cf. Exercise 25.19. This is Cantor's proof of existence of transcendental numbers.

Real analysis (analysis of sequences, continuity, and other concepts of calculus like differentiation and integration of functions on \mathbb{R}) can be extended to complex analysis. Indeed we have:

DEFINITION 29.12. A sequence (z_n) in \mathbb{C} is convergent to $z_0 \in \mathbb{C}$ if for every real number $\epsilon > 0$ there exists an integer N such that for all $n \geq N$ we have $|z_n - z_0| < \epsilon$. We write $z_n \rightarrow z_0$ and we say z_0 is the limit of (z_n) . A sequence is called *convergent* if there exists $z \in \mathbb{C}$ such that the sequence converges to z . A sequence is called *divergent* if it is not convergent.

EXERCISE 29.13. Let (z_n) be a sequence in \mathbb{C} and let

$$z_n = a_n + b_n i,$$

$a_n, b_n \in \mathbb{R}$. Let $z_0 = a_0 + b_0 i$. Prove that $z_n \rightarrow z_0$ if and only if $a_n \rightarrow a_0$ and $b_n \rightarrow b_0$.

DEFINITION 29.14. A sequence (z_n) in \mathbb{C} is Cauchy if for every real $\epsilon > 0$ there exists an integer N such that for all integers $m, n \geq N$ we have $|z_n - z_m| < \epsilon$.

EXERCISE 29.15. Prove that a sequence in \mathbb{C} is convergent if and only if it is Cauchy.

EXERCISE 29.16. Prove that:

1) The series

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{z^n}{n!}$$

is convergent for all $z \in \mathbb{C}$; its limit is denoted by $e^z = \exp(z)$.

2) $\exp(z+w) = \exp(z)\exp(w)$ for all $z, w \in \mathbb{C}$.

3) $\overline{\exp(z)} = \exp(\bar{z})$ for all $z \in \mathbb{C}$.

4) $|\exp(it)| = 1$ for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$.

5) The map

$$\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}, \quad z \mapsto \exp(z),$$

is continuous. This map is called the (complex) *exponential map*.

There is a version of the above theory in p -adic analysis (which is crucial to number theory). Recall the ring of p -adic numbers \mathbb{Z}_p whose elements are denoted by $[a_n]$.

DEFINITION 29.17. Say that p^e divides $\alpha = [a_n]$ if there exists $\beta = [b_n]$ such that $[a_n] = [p^e b_n]$; write $p^e | \alpha$. For every $0 \neq \alpha = [a_n] \in \mathbb{Z}_p$ let $v = v(\alpha)$ be the unique integer such that $p^n | a_n$ for $n \leq v$ and $p^{v+1} \nmid a_{v+1}$. Then define the norm of α by the formula $|\alpha| = p^{-v(\alpha)}$. We also set $|0| = 0$.

EXERCISE 29.18. Prove that if $\alpha = [a_n]$ and $\beta = [b_n]$ then

$$|\alpha + \beta| \leq \max\{|\alpha|, |\beta|\}.$$

DEFINITION 29.19. Consider a sequence $[a_{n1}], [a_{n2}], [a_{n3}], \dots$ of elements in \mathbb{Z}_p which for simplicity we denote by $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \dots$

1) $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \dots$ is called a *Cauchy sequence* if for every real (or, equivalently, rational) $\epsilon > 0$ there exists an integer N such that for all $m, m' \geq N$ we have $|\alpha_m - \alpha_{m'}| \leq \epsilon$.

2) We say that $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \dots$ converges to some $\alpha_0 \in \mathbb{Z}_p$ if for every real (or, equivalently, rational) $\epsilon > 0$ there exists an integer N such that for all $m \geq N$ we have $|\alpha_m - \alpha_0| \leq \epsilon$. We say α_0 is the limit of (α_n) and we write $\alpha_n \rightarrow \alpha_0$.

EXERCISE 29.20. Prove that a sequence in \mathbb{Z}_p is convergent if and only if it is Cauchy.

The following is in deep contrast with the case of \mathbb{R} :

EXERCISE 29.21. Prove that if (α_n) is a sequence in \mathbb{Z}_p with $\alpha_n \rightarrow 0$ then the sequence $s_n = \sum_{k=1}^n \alpha_k$ is convergent in \mathbb{Z}_p ; the limit of the latter is denoted by $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \alpha_n$.

EXERCISE 29.22.

1) Prove that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} p^{n-1}$ is the inverse of $1 - p$ in \mathbb{Z}_p .

2) Prove that if $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_p$ has $|\alpha| = 1$ then α is invertible in \mathbb{Z}_p . Hint: Use the fact that if p does not divide an integer $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ then there exist integers $m, n \in \mathbb{A}$ such that $ma + np = 1$; then use 1) above.

3) Prove that for all $n \geq 1$ and all $a \in \mathbb{Z}_p$ with $|a| < 1$ there exists an element of \mathbb{Z}_p denoted by $\frac{a^n}{n!}$ such that $(n!) \cdot \frac{a^n}{n!} = a^n$. Hint: Use 2) above.

4) Prove that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a^n}{n!}$ is convergent in \mathbb{Z}_p for all $a \in \mathbb{Z}_p$ with $|a| < 1$. One denotes the limit by $\exp_p(a)$.

CHAPTER 30

Trigonometry

Trigonometry arose long before calculus mainly motivated by geometry and astronomy. A rigorous approach to trigonometry requires some elements of analysis that we already covered and hence can be used in what follows. We will define the functions \sin and \cos and also the number π .

DEFINITION 30.1. For all $t \in \mathbb{R}$ define $\cos t, \sin t \in \mathbb{R}$ as being the unique real numbers such that

$$\exp(it) = \cos t + i \sin t.$$

(This is called *Euler's formula* but here this is a definition and not a theorem.)

EXERCISE 30.2. Prove the following equalities:

- 1) $\cos(t_1 + t_2) = \cos t_1 \cos t_2 - \sin t_1 \sin t_2$;
- 2) $\sin(t_1 + t_2) = \sin t_1 \cos t_2 + \cos t_1 \sin t_2$.

EXERCISE 30.3. Prove that the map $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow SO_2(\mathbb{R})$ defined by

$$f(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & \sin t \\ -\sin t & \cos t \end{pmatrix}$$

is a group homomorphism.

EXERCISE 30.4. Prove that if H is a closed subgroup of \mathbb{R} and $H \neq \mathbb{R}, H \neq \{0\}$ then there exists a unique $T \in \mathbb{R}, T > 0$, such that

$$H = \{nT \mid n \in \mathbb{Z}\}.$$

Hint: One first shows that if T is the infimum of the set

$$\{a \in H \mid a > 0\}$$

then $T \neq 0$. In order to check this assume $T = 0$ and seek a contradiction. Indeed from $T = 0$ we get that there exists a sequence (a_n) with $a_n \in H$, and $a_n \rightarrow 0$. Deduce from this and the fact that H is closed that $G = \mathbb{R}$, a contradiction. Finally one shows that $H = \{nT \mid n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ using an argument similar to the one used to prove Proposition 20.6.

EXERCISE 30.5. Prove that the map

$$F : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^\times, F(t) = \exp(it)$$

is non-constant and non-injective. Conclude that there exists a unique real number $\pi \in \mathbb{R}, \pi > 0$, such that

$$\text{Ker } F = \{2n\pi \mid n \in \mathbb{Z}\}.$$

(This is our definition of the number π . In particular, by this very definition one gets $\exp(\pi i) + 1 = 0$ which is a celebrated formula of Euler; for us this is a trivial consequence of our definition of π .)

CHAPTER 31

Calculus

Calculus was invented by Newton and Leibniz, motivated by problems in mechanics and analytic geometry. The main concept of calculus is that of derivative of a function which we briefly review here.

DEFINITION 31.1. Let $F : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a map and $a_0 \in \mathbb{R}$. We say F is differentiable at a_0 if there exists a real number (denoted by) $F'(a_0) \in \mathbb{R}$ such that for every sequence $a_n \rightarrow a_0$ with $a_n \neq a_0$ we have

$$\frac{F(a_n) - F(a_0)}{a_n - a_0} \rightarrow F'(a_0).$$

EXERCISE 31.2. Prove that if F is differentiable at $a_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ then it is continuous at a_0 .

EXERCISE 31.3. Prove that if F is a constant function (i.e., $F(x) = F(y)$ for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$) then F is differentiable at every a and $F'(a) = 0$.

DEFINITION 31.4. We say $F : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is differentiable if F is differentiable at every $a \in \mathbb{R}$. If this is the case the map $a \mapsto F'(a)$ is called the *derivative* of F and is denoted by $F' = \frac{dF}{dx} : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. If F' is differentiable we say F is twice differentiable and F'' is called the *second derivative* of F . One similarly defines what it means for F to be n times differentiable ($n \in \mathbb{N}$). We say F is infinitely differentiable (or smooth) if it is n times differentiable for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$. One denotes by $C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ the set of smooth functions. We denote by $D : C^\infty(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ the map $D(F) = F'$.

EXERCISE 31.5. Prove that for every $F, G \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ we have $F + G, F \cdot G \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ and

- 1) $D(F + G) = D(F) + D(G)$ (additivity);
- 2) $D(F \cdot G) = F \cdot D(G) + G \cdot D(F)$ (Leibniz rule);

here $F + G, F \cdot G$ are the pointwise addition and multiplication of F and G . In particular $C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ is a ring with respect to $+$ and \cdot ; 0 and 1 are the functions $0(x) = 0$ and $1(x) = 1$.

EXERCISE 31.6. Prove that every polynomial function $F : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is smooth and

$$F(x) = \sum_{k=0}^n a_n x^n \Rightarrow F'(x) = \sum_{k=0}^n n a_n x^{n-1}.$$

Hint: It is enough to look at $F(x) = x^k$. In this case

$$\frac{a_n^k - a_0^k}{a_n - a_0} = a_n^{k-1} + a_n^{k-2} a_0 + \dots + a_0^{k-1} \rightarrow k a_0^{k-1}.$$

EXERCISE 31.7. Prove that $F(x) = \exp(x)$ is differentiable and $F'(x) = \exp(x)$. Hence F is smooth.

EXERCISE 31.8. Prove that $F(x) = \sin(x)$ is differentiable and $F'(x) = \cos(x)$. Prove that $G(x) = \cos(x)$ is differentiable and $G'(x) = -\sin(x)$. Hence F and G are smooth.

EXERCISE 31.9. (Chain rule) Prove that if $F, G \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ then $F \circ G \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ and

$$D(F \circ G) = (D(F) \circ G) \cdot D(G).$$

(Here, as usual, \circ denotes composition.)

More generally one can define derivatives of functions of several variables as follows:

DEFINITION 31.10. Let $F : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a function. Let $a = (a_1, \dots, a_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and define $F_i : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$F_i(x) = F(a_1, \dots, a_{i-1}, x, a_{i+1}, \dots, a_n)$$

(with the obvious adjustment if $i = 1$ or $i = n$). We say that F is differentiable with respect to x_i at a if F_i is differentiable at a_i ; in this case we define

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_i}(a) = F'_i(a_i).$$

We say that F is differentiable with respect to x_i if it is differentiable with respect to x_i at every $a \in \mathbb{R}^n$. For such a function we have a well defined function $\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_i} : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ which is also denoted by $D_i F$. We say that F is infinitely differentiable (or smooth) if F is differentiable, each $D_i F$ is differentiable, each $D_i D_j F$ is differentiable, each $D_i D_j D_k F$ is differentiable, etc. We denote by $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)$ the set of smooth functions; it is a ring with respect to pointwise addition and multiplication.

DEFINITION 31.11. Let $P \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{r+2})$. An equation of the form

$$P\left(x, F(x), \frac{dF}{dx}(x), \frac{d^2F}{dx^2}(x), \dots, \frac{d^r F}{dx^r}(x)\right) = 0$$

is called a *differential equation*. Here $F \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ is an unknown function and one defines $\frac{d^i F}{dx^i} = D^{i+1}(F) = D(D^i(F))$.

The study of differential equations has numerous applications within Mathematics (e.g., geometry) as well as natural sciences (e.g., physics).

EXAMPLE 31.12. Here is a random example of a differential equation:

$$\exp\left(\left(\frac{d^2 F}{dx^2}\right)^5\right) - x^3 \left(\frac{dF}{dx}\right) \left(\frac{d^3 F}{dx^3}\right) - x^5 F^6 = 0.$$

The additivity and the Leibniz rule have an algebraic . This suggests the following:

DEFINITION 31.13. Let R be a commutative unital ring. A map $D : R \rightarrow R$ is called a *derivation* if

- 1) $D(a + b) = D(a) + D(b)$ (additivity);
- 2) $D(a \cdot b) = a \cdot D(b) + b \cdot D(a)$ (Leibniz rule).

EXAMPLE 31.14. $D : C^\infty(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ is a derivation.

EXERCISE 31.15. Prove that every derivation $D : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ is identically 0 i.e., $D(x) = 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Hint: By additivity $D(0) = 0$ and $D(-n) = -D(n)$. So it is enough to show $D(n) = 0$ for $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Proceed by induction on n . For the case $n = 1$, by the Leibniz rule,

$$D(1) = D(1 \cdot 1) = 1 \cdot D(1) + 1 \cdot D(1) = 2 \cdot D(1)$$

hence $D(1) = 0$. The induction step follows by additivity.

REMARK 31.16. Exercise 31.15 shows that there is no naive analogue of calculus in which rings of functions such as $C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ are replaced by rings of numbers such as \mathbb{Z} . An analogue of calculus for \mathbb{Z} is, however, considered desirable for the purposes of number theory. Such a theory has been developed. (Cf. A. Buium, *Arithmetic Differential Equations*, Mathematical Surveys and Monographs 118, American Mathematical Society, 2005.) In that theory the analogue of x is a fixed prime p and the analogue of the derivation $D = \frac{d}{dx} : C^\infty(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ is the operator

$$\frac{d}{dp} : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}, \quad \frac{dx}{dp} = \frac{x - x^p}{p}$$

which is well defined by Fermat's Little Theorem. For example,

$$\frac{d4}{d5} = \frac{4 - 4^5}{5} = -204.$$

CHAPTER 32

Categories

Categories are one of the most important unifying concepts of Mathematics. In particular they allow to create bridges between various parts of Mathematics. Categories were introduced by Eilenberg and MacLane partly motivated by work in homological algebra. A further input in the development of the concept was given by work of Grothendieck in algebraic geometry. Here we will only explore the definition of categories and we give some examples. We begin with the simpler concept of correspondence.

DEFINITION 32.1. A correspondence on a set $X^{(0)}$ is a triple $(X^{(1)}, \sigma, \tau)$ where $\sigma, \tau : X^{(1)} \rightarrow X^{(0)}$ are maps called *source* and *target*.

EXAMPLE 32.2. If $R \subset A \times A$ is a relation and $\sigma : R \rightarrow A$ and $\tau : R \rightarrow A$ are defined by $\sigma(a, b) = a$, $\tau(a, b) = b$ then (R, σ, τ) is a correspondence.

DEFINITION 32.3. Assume $(X^{(1)}, \sigma, \tau)$ is a correspondence on $X = X^{(0)}$. Then one can define sets

$$X^{(2)} = \{(a, b) \in X^2 \mid \tau(b) = \sigma(a)\}$$

$$X^{(3)} = \{(a, b, c) \in X^3 \mid \tau(c) = \sigma(b), \tau(b) = \sigma(a)\}, \text{ etc.}$$

We have natural maps $p_1, p_2 : X^{(1)} \rightarrow X^{(0)}$, $p_1(a, b) = a$, $p_2(a, b) = b$.

DEFINITION 32.4. A category is a tuple $\mathcal{C} = (X^{(0)}, X^{(1)}, \sigma, \tau, \mu, \epsilon)$ where $X^{(0)}$ is a set, $(X^{(1)}, \sigma, \tau)$ is a correspondence on $X^{(0)}$, and $\mu : X^{(2)} \rightarrow X^{(1)}$, $\epsilon : X^{(0)} \rightarrow X^{(1)}$ are maps. We assume that $\sigma \circ \epsilon = \tau \circ \mu = I$, the identity of $X^{(0)}$. Also we assume that the following diagrams are commutative:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X^{(2)} & \xrightarrow{\mu} & X^{(1)} & & X^{(2)} & \xrightarrow{\mu} & X^{(1)} & & X^{(3)} & \xrightarrow{\mu \times 1} & X^{(2)} \\ p_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow \tau & , & p_2 \downarrow & & \downarrow \sigma & , & 1 \times \mu \downarrow & & \downarrow \mu \\ X^{(1)} & \xrightarrow{\tau} & X^{(0)} & & X^{(1)} & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & X^{(0)} & & X^{(2)} & \xrightarrow{\mu} & X^{(0)} \end{array} .$$

Finally we assume that the compositions

$$X^{(1)} \xrightarrow{1 \times (\epsilon \circ \sigma)} X^{(2)} \xrightarrow{\mu} X^{(1)}$$

and

$$X^{(1)} \xrightarrow{(\epsilon \circ \tau) \times 1} X^{(2)} \xrightarrow{\mu} X^{(1)}$$

are the identity of $X^{(1)}$, where

$$(1 \times (\epsilon \circ \sigma))(a) = (a, \epsilon(\sigma(a))),$$

$$((\epsilon \circ \tau) \times 1)(a) = (\epsilon(\tau(a)), a).$$

The set $X^{(0)}$ is called the set of *objects* of the category and is also denoted by $Ob(\mathcal{C})$. The set $X^{(1)}$ is called the set of *arrows* or *morphisms* and is sometimes denoted by

$Mor(\mathcal{C})$. The map μ is called *composition* and we write $\mu(a, b) = a \star b$. The maps σ and τ are called the source and the target map, respectively. The map ϵ is called the identity. We set $\epsilon(x) = 1_x$ for all x . The first commutative diagram says that the target of $a \star b$ is the target of a . The second diagram says that the source of $a \star b$ is the source of b . In the third diagram (called *associativity diagram*) the map $\mu \times 1$ is defined as $(a, b, c) \mapsto (a \star b, c)$ while the map $1 \times \mu$ is defined by $(a, b, c) \mapsto (a, b \star c)$; the diagram then says that $(a \star b) \star c = a \star (b \star c)$. For $x, y \in X^{(0)}$ one denotes by $Hom(x, y)$ the set of all morphisms $a \in X^{(1)}$ with $\sigma(a) = x$ and $\tau(a) = y$. Instead of $a \in Hom(x, y)$ we also write $a : x \rightarrow y$. We say $a \in Hom(x, y)$ is an isomorphism if there exists $a' \in Hom(y, x)$ such that $a \star a' = 1_y$ and $a' \star a = 1_x$. (Then a' is unique and is denoted by a^{-1} .) A category is called a *groupoid* if all morphisms are isomorphisms.

What we called a *category* in the above definition is sometimes called a *small category*; since our presentation will involve universes (see below) we do not need to make any distinction between small categories and categories.

REMARK 32.5. Given a category

$$\mathcal{C} = (X^{(0)}, X^{(1)}, \sigma, \tau, \mu, \epsilon)$$

one can define the opposite category

$$\mathcal{C}^\circ = (X^{(0)}, X^{(1)}, \tau, \sigma, \mu \circ S, \epsilon)$$

where $S(a, b) = (b, a)$.

REMARK 32.6. Given a category

$$\mathcal{C} = (X^{(0)}, X^{(1)}, \sigma, \tau, \mu, \epsilon)$$

and a subset $Y \subset X^{(0)}$ one can define the full subcategory associated to Y by

$$\mathcal{C}_Y = (Y^{(0)}, Y^{(1)}, \tau_Y, \sigma_Y, \mu_Y, \epsilon_Y)$$

where $Y^{(0)} = Y$, $Y^{(1)} = \{a \in X^{(1)} \mid \sigma(a) \in Y, \tau(a) \in Y\}$, and $\tau_Y, \sigma_Y, \mu_Y, \epsilon_Y$ defined as the restrictions of $\tau, \sigma, \mu, \epsilon$, respectively.

In what follows we give some basic examples of categories. For the various examples below that involve *universes* the correctness of the definitions depends on certain claims (typically that certain sets are maps, etc.) Those claims cannot be proved a priori from *ZFC* and one typically needs an extra axiom to make things work. So we will add to *ZFC* the following:

AXIOM 32.7. (Grothendieck's axiom of the universes) There exists u such that all the axioms of *ZFC* hold if we add to their statements the proviso that the variables belong to u . A witness \mathcal{U} for this axiom is called a *universe*.

EXAMPLE 32.8. Let \mathcal{U} be a universe. Define the sets and maps:

$$\begin{aligned} X^{(0)} &= \mathcal{U}, \\ X^{(1)} &= \{(A, B, F) \in \mathcal{U}^3 \mid F \in Maps(A, B)\}, \\ \sigma(A, B, F) &= A, \quad \tau(A, B, F) = B. \\ \epsilon(A) &= I_A, \text{ (identity of } A) \end{aligned}$$

We get a category; indeed by the axiom of the universes if $A, B \in \mathcal{U}$ we have $B^A \in \mathcal{U}$ (check!) which insures that composition of morphisms is well defined. In

the examples below we will encounter from time to time the same kind of phenomenon (where the correctness of definitions depends on the axiom of universes; we will not repeat the corresponding discussion but we will simply add everywhere the words “in a given universe.”

EXAMPLE 32.9. If in the example above we insist that all F s are bijections we get a category called

$$\{\text{sets} + \text{bijections}\}.$$

This category is a groupoid.

EXAMPLE 32.10. Let A be a set and consider the category denoted by

$$\{\text{bijections of } A\}$$

defined as follows. We let $X^{(0)} = \{x\}$ be a set with one element, we let $X^{(1)}$ be the set of all bijections $F : A \rightarrow A$, we let σ and τ be the constant map $F \mapsto x$, we let μ be defined again by $\mu(F, G) = F \circ G$ (compositions of functions), and we let $\epsilon(F) = I_A$. This category is a groupoid.

EXAMPLE 32.11. Define the category

$$\{\text{ordered sets}\}$$

as follows. We take $X^{(0)}$ the set of all ordered sets (A, \leq) with A in a given universe, we take $X^{(1)}$ to be the set of all triples $((A, \leq), (A', \leq'), F)$ with $(A, \leq), (A', \leq') \in X^{(0)}$ and $F : A \rightarrow A'$ increasing, we take μ to be again, composition, and we take $\epsilon(A, \leq) = I_A$.

EXAMPLE 32.12. Let (A, \leq) be an ordered set. Define the category

$$\{(A, \leq)\}$$

as follows. We let $X^{(0)} = A$, we let $X^{(1)}$ be the set \leq viewed as a subset of $A \times A$, we let $\sigma(a, b) = a$, $\tau(a, b) = b$, we let $\mu((a, b), (b, c)) = (a, c)$, and we let $\epsilon(a) = (a, a)$.

EXAMPLE 32.13. Equivalence relations give rise to groupoids. Indeed let A be a set with an equivalence relation $R \subset A \times A$ on it which we refer to as \sim . Define the category

$$\{(A, \sim)\}$$

as follows. We let $X^{(0)} = A$, we let $X^{(1)} = R$, we let $\sigma(a, b) = a$, $\tau(a, b) = b$, we let $\mu((a, b), (b, c)) = (a, c)$, and we let $\epsilon(a) = (a, a)$. This category is a groupoid.

EXAMPLE 32.14. We fix the type of algebraic structures below. (For instance we may fix two binary operations, one unary operation, and two given elements.) Define the category

$$\{\text{algebraic structures}\}$$

as follows. $X^{(0)}$ is the set of all algebraic structures $(A, \star, \dots, \neg, \dots, 1, \dots)$ of the given type with A in a given universe, $X^{(1)}$ is the set of all triples

$$((A, \star, \dots, \neg, \dots, 1, \dots), (A', \star', \dots, \neg', \dots, 1', \dots), F)$$

with F a homomorphism, σ and τ are the usual source and target, and ϵ is the usual identity.

EXAMPLE 32.15. Here is a variant of the above example. Consider the category of rings

$$\{\text{commutative unital rings}\}$$

as follows. The set of objects $X^{(0)}$ is the set of all commutative unital rings $(A, +, \times, 0, 1)$ (usually referred to as A) in a given universe and the set of arrows $X^{(1)}$ is the set of all triples (A, B, F) where A, B are rings and $F : A \rightarrow B$ is a ring homomorphism. Also the target, source, and identity are the obvious ones; the composition map is the usual composition.

EXAMPLE 32.16. Define the category

$$\{\text{topological spaces}\}$$

as follows. We let $X^{(0)}$ be the set of all topological spaces X in a given universe; we take $X^{(1)}$ to be the set of all triples (X, X', F) with $F : X \rightarrow X'$ continuous, we let μ be given by usual composition of maps, σ and τ the usual source and target maps, and ϵ the usual identity.

EXAMPLE 32.17. Here is a variation on the previous example. Define the category

$$\{\text{pointed topological spaces}\}$$

as follows. We let $X^{(0)}$ be the set of all pairs (X, x) where X is a topological space in a given universe and $x \in X$; we take $X^{(1)}$ to be the set of all triples $((X, x), (X', x'), F)$ with $F : X \rightarrow X'$ continuous, and $F(x) = x'$; we let μ be given by usual composition of maps, σ and τ the usual source and target maps, and ϵ the usual identity.

EXAMPLE 32.18. Define the category of groups

$$\{\text{groups}\}$$

defined as follows. The set $X^{(0)}$ of objects is the set of all groups whose set is in a given universe, and the set $X^{(1)}$ is the set of all the triples consisting of two groups G, H and a homomorphism between them. The source, target, and identity are the obvious ones.

EXAMPLE 32.19. If in the above example we restrict ourselves to groups which are Abelian we get the category of Abelian groups

$$\{\text{Abelian groups}\}.$$

EXAMPLE 32.20. A fixed group can be viewed as a category as follows. Fix a group $(G, \star, ', e)$. Then one can consider the category

$$\{G\}$$

where $X^{(0)} = \{x\}$ is a set consisting of one element, $X^{(1)} = G$, $\mu(a, b) = a \star b$, the source and the target are the constant maps, and $\epsilon(x) = e$.

EXAMPLE 32.21. Define the category

$$\{\text{vector spaces}\}$$

as follows. The set of objects $X^{(0)}$ is the set of all vector spaces, in a given universe, over a fixed field; the set $X^{(1)}$ of morphisms consists of all triples (V, W, F) with $F : V \rightarrow W$ a linear map; source, target, and identity are defined in the obvious way.

EXAMPLE 32.22. Define the category

$$\{\text{complex affine algebraic varieties}\}$$

as follows. The objects of the category (called *complex affine algebraic varieties*) are pairs (\mathbb{C}^n, X) where X is a subset $X \subset \mathbb{C}^n$ for which there exist polynomials $f_1, \dots, f_m \in \mathbb{C}[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ such that

$$X = \{(a_1, \dots, a_n) \in \mathbb{C}^n \mid f_1(a_1, \dots, a_n) = \dots = f_m(a_1, \dots, a_n) = 0\}.$$

(Lines, conics, and cubics introduced earlier are examples of complex affine algebraic varieties if one takes $R = \mathbb{C}$.) A morphism between (\mathbb{C}^n, X) and $(\mathbb{C}^{n'}, X')$ is a map $F : X \rightarrow X'$ such that there exist polynomials $F_1, \dots, F_{n'} \in \mathbb{C}[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ with the property that for every $(a_1, \dots, a_n) \in X$ we have

$$F(a_1, \dots, a_n) = (F_1(a_1, \dots, a_n), \dots, F_{n'}(a_1, \dots, a_n)).$$

Composition of morphisms is composition of maps.

EXAMPLE 32.23. Define the category

$$\{\text{ordinary differential equations}\}$$

as follows. The set of objects consists of all pairs (\mathbb{R}^n, V) where $V : C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n) \rightarrow C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is a derivation which is \mathbb{R} -linear. (Such a V is called a *vector field* on \mathbb{R}^n .) A morphism $(\mathbb{R}^n, V) \rightarrow (\mathbb{R}^m, W)$ is a map $u : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ with smooth components such that for all $f \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^m)$ we have $V(f \circ u) = W(f) \circ u$. The reason why this is viewed as the right category for the theory of ordinary differential equations will be seen later.

EXERCISE 32.24. Check that, in all examples above, the conditions in the definition of a category are satisfied. (This is long and tedious but straightforward.)

Each category describes, in some sense, the paradigm for one area of Mathematics. The bridges between the various areas are realized by functors, cf. the definition and examples below.

DEFINITION 32.25. A functor $\Phi : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{C}}$ between two categories

$$\mathcal{C} = (X^{(0)}, X^{(1)}, \sigma, \tau, \mu, \epsilon), \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{\mathcal{C}} = (\tilde{X}^{(0)}, \tilde{X}^{(1)}, \tilde{\sigma}, \tilde{\tau}, \tilde{\mu}, \tilde{\epsilon})$$

is a pair of maps $(\Phi^{(0)}, \Phi^{(1)})$,

$$\Phi^{(0)} : X^{(0)} \rightarrow \tilde{X}^{(0)}, \quad \Phi^{(1)} : X^{(1)} \rightarrow \tilde{X}^{(1)}$$

such that the following diagrams are commutative:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X^{(1)} & \xrightarrow{\Phi^{(1)}} & \tilde{X}^{(1)} & & X^{(1)} & \xrightarrow{\Phi^{(1)}} & \tilde{X}^{(1)} & & X^{(1)} & \xrightarrow{\Phi^{(1)}} & \tilde{X}^{(1)} \\ \sigma \downarrow & & \downarrow \tilde{\sigma} & , & \tau \downarrow & & \downarrow \tilde{\tau} & , & \epsilon \uparrow & & \uparrow \tilde{\epsilon} \\ X^{(0)} & \xrightarrow{\Phi^{(0)}} & \tilde{X}^{(0)} & & X^{(0)} & \xrightarrow{\Phi^{(0)}} & \tilde{X}^{(0)} & & X^{(0)} & \xrightarrow{\Phi^{(0)}} & \tilde{X}^{(0)} \\ & & & & X^{(2)} & \xrightarrow{\Phi^{(2)}} & \tilde{X}^{(2)} & & & & \\ & & & & \mu \downarrow & & \downarrow \tilde{\mu} & & & & \\ & & & & X^{(1)} & \xrightarrow{\Phi^{(1)}} & \tilde{X}^{(1)} & & & & \end{array}$$

where $\Phi^{(2)} : X^{(2)} \rightarrow \tilde{X}^{(2)}$ is the naturally induced map. One usually denotes both $\Phi^{(0)}$ and $\Phi^{(1)}$ by Φ . So compatibility with μ and $\tilde{\mu}$ reads

$$\Phi(a \star b) = \Phi(a) \star \Phi(b),$$

for all $(a, b) \in X^{(2)}$.

Here are a few examples of functors. We start with some “forgetful” functors whose effect is to “forget” part of the structure:

EXAMPLE 32.26. Consider the “forgetful” functor

$$\Phi : \{\text{commutative unital rings}\} \rightarrow \{\text{Abelian groups}\}$$

defined as follows. For $(R, +, \times, -, 0, 1)$ a commutative unital ring we let

$$\Phi(R, +, \times, -, 0, 1) = (R, +, -, 0),$$

which is an Abelian group. For every ring homomorphism F we set $\Phi(F) = F$, viewed as a group homomorphism.

EXAMPLE 32.27. Consider the “forgetful” functor

$$\Phi : \{\text{commutative unital rings}\} \rightarrow \{\text{Abelian groups}\}$$

defined as follows. For $(R, +, \times, -, 0, 1)$ a commutative unital ring we let

$$\Phi(R, +, \times, -, 0, 1) = (R^\times, \times, ()^{-1}, 1),$$

where R^\times is the group of invertible elements of R , which is an Abelian group, and x^{-1} is the inverse of x . For every ring homomorphism F we let $\Phi(F)$ be the restriction of F to the invertible elements.

EXAMPLE 32.28. Consider the functor

$$\Phi : \{\text{Abelian groups}\} \rightarrow \{\text{groups}\}$$

defined as follows. For $(G, \star, ', e)$ an Abelian group we let

$$\Phi(G, \star, ', e) = (G, \star, ', e).$$

For every group homomorphism F we let $\Phi(F) = F$.

EXAMPLE 32.29. Consider the “forgetful” functor

$$\Phi : \{\text{groups}\} \rightarrow \{\text{sets}\}$$

defined as follows. For $(G, \star, ', e)$ a group we let

$$\Phi(G, \star, ', e) = G.$$

For every group homomorphism F we let $\Phi(F) = F$, as a map of sets.

EXAMPLE 32.30. Consider the following functor that is the prototype for some important functors in areas of Mathematics called *functional analysis* and *algebraic geometry*. The functor is

$$\Phi : \{\text{topological spaces}\} \rightarrow \{\text{commutative unital rings}\}^\circ,$$

it takes values in the opposite of the category of commutative unital rings, and is defined as follows. For X a topological space we let

$$\Phi(X) = (C^0(X), +, \cdot, -, 0, 1),$$

where the latter is the following ring. The set $C^0(X)$ is the set of all continuous functions $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, the addition $+$ and multiplication \cdot are the pointwise operations, and $0(x) = 0$, $1(x) = 1$. For every continuous map $F : X \rightarrow X'$ we let $\Phi(F) = F^*$ where, for $f : X' \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, $F^*(f) = f \circ F$.

EXERCISE 32.31. Prove that all Φ s in the examples above are functors. (This is tedious but straightforward.)

EXAMPLE 32.32. Consider the following functor that, again, is the prototype for some important functors in functional analysis and algebraic geometry. The functor is

$$\Phi : \{\text{commutative unital rings}\}^\circ \rightarrow \{\text{topological spaces}\},$$

and is defined as follows. Consider any commutative unital ring R . By an ideal in R we understand a subset $I \subset R$ such that I is a subgroup of R with respect with addition (i.e., $0 \in I$, $a + b \in I$, and $-a \in I$ for all $a, b \in I$), and $ab \in I$ for all $a \in R$ and $b \in I$. An ideal P in R is called a *prime ideal* if $P \neq R$ and whenever $ab \in P$ with $a \in R$ and $b \in R$ it follows that either $a \in P$ or $b \in P$. We let $\text{Spec } R$ be the set of all prime ideals in R . For any ideal I in R we let $D(I) \subset \text{Spec } R$ be the set of all prime ideals P such that $I \not\subset P$. Then the collection of all subsets of the form $D(I) \in \mathcal{P}(\text{Spec } R)$ is a topology on $\text{Spec } R$ called the *Zariski topology*. With this topology $\text{Spec } R$ becomes a topological space and we define

$$\Phi(R) = \text{Spec } R.$$

If $F : R \rightarrow R'$ is a ring homomorphism we define $\Phi(F) = F^* : \text{Spec } R' \rightarrow \text{Spec } R$ by $F^*(P') = F^{-1}(P')$.

EXERCISE 32.33. Prove that the collection $\{D(I) \mid I \text{ an ideal in } R\}$ is a topology on $\text{Spec } R$. Prove that F^* is continuous. Prove that Φ is a functor.

EXERCISE 32.34. Prove that the ideals of \mathbb{Z} are exactly the subgroups of \mathbb{Z} ; hence they are of the form $\langle n \rangle$ for $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, $n \geq 0$. Prove that $\langle n \rangle$ is a prime ideal if and only if n is prime or $n = 0$. Prove that $\text{Spec } \mathbb{Z}$ is not a Hausdorff space.

EXERCISE 32.35. Consider the following functor that plays a key role in algebraic geometry. The functor is

$$\Phi : \{\text{complex affine algebraic varieties}\} \rightarrow \{\text{topological spaces}\},$$

and is defined as follows. If (\mathbb{C}^n, X) is a complex affine algebraic variety, $X \subset \mathbb{C}^n$, then one can give X the topology induced from the Euclidean topology of \mathbb{C}^n which we call the *Euclidean topology* on X ; then X becomes a Hausdorff topological space and we let $\Phi(\mathbb{C}^n, X) = X$, with the Euclidean topology. For every morphism of complex affine algebraic varieties $F : X \rightarrow X'$ we let $\Phi(F) = F$ (which is continuous for the Euclidean topologies).

EXERCISE 32.36. Check that if $F : X \rightarrow X'$ is a morphism of complex affine algebraic varieties then F is continuous for the Euclidean topologies.

EXAMPLE 32.37. Consider the following functor that plays a key role in an area of Mathematics called *algebraic topology*. The functor is

$$\Phi : \{\text{pointed topological spaces}\} \rightarrow \{\text{groups}\}$$

and is defined as follows. For (X, x) a pointed topological space we let

$$\Phi(X, x) = (\pi_1(X, x), \star, ', e),$$

where the latter is the following group (called the *fundamental group* of (X, x)). To define the set $\pi_1(X, x)$ we first define the set $\Pi(X, x)$ of all continuous maps $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow X$ such that $\gamma(0) = \gamma(1) = x$; the elements γ are called *loops*. Next

one defines a relation \sim on $\Pi(X, x)$ called *homotopy*: two loops $\gamma_0, \gamma_1 : [0, 1] \rightarrow X$ are called *homotopic* (and write $\gamma_0 \sim \gamma_1$) if there exists a continuous map $F : [0, 1] \times [0, 1] \rightarrow X$ such that $F(t, 0) = \gamma_0(t)$, $F(t, 1) = \gamma_1(t)$, $F(0, s) = x$, $F(1, s) = x$, for all $t, s \in [0, 1]$. One proves that \sim is an equivalence relation on $\Pi(X, x)$ and one defines the set $\pi_1(X, x)$ as the set of equivalence classes:

$$\pi_1(X, x) = \Pi(X, x) / \sim.$$

The class of a loop γ is denoted by $[\gamma] \in \pi_1(X, x)$. On the other hand there is a natural “composition map”

$$\Pi(X, x) \times \Pi(X, x) \rightarrow \Pi(X, x), \quad (\gamma_1, \gamma_2) \mapsto \gamma_1 \star \gamma_2,$$

defined by $(\gamma_1 \star \gamma_2)(t) = \gamma_1(2t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 1/2$ and $(\gamma_1 \star \gamma_2)(t) = \gamma_2(2t - 1)$ for $1/2 \leq t \leq 1$. (Note that $\gamma_1 \star (\gamma_2 \star \gamma_3) \neq (\gamma_1 \star \gamma_2) \star \gamma_3$ in general.) However one can prove that

$$(32.1) \quad \gamma_1 \star (\gamma_2 \star \gamma_3) \sim (\gamma_1 \star \gamma_2) \star \gamma_3.$$

Define a binary operation on $\pi_1(X, x)$ by

$$[\gamma_1] \star [\gamma_2] = [\gamma_1 \star \gamma_2].$$

This makes $\pi_1(X, x)$ a group with identity $e = [\gamma_x]$ where $\gamma_x(t) = x$ for all t ; associativity follows from Equation 32.1. For every continuous map $F : X \rightarrow X'$ we let $\Phi(F) = F_*$ where, for $\gamma \in \Pi(X, x)$, we let $F_*([\gamma]) = [F \circ \gamma]$.

EXERCISE 32.38. Prove that \sim is an equivalence relation on $\Pi(X, x)$. Prove the homotopy in Equation 32.1. Show that the operation \star is well defined on $\pi_1(X, x)$ and gives a group structure on $\pi_1(X, x)$. Check that the data above define a functor.

One can ask if there is a way to summarize the main objectives of modern Mathematics. We would like this summary to transcend the particularities of the various fields in which the questions are being raised. The language of categories seems to be well adapted for this purpose, as we shall see in the examples below.

EXAMPLE 32.39. (Equations and solutions) Let \mathcal{C} be a category as above. Let us define an equation to be a morphism $b \in \text{Hom}(y, z)$ and let $a \in \text{Hom}(x, z)$. Let us define the set of solutions in a of the equation b as the set

$$\text{Sol}(a, b) = \{c \in \text{Hom}(x, y) \mid a = b \star c\}.$$

A large part of Mathematics is devoted to “finding the set of solutions of given equations” in the sense above. Algebraic equations and differential equations can be put, for instance, into this setting.

In order to put algebraic equations into the framework above let us consider a simple situation in which \mathcal{C} is the dual of the category of commutative unital rings. Let $f \in A = \mathbb{Z}[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ be a polynomial in variables x_1, \dots, x_n with coefficients in \mathbb{Z} and define an equivalence relation \equiv_f on A by declaring that $u \equiv_f v$ for $u, v \in A$ if and only if there exists $w \in A$ such that $u - v = fw$. Write $A/(f)$ for the set A/\equiv_f of equivalence classes. Then $A/(f)$ becomes a commutative unital ring with operations induced by the operations on A . Now let $b \in \text{Hom}(A/(f), \mathbb{Z})$ be the morphism corresponding to the natural ring homomorphism $\mathbb{Z} \rightarrow A/(f)$ and let $a \in \text{Hom}(R, \mathbb{Z})$ be the morphism corresponding to the natural homomorphism $\mathbb{Z} \rightarrow R$ where R is a field. Then we claim that there is a natural bijection

$$\psi : \text{Sol}(a, b) \rightarrow \{(c_1, \dots, c_n) \in R^n \mid f(c_1, \dots, c_n) = 0\}$$

given as follows: for every solution $c \in \text{Hom}(R, A/(f))$ corresponding to a ring homomorphism $c : A/(f) \rightarrow R$ we can attach the tuple $\psi(c) = (c([x_1]), \dots, c([x_n]))$ where $[x_i] \in A/(f)$ is the equivalence class of x_i . This shows that the concept of solution in the category \mathcal{C} corresponds to the usual concept of solution of an algebraic equation.

In order to put differential equations into a categorical framework start with a differential equation of the form

$$(32.2) \quad \frac{d^r F}{dx^r} = Q(x, F(x), \frac{dF}{dx}(x), \dots, \frac{d^{r-1}F}{dx^{r-1}}(x))$$

where $F \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ and $Q \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{r+1})$. Let now \mathcal{C} be the category of ordinary differential equations. Consider the object $X = Z = (\mathbb{R}^1, D)$ with $DF = F'$ the usual derivative. Consider also the object $Y = (\mathbb{R}^{r+1}, V_Q)$ where for $f \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{r+1})$, $f = f(x, y_0, \dots, y_{r-1})$, we set

$$(32.3) \quad V_Q(f) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} + y_1 \frac{\partial f}{\partial y_0} + y_2 \frac{\partial f}{\partial y_1} + \dots + y_{r-1} \frac{\partial f}{\partial y_{r-2}} + Q(x, y_0, \dots, y_{r-1}) \frac{\partial f}{\partial y_{r-1}}.$$

We let $a : X \rightarrow X = Z$ be the identity and $b : Y \rightarrow X$ be defined by the first projection $\mathbb{R}^{r+1} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, $(x, y_0, \dots, y_{r-1}) \mapsto x$. Then there is a natural bijection

$$\Psi : \text{Sol}(a, b) \rightarrow \{F \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}) \mid F \text{ is a solution to 32.2}\}$$

given as follows. For every solution $c \in \text{Sol}(a, b)$ given by a map $c : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{r+1}$, $c(x) = (x, c_0(x), c_1(x), \dots, c_{r-1}(x))$, we let $\Psi(c) = F$ with $F(x) = c_0(x)$. This shows that the concept of solution in the category \mathcal{C} corresponds to the usual concept of solution of a differential equation of the form 32.2.

EXERCISE 32.40. In the notation above define the operations on $A/(f)$ and check that $A/(f)$ is a ring. Prove that ψ is well defined and a bijection.

EXERCISE 32.41. In the notation above prove that Ψ is well defined and a bijection.

EXAMPLE 32.42. (Symmetries) Let \mathcal{C} be a category and $x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$. We denote by $\text{Aut}(x)$ the set of isomorphisms in $\text{Hom}(x, x)$. Then $(\text{Aut}(x), \star, ()^{-1}, 1_x)$ is a group; it is referred to as the automorphism group of x and is viewed as the “group of symmetries of x .” Many problems of modern Mathematics boil down to computing this group.

Here is an example. Let \mathcal{C} be the category of commutative unital rings. Let $f \in \mathbb{Q}[x]$ be a polynomial in one variable and let $Z = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be the set of all roots of f in \mathbb{C} . Let

$$K_f = \{P(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \mid P \in \mathbb{Q}[x_1, \dots, x_n]\} \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}).$$

(This is actually a field, called the *splitting field* of f .) Then $\text{Aut}(K_f)$ is the group of all ring isomorphisms $g : K_f \rightarrow K_f$; this group is called the *Galois group* of f over \mathbb{Q} and is sometimes denoted by G_f ; it plays a central role in number theory. For $g \in G_f$ we have that $g(Z) = Z$ so g induces a permutation σ_g of $\{1, \dots, n\}$ such that $g(\alpha_i) = \alpha_{\sigma_g(i)}$ for all i . We get an injective homomorphism $G_f \rightarrow S_n$, $g \mapsto \sigma_g$.

Here is another example. Let \mathcal{C} be the category of ordinary differential equations. For the object (\mathbb{R}^{r+1}, V_Q) with V_Q as in 32.3, the group $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{R}^{r+1}, V_Q)$ is viewed as the group of symmetries of the Equation 32.2. For $V = 0$ the group $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{R}^n, V)$ is called the *diffeomorphism group* of \mathbb{R}^n and is usually denoted by $\text{Diff}(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

Here is another example. Let \mathcal{C} be the category of all vector spaces over a field R . Then there is a natural isomorphism $Aut(R^n) \rightarrow GL_n(R)$.

EXERCISE 32.43. Look at other examples of categories and analyze the Aut groups of their objects.

EXAMPLE 32.44. (Classification problem and invariants) Let \mathcal{C} be a category. Then there is an equivalence relation \simeq on $Ob(\mathcal{C})$ defined as follows: for $x, y \in Ob(\mathcal{C})$ we have $x \simeq y$ if and only if there exists an isomorphism $x \rightarrow y$. One can consider the set of equivalence classes

$$Ob(\mathcal{C})/\simeq.$$

“Describing” this set is referred to as the classification problem for the objects of category \mathcal{C} and many important problems in modern Mathematics boil down to the classification problem for an appropriate category.

For some categories this is trivial; for instance if \mathcal{C} is the full subcategory of the category of vector spaces over a field R consisting of the finite dimensional vector spaces then there is a natural bijection

$$Ob(\mathcal{C})/\simeq \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}, [V] \mapsto \dim V.$$

However for other categories \mathcal{C} such as the category of topological spaces or the category of complex affine algebraic varieties no description is available for \mathcal{C}/\simeq ; partial results (e.g., results for full subcategories of these categories or variants of these categories) are known and some are very deep.

Another way to formulate (or weaken) the problem is via systems of invariants for objects of a category \mathcal{C} . If S is a set a system of invariants for \mathcal{C} is a map

$$I : Ob(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow S$$

such that for every $x, y \in Ob(\mathcal{C})$ with $x \simeq y$ we have $I(x) = I(y)$. Any system of invariants defines a map

$$\bar{I} : Ob(\mathcal{C})/\simeq \rightarrow S, \bar{I}([x]) = I(x).$$

If the latter is an injection we say I is a complete system of invariants. So the classification problem is the same as the problem of (explicitly) finding a complete system of invariants I and finding “all possible invariants” (i.e., the image of I). For instance if \mathcal{C} is the category of finite dimensional vector spaces over a field R then $I = \dim$ is a complete system of invariants and I is surjective. A weaker problem for a general category is to find an “interesting” (not necessarily complete) system of invariants.

Some important theorems in Mathematics claim the equality of a priori unrelated invariants $I' : Ob(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow S$ and $I'' : Ob(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow S$. As corollaries one sometimes obtains interesting equalities between (integer or real) numbers.

Finally note that functors can produce systems of invariants as follows. If $\Phi : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}'$ is a functor then we have a natural map

$$I : Ob(\mathcal{C})/\simeq \rightarrow Ob(\mathcal{C}')/\simeq'.$$

So any system of invariants for \mathcal{C}' induces a system of invariants for \mathcal{C} . This is one of the main ideas of algebraic topology (respectively algebraic geometry) for which \mathcal{C} is the category of topological spaces (respectively complex affine algebraic varieties or variants of it) and \mathcal{C}' is the category of groups, rings, vector spaces, etc.

REMARK 32.45. It is far from being the case that all main questions of Mathematics have a structural that fits into the categorical framework explained above. What *is* the case, however, is that one expects that behind many of the important results of Mathematics there is a more general, structural “explanation” that *does* fit into the categorical viewpoint; looking for such “explanations” is a modern trend in Mathematics called *categorification*.

CHAPTER 33

Models

We briefly indicate here how one can create a “mirror” of (pre-mathematical) Logic within Mathematics. What results is a subject called *Mathematical Logic* (also referred to as *Formal Logic*). This mirroring process can be thought of as a “second formalization” (or a formalization of the formalization). The mirror of (pre-mathematical) Logic in Mathematics is not entirely accurate: there is no one to one correspondence between (pre-mathematical) Logic and Mathematical Logic. The main concept in this discussion will be that of *model*; cf. the definitions below.

All definitions and theorems below are in Set Theory T_{set} so we place ourselves under ZFC (no need here to add to ZFC the axiom of universes.) Recall that \mathbb{N} and also its elements are sets, i.e. constants in L_{set} , that were defined in the chapter on the integers.

DEFINITION 33.1. For $i \in \mathbb{N}$ define sets

$$c, f_i, r_i, x_i^*, \wedge^*, \vee^*, \neg^*, \rightarrow^*, \leftrightarrow^*, \forall^*, \exists^*, =^*, (*, *)^*, T, V, W$$

as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} c &= 0 \\ f_i &= (1, i), \\ r_i &= (2, i), \\ x_i^* &= (3, i), \\ \wedge^* &= 1, \\ \vee^* &= 2, \\ \neg^* &= 3, \\ \rightarrow^* &= 4, \\ \leftrightarrow^* &= 5, \\ \forall^* &= 6, \\ \exists^* &= 7, \\ =^* &= 8, \\ (*, *)^* &= 9, \\)^* &= 10, \\ C &= 0, \\ T &= \{c\} \cup \{f_1, f_2, f_3, \dots\} \cup \{r_1, r_2, r_3, \dots\}, \\ V &= \{x_1^*, x_2^*, x_3^*, \dots\}, \\ W &= \{\vee^*, \wedge^*, \neg^*, \rightarrow^*, \leftrightarrow^*, \forall^*, \exists^*, =^*, (*, *)^*\}. \end{aligned}$$

V is called the set of *variables*; W is called the set of *logical symbols*. We sometimes write x^*, y^*, z^*, \dots instead of $x_1^*, x_2^*, x_3^*, \dots$. By a T -partitioned set we mean in what follows a set S together with a map $S \rightarrow T$. We let $S_t \subset S$ the preimage of $t \in T$. Let S be a T -partitioned set; the elements of S_c are called *constant symbols*; the

elements of S_{f_n} are called n -ary *function symbols*; the elements of S_{r_n} are called n -ary *relation symbols*. For any such S we consider the set

$$\Lambda_S = V \cup W \cup S$$

(referred to as the formal language attached to S). Then one considers the set of words Λ_S^* with letters in Λ_S . One defines (in an obvious way, imitating the metadefinitions in the chapters on “pre-mathematical” Logic) what it means for an element $\Phi \in \Lambda_S^*$ to be an S -formula or an S -formula without free variables (the latter are referred to as sentences). One denotes by $\Lambda_S^f \subset \Lambda_S^*$ the set of all S -formulas and by $\Lambda_S^s \subset \Lambda_S^f$ the set of all S -sentences.

REMARK 33.2. Note that symbols “ \wedge, \vee, \dots ” are, of course, connectives in L_{set} while “ \wedge^*, \vee^*, \dots ” are sets, i.e. constants in L_{set} . Also “ $=$ ” is equality in L_{set} while “ $=^*$ ” is a constant in L_{set} . Also “ $(,)$ ” are separators in L_{set} while “ $(^*,)^*$ ” are constants in L_{set} . Similarly “ x, y, z, \dots ” are the variables in L_{set} while “ x^*, y^*, z^*, \dots ” are constants in L_{set} .

EXAMPLE 33.3. Assume $\rho \in S_{r_3}$, $a \in S_c$, and $x^*, z^* \in V$. Define the word

$$\varphi = \forall^* x^* \exists^* z^* (*\rho(*x^*, z^*, a))^* = (\forall^*, x^*, \exists^*, z^*, (*, \rho, (*, x^*, z^*, a), *)^*).$$

Words are sets so φ is a set. Also φ is an S -formula i.e. $\varphi \in \Lambda_S^f$ is a theorem in T_{set} . For simplicity we write

$$\varphi = \{\forall x \exists z (\rho(x, z, a))\}^*.$$

Note that $\{, \}$, and $*$ (the latter taken by itself) are not symbols in L_{set} but rather in metalanguage; so, whenever one encounters $\{\dots\}^*$ in a text in L_{set} one needs to replace $\{\dots\}^*$ by the corresponding word in Λ_S^* . Now the word $\{\exists a \forall z (\rho(x, z, a))\}^*$ is not an S -formula because constants cannot have quantifiers \forall, \exists in front of them. Also the word $\{\forall x \exists z (\rho(x, a))\}^*$ is not an S -formula because ρ is “supposed to have 3 arguments.” If $\square \in S_{f_2}$ and a, x, z are as above then the word

$$\varphi = \{\forall x \exists z (\square(z, a) = z)\}^*$$

is an S -formula.

REMARK 33.4. One can naturally define binary operations \wedge^* and \vee^* on Λ_S^s and a unary operation \neg^* on Λ_S^s . Note that we have

$$\varphi \wedge^* (\psi \wedge^* \eta) \neq (\varphi \wedge^* \psi) \wedge^* \eta,$$

so Λ_S^s is not a Boolean algebra with respect to these operations. For simplicity, and if no confusion arises, we write \wedge, \vee, \neg in place of \wedge^*, \vee^*, \neg^* .

Let M be a set. We let $S_c(M) = M$. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we set $S_{r_n}(M) = \mathcal{P}(M^n)$, the set of n -ary relations on M and $S_{f_n}(M) \subset \mathcal{P}(M^{n+1})$ the set of maps $M^n \rightarrow M$. We consider the T -partitioned set $S(M)$, union of the above. Then we can consider the formal language $\Lambda_{S(M)}$. An assignment in M is a map

$$\mu : V \rightarrow M.$$

For every set M and assignment μ one can prove (by recursion) that there exists a map $v_{M, \mu} : \Lambda_{S(M)}^f \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$ which is a homomorphism with respect to \vee, \wedge, \neg , is compatible (in an obvious sense) with \forall, \exists , and satisfies obvious conditions with respect to relational and functional symbols, and also with μ . If φ has no free

variables we write $v_M(\varphi)$ in place of $v_{M,\mu}(\varphi)$. Here are two examples of the “obvious conditions” referred to above. One example is the condition

$$\forall x \forall y ((x \in M) \wedge (y \in \mathcal{P}(M)) \rightarrow Q)$$

where

$$Q = “((v_M(y(*x)^*) = 1) \leftrightarrow (x \in y))”$$

Another example of such a condition is

$$\forall y (y \in \mathcal{P}(M) \rightarrow P)$$

where

$$P := “((v_{M,\mu}(\forall^* z^* (*y(*x^*, z^*)^*)^*) = 1) \leftrightarrow (\forall z ((z \in M) \rightarrow ((\mu(x), z) \in y))))”.$$

Here

$$y(*x)^* = (y, (*, x,)^*),$$

$$\forall^* z^* (*y(*x^*, z^*)^*)^* = (\forall^*, z^*, (*, y, (*, x^*, z^*),)^*),$$

and the definition of Λ_S^f is such that the following is a theorem:

$$\forall x \forall y ((x \in M) \wedge (y \in \mathcal{P}(M)) \rightarrow (y(*x)^* \in \Lambda_S^f))$$

(similarly for the second condition). In general the conjunction of all such “obvious conditions” can be expressed in the language of Set Theory using recursion (this was done by Tarski); we will not go here into this.

Next we discuss “semantics” of formal languages. The word “semantics” here is taken in a metaphorical sense, justified by the fact that translations are involved.

DEFINITION 33.5. By a translation of Λ_S into $\Lambda_{S'}$ we understand a map

$$\mathbf{m} : S \rightarrow S'$$

which is compatible with the partitions (in the sense that $\mathbf{m}(S_t) \subset S'_t$ for all $t \in T$). For every $\varphi \in \Lambda_S^f$ one can form, in an obvious way, a formula $\mathbf{m}(\varphi) \in \Lambda_{S'}^f$, obtained from φ by replacing the constants and relational and functional symbols by their images under \mathbf{m} , respectively. So we get a map

$$\mathbf{m} : \Lambda_S^f \rightarrow \Lambda_{S'}^f$$

which is a homomorphism with respect to \vee, \wedge, \neg , compatible with \forall, \exists .

An S -structure (or simply a structure if S is understood) is a pair $\mathcal{M} = (M, \mathbf{m})$ where M is a set and \mathbf{m} is a translation

$$\mathbf{m} : S \rightarrow S(M).$$

So we get a map

$$\mathbf{m} : \Lambda_S^f \rightarrow \Lambda_{S(M)}^f,$$

which is a homomorphism with respect to \vee, \wedge, \neg , compatible with \forall, \exists . Fix an assignment μ and set $v_{M,\mu} = v_M$. We have a natural map

$$v_M : \Lambda_{S(M)}^f \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$$

which is again a homomorphism compatible with \forall, \exists . So we may consider the composition

$$v_{\mathcal{M}} = v_M \circ \mathbf{m} : \Lambda_S^f \rightarrow \{0, 1\}.$$

We say that a sentence $\varphi \in \Lambda_S^s$ is satisfied in the structure \mathcal{M} if $v_{\mathcal{M}}(\varphi) = 1$. This concept is independent of μ . This is a variant of Tarski's *semantic definition of truth*: one can define in Set Theory the predicate *is true in* \mathcal{M} by the definition:

$$\forall x((x \text{ is true in } \mathcal{M}) \leftrightarrow ((x \in \Lambda_S^s) \wedge (v_{\mathcal{M}}(x) = 1))).$$

(We will continue to NOT use the word *true* in what follows, though.) If $v_{\mathcal{M}}(\varphi) = 1$ we also say that \mathcal{M} is a *model* of φ and we write $\mathcal{M} \models \varphi$. (So “is a model” and “ \models ” are predicates that are being added to L_{set} .) We say a set $\Phi \subset \Lambda_S^s$ of sentences is satisfied in a structure (write $\mathcal{M} \models \Phi$) if all the formulas in Φ are satisfied in this structure. We say that a sentence $\varphi \in \Lambda_S^s$ is a semantic formal consequence of a set of sentences $\Phi \subset \Lambda_S^s$ (and we write $\Phi \models \varphi$) if φ is satisfied in any structure in which Φ is satisfied. Here the word semantic is used because we are using translations; and the word formal is being used because we are in Mathematical Logic rather than in pre-mathematical Logic. A sentence $\varphi \in \Lambda_S^s$ is valid (or a formal tautology) if it is satisfied in any structure, i.e., if $\emptyset \models \varphi$. We say a sentence φ is satisfiable if there is a structure in which it is satisfied. Two sentences φ and ψ are semantically formally equivalent if each of them is a semantic formal consequence of the other, i.e. $\varphi \models \psi$ and $\psi \models \varphi$; write $\varphi \approx \psi$. Note that the quotient Λ_S^s / \approx is a Boolean algebra in a natural way. Moreover each structure \mathcal{M} defines a homomorphism $v_{\mathcal{M}} : \Lambda_S^s / \approx \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$ of Boolean algebras.

EXAMPLE 33.6. Algebraic structures can be viewed as models. Here is an example. Let

$$S = \{\star, \iota, e\}$$

with e a constant symbol, \star a binary function symbol, and ι a unary function symbol. Let Φ_{gr} be the set of S -formulas $\Phi_{gr} = \{\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3\}$ where

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_1 &= \forall x \forall y \forall z (x \star (y \star z) = (x \star y) \star z) \\ \varphi_2 &= \forall x (x \star e = e \star x = x) \\ \varphi_3 &= \forall x (x \star \iota(x) = \iota(x) \star x = x). \end{aligned}$$

Then a group is simply a model of Φ_{gr} above. We also say that Φ_{gr} is a set of axioms for the formalized theory of groups.

More generally:

DEFINITION 33.7. A formalized (or formal) system of axioms is a pair (S, Φ) where S is a T -partitioned set and Φ is a subset of Λ_S^s ; then define

$$\Phi^{\models} = \{\varphi \in \Lambda_S^s \mid \Phi \models \varphi\};$$

Φ^{\models} is called the *formal theory* generated by the system of axioms (S, Φ) .

REMARK 33.8. One thinks of Φ^{\models} as semantically defined because its definition involves models and hence translations. One may define a “syntactic” version of this set namely the set

$$\Phi^{\vdash} = \{\varphi \in \Lambda_S^s \mid \Phi \vdash \varphi\};$$

where \vdash is the predicate added to L_{set} meaning “ φ provable from Φ ” in an obvious sense that imitates the definition of proof in pre-mathematical Logic. Gödel proved that $\Phi^{\vdash} = \Phi^{\models}$. He also proved his remarkable incompleteness theorems which we will not review here. From a nominalist viewpoint all these theorems, being theorems in Set Theory, have no reference and in particular “they say nothing **about** Mathematics itself.”

Appendix 1

We present, in what follows, a series of comments on the material of this course.

Dogmatism. Our presentation of Logic and Mathematics is largely dogmatic in that it ignores alternative approaches and does not justify the (apparently) arbitrary (meta)definitions and axioms that are being introduced. Dogmatism definitely helped keeping our introduction minimal. But the question of a priori justifying our (meta)definitions and axioms remains. The quest for such a priori justifications is, in some sense, analogous to Hegel's requirement (Hegel 1975) that the "list of categories", for instance, be a priori deduced rather than "dogmatically given"; Hegel criticizes Kant for precisely such a dogmatic approach. In our case, for instance, one can ask: *what is the justification for having exactly 5 connectives $\wedge, \vee, \neg, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow$ and what is the justification for their particular "truth tables"?* One answer could be that our starting point were *natural* languages which we started *analyzing* before we *synthesized* our more *formal* languages. And, in analyzing natural languages, we just happened to *empirically find* 5 connectives that are being used in such a way that, if actual *truth* were an allowed predicate, then the "truth tables" would coincide with the corresponding actual truth tables. But this justification is not acceptable. First it is an a posteriori, rather than an a priori, justification. Secondly this justification is at odds with our insistence that the *truth* predicate be banned from our discourse; our "truth tables" are, rather, part of the inference machine. Here is, however, an a priori justification, in line with our ban on *truth*. There are 16 possible "truth tables" for a binary connective and 4 possible "truth tables" for unary connectives. So there are $16 + 4 = 20$ possible binary+unary connectives. So there are 15 "new" connectives in addition to the "old" 5 that we have been using. (We can call them $\triangle, \square, \dots$, etc. and we can even translate these 15 connectives into English as, say, *gook, gonk, \dots* etc.) Now it turns out that *any of the 15 new connectives is expressible as a Boolean combination in terms of the old 5 connectives* (and indeed in terms of, say, \neg and \wedge alone); this is an easy exercise. So, after all, the old 5 connectives are enough to define *all 20 possible (unary+binary) connectives*. This somewhat dispels the mystery of the 5 connectives and their special "truth tables"; for they "generate" *all possible* connectives, i.e. all possible "truth tables". It would be interesting to find a similar a priori justification for the background axioms, the specific axioms of Set Theory (ZFC), and the various definitions within Mathematics. The ZFC axioms are an especially puzzling case: their shape is far from intuitive and hence far from easily justifiable a priori.

Plurality of Logics and Mathematics. One of the corollaries of our dogmatic approach is that only *one* pre-mathematical Logic was considered; and within it only *one* Mathematics (namely ZFC) was put forward; and within this particular

Mathematics only *one* mathematical Logic was set up. But lacking an a priori justification for the choices made in developing the theory one should point out towards various alternatives. Indeed consideration of a pre-mathematical Logic involves setting up a set of syntactic rules; let S_1, S_2, \dots be the various possible sets of syntactic rules. Belonging to each set S_n of syntactic rules there are various languages L_{n1}, L_{n2}, \dots . For each n one can select a language, say L_{n1} , that we want to use for Mathematics. In this language L_{n1} one can formulate various sets A_{n11}, A_{n12}, \dots of axioms (which are variants of “axioms for Mathematics”). For each n and m we can then give various metadefinitions $M_{n1m1}, M_{n1m2}, \dots$ of the concept of *theory*. All of these lead to corresponding theories $T_{n1m1}, T_{n1m2}, \dots$ (which are variants of “Mathematics”). Within each T_{n1mk} one can set up various systems of definitions $D_{n1mk1}, D_{n1mk2}, \dots$ each of which allows us to create a mirror of T_{n1mk} inside itself; for each D_{n1mkl} we get a different “Mathematical Logic.” Then the syntactic rules we put forward in Part 1 of our course identify with one of our sets of syntactic rules, say with S_1 . The language L_{set} introduced in Part 2 of our course identifies then with L_{11} . The *ZFC* axioms identify with one of the possible sets of axioms, say with A_{111} . Our specific metadefinition of the concept of *theory* corresponds to some M_{1111} , say. Set theory T_{set} identifies then with T_{1111} . And the definitions used to set up Mathematical Logic identify, say, with D_{11111} . So one can see that, in setting up pre-mathematical Logic, Mathematics, and Mathematical Logic, one actually has a whole spectrum of choices at each point. This perspective was fully understood and thoroughly explored by the classics of contemporary Logic, in particular by Gödel who made sustained efforts to enrich *ZFC* (i.e. enrich A_{111}) in such a way that the continuum hypothesis *CH* can be “decided” within the enriched Set Theory. Gödel also looked carefully at how his incompleteness theorems change if one “weakens” L_{11} and A_{111} . He noted, cf. (Wang 1996), that his arguments for the incompleteness theorem of arithmetic are *not* finitistic, as Hilbert had required for “metamathematics”. In fact, it was pointed out by Gödel that his arguments of the incompleteness of arithmetic require the full power of the language/axioms of Set Theory and not merely the language/axioms of the integers; in other words, for the proof of these theorems, one cannot substantially weaken L_{11} and A_{111} . This was viewed by Gödel as an argument in favor of the “metaphysical reality” of sets.

Metaphysics. Traditional metaphysics (from Aristotle to Medieval to Leibniz) is concerned with mostly ontological problems such as: “being qua being” (existence in itself), existence of the world, of substances, what exists, how many substances there are, “first causes” (theology, rationality of the world, “logos”), “universals” (abstract terms, the unchanging), etc. Modern metaphysics (especially post Kant) has put more stress on problems of epistemology such as: sensibility, understanding, knowledge, the dichotomies of a priori/a posteriori and analytic/synthetic, the nature of space/time/causality, problems of consciousness (the mind/body problem, free will), problems of psychology, etc. Our presentation of Logic, and in particular of Mathematics, is as free as possible from both traditional and modern metaphysics. This is mostly done by ignoring the metaphysical problems that are inherent in Logic (as in the theory of meaning, reference, truth) and more generally in linguistics. These problems are real; but, as shown here, their solution does not seem to be required for a presentation of Mathematics. Remarkably, Gödel believed (along Leibniz’s suggestions and contrary to Kant’s critique) that traditional metaphysics can be made into an exact science; here is a quote from Gödel reproduced

in (Wang 1996): “Philosophy as an exact theory should do for metaphysics as much as Newton did for physics.” Again, according to Wang, Gödel believed that complicated abstract concepts (such as sets, which he viewed as concepts) can be perceived as clearly as simpler abstract concepts (such as syntactic combinatorics, which he also viewed as a system of concepts); he also seems to have confessed that he could not eventually find a satisfactory system of primitive notions for metaphysics.

Mock metaphysics. One can turn the tables and view metaphysics (especially its ontological aspects) as part of Logic by introducing a language $L_{metaphys}$ whose constants are *existence, world, God, this or that object*, etc., and whose predicates are *exists, predicates, is one, is infinite*, etc. This is doable and can be said to lead to a “mock metaphysics” which is a “mirror” of metaphysics inside Logic. One can iterate this move and create a mirror of the “mock metaphysics” (a “mock mock metaphysics”) inside Mathematics (i.e. inside Set Theory) in the same way in which Logic itself has a mirror inside Mathematics which is Mathematical Logic. Now recall Alain Badiou’s maxim that the metaphysics of existence qua existence *is nothing but Set Theory*. (By *Set Theory* Badiou seems to understand Cantor Set Theory or any metaphysically realist version of Set Theory.) This could then be transposed inside Mathematics by saying instead that, “the mock mock metaphysics [that we discussed above] is a chapter of the Set Theory T_{set} ” (where now *Set Theory T_{set}* is in the sense of our course, in particular T_{set} is just a text). The moral of the above discussion is that all these mock-ifications of metaphysics are not metaphysics itself and say nothing about metaphysics itself (in the same way in which the theorems of Mathematical Logic say nothing about Logic itself, simply because, being sentences in object language, they say nothing at all). The only way “mock mock metaphysics” can be relevant to metaphysics is to have its sentences translated into a natural language such as English. (In the same way Mathematical Logic can only be relevant to Mathematics after translation into English, say.) Such translations are suspect and easily lead to contradictions; this is why we made it a rule in our course to ignore translations from object languages. On the other hand if metaphysics is to exist at all it has to be a prerequisite of (or to incorporate) Logic. Our course is trying to avoid making metaphysics a prerequisite of Logic, though, and this seems to work if the project is modest enough. Introducing Mathematics seems to be one of these modest projects.

Varieties of nominalism. For the nominalist all that exists in connection with an abstract entity such as set, or number, or force, or mass, or God, is the corresponding word (as a physical mark on paper). One can arguably further subdivide nominalism into two types which we could call T and NT ; type T recognizes objective truth as a meaningful concept (mostly through a correspondence theory) whereas NT (which is a rather rare and radical variety) denies the meaningfulness of objective truth. The present course is written from the viewpoint of an NT type nominalism. The classical books of Quine (Quine 1980) and Putnam (Putnam 1971, Putnam 1981) reject nominalism based on their commitment to a concept of “objective truth.” Quine says (Quine 1980, p. 121) that he is adopting a “liberal ontology” (admitting classes, hence sets) while Putnam says (Putnam 1971, p. 23) that “reference to ‘classes’ [...] is indispensable to the science of logic.” In particular Putnam makes a strong case against what we referred to as type T nominalism. However he does not consider type NT nominalism as a possibility

and his arguments against type T do not seem to apply to type NT . There is one caveat in the assertion above that our approach is from the viewpoint of an NT nominalism; namely, although sentences in a language can be viewed as concrete objects (signs on a piece of paper), the theories T, T', \dots considered in this course may be accused of being non-nominalist entities (because, for instance, they are potentially infinite entities whose very consideration seems to imply an abstract conception). This accusation has some merit and the way this course implicitly responds to it is as follows. The more abstract our discussion about theories becomes (i.e. the more one starts using words such as *consistency*, *completeness*, etc.) the less is one allowed to metaprove metasentences involved in such discussion. In the limit, when discussion about theories becomes utterly abstract, the discussion transforms itself into “un-metaprovable babbling.” This is the very reason why this course defers all matters related to consistency and completeness to Mathematical Logic and essentially bans them from pre-mathematical Logic. What saves the day here is the ban on truth predicates *true/false*. The “babbling” referred to above is neither true nor false.

Variation on an argument of Mach. Here is an argument against realism in Mathematics. Assume one adopts a correspondence theory of truth in Mathematics (based on a realist position) and one considers a sentence such as, “*For any positive integer n there is a prime bigger than n .*” In order to ascertain the truth of such a sentence one needs to “check it” against “reality”. Assuming the “reality” of the integers the only way to check the above is to perform an experiment. Since we assume the actual infinity of the integers the only possible type of experiment is a “thought experiment”: one fixes, mentally, a positive integer n and one puts forward a procedure that constructs a prime bigger than n . But an objection to this can be raised similar to Mach’s objection to thought experiments in physics. Recall that Mach’s objection (originally addressing Newton’s “bucket experiment”) is that it is meaningless to talk about the outcome of a thought experiment if the conditions for the practical implementation of that experiment are inherently “impossible” to achieve. One should not accept thought experiments, for instance, that allow the size of the experimenter’s apparatus to be the size of the Earth itself because there is no way to know what would happen if this were the case. In the same way we do not know if the procedure to find a prime bigger than a given n would function as expected in case n is a number bigger, say, than the “number of atoms in the universe.” It is conceivable that the “rules of Logic” do not apply as expected to such an n . Similarly a thought experiment that starts with an “impossible” premise such as, “*Assume the whole universe, except the Earth, were to disappear...*,” should not be accepted; and in a similar vein mathematical proofs by contradiction (that usually start with an “impossible” premise as well) should not be accepted from a realist standpoint.

Variation on a maxim of Badiou. In the preface to (Badiou 2009) Alain Badiou says that, “today, natural belief is condensed in a single statement: *There are only bodies and languages.*” He then proposes to replace the 2 by 3 by introducing a “universal exception” as follows: *There are only bodies and languages, except there are truths.* What our approach amounts to is to the replace the 2 by 1 by introducing another “universal exception” as follows: *There are only bodies and*

languages, except all bodies are made of language. The latter point of view is sufficient for pure Mathematics but it is not appropriate, of course, for more ambitious philosophical endeavors. Indeed ontology is a matter of commitment and commitment is a pragmatic attitude. In this course we say that the only things we accept as existent are the signs on paper that can be assembled into languages (according to rules that are also expressed within yet another language). By this we simply mean that, when dealing with Mathematics, we *choose* to ignore everything else except language. This is a commitment based on a practical decision to develop a certain specific project. Such a position leaves room for more elaborate ontologies oriented towards more ambitious projects. One motivation for a more inclusive ontology would be that, with a minimal ontology that only recognizes the reality of language, there is no room for non-linguistic reference. Discussion of non-linguistic reference may become relevant, however, when we ask the following question: *What does Mathematical Logic say about Mathematics itself?*

Variation on the field metaphor of Quine. Here is an example of a more inclusive ontology that can be used to accommodate the interaction between Mathematics and natural sciences. It is the ontology implicit in this course and to present it we shall elaborate on a metaphor of Quine's (cf. Quine 2008, p. 43) using some Kantian jargon. One can image a sphere the things outside of which are called the *noumenal* world. The things inside the sphere are called *symbols*. Both the noumenal world and the symbolic world are viewed as empirical/physical: the symbols are for instance written or spoken; we just choose to view them as irreducible/simple entities rather than complexes of images, sounds, etc. Symbols are articulated into systems called languages. The articulation itself is encoded into other languages and hence into other systems of symbols. There are various dynamical reports between the various languages (translations, reference, etc.) which are encoded into yet another language, etc. The noumenal world acts like a *boundary condition* (in a sense similar to that encountered in the theory of partial differential equations). The symbolic world acts like a *field*. The field adjusts itself according to the boundary conditions; in particular Logic itself is part of the field and adjusts itself to the noumenal world. The law according to which this adjustment takes place is one that seeks equilibrium (i.e. simplicity/intelligibility) very much like Maupertuis' law of minimum action. But this law does not correspond to a "noumenal law"; it is rather a law obeyed by the "symbolic world". The surface of the sphere is the *phenomenal* world. The strings of symbols close to the surface are *concepts*. The strings of symbols closer to the center of the sphere are the *ideas*. There is no direct relation (in particular semantic relation) between specific things outside the sphere such as the "real" planets and specific things inside the sphere such as the word *force*; the way the outside influences the inside is purely global (as in the case of boundary conditions influencing a field). The above metaphor is still "nominalist" but its ontology is more generous than the one adopted in this book. An interesting question related to this metaphor is: what are the "field equations"? Can they be written in one of the languages inside the sphere? This corresponds, in the metaphor above, to one of the main projects of critical philosophy.

Variation on Tarski's theory of truth. In a realist model theory (that is based on the maximal ontology of Cantor sets or on any other similar realist ontology), one classically says that a sentence P in an object language is *true in a*

model M (intuitively in a “possible world” *M*) if the sentence becomes *true* as a sentence “about the elements of *M*.” This classical definition of truth in a (realist) model (essentially due to Tarski) does not solve the problem of defining truth; it just defines truth in *L* in terms of truth about Cantor (or other realist) sets. But truth about Cantor sets is left undefined! One way around this dilemma is to ascend one step by reproducing the whole Tarski scheme inside Mathematical Logic, as opposed to pre-mathematical Logic. The result is a “formal” version of Tarski’s scheme. But being formal, this version has no semantic content, hence no direct report with the non-formal version of Tarski’s scheme.

Intension, extension, ostention. Classically the *intension* of a predicate in a language is its “dictionary” definition. So what we call *definition* of a new predicate in our course (e.g. *an astrochicken is a thing which is both a chicken and a spaceship*) corresponds to the intension of the predicate *is an astrochicken*. On the other hand the *extension* of a predicate *P* is, classically, the collection of all “objects in the world” that can be predicated by *P*, i.e. of which *P* is “true.” The set $\{x \in A \mid P(x)\}$ attached to a formula *P* corresponds to the idea of “extension of *P*” (although the requirement that $x \in A$ is a severe restriction to the concept of extension). Finally there is a third way to fix predicates in a language, namely by *ostention*, i.e. by pointing, e.g. by pointing to an astrochicken and saying, “*this is an astrochicken*”. As the very example we gave shows, ostention leads to a very limited array of definitions; in particular it cannot be used to define *astrochickens* simply because there seems to be none that one can point at.

Similarity and reference. Similarity theory of reference holds that reference is based on the similarity between our thoughts and reality. It was thoroughly criticized by empiricists like Locke and, at a deeper level by Kant and all the resulting German idealist tradition, down to the internalist project of Putnam, say. For an example showing that similarity does not imply reference see (Putnam 1981); Putnam’s example is that of an ant tracing a line in the sand that is a recognizable caricature of Winston Churchill: here we have similarity without reference. And of course reference does not imply similarity as one can see in the example of the “*three feet long table*” whose mental image is *not* three feet long and indeed has no length at all. Interestingly, the similarity theory of reference is upheld by Wittgenstein in his Tractatus. He says “*There must be something identical in a picture and what it depicts, to enable the one to be a picture of the other at all.*” (Wittgenstein, 2.161). Here reference is viewed as based on similarity of form between language and reality, an extreme version of the correspondence theory of truth. The first sentence of the Tractatus reads, “*The world is all that is the case.*” This seems to identify the world with what is being said about the world, an extreme form of correspondence theory.

Indeterminacy of meaning. In our presentation the meaning of a sentence is *defined* to be the totality of all available translations of the sentence. The catch word here is “available”; it implies that the translations are viewed as given (via a dictionary and the grammar of paraphrases). But of course, for the philosophy of language, the problem that needs to be answered is: if meaning is defined in terms of translations then how are translations (e.g. dictionaries, grammars) possible if meaning is not yet present? For an illuminating discussion of these issues see

(Quine 1980, Chapter III) and (Quine 1964). One of the main ideas in *loc.cit.* is that meaning is underdetermined (i.e. there is no way to fix it through the concept of logical truth). Cf. especially Quine's careful discussion of radical translation (i.e. translation from/to an unknown language) in (Quine 1964), in particular his description of what would take to create a Jungle-to-English dictionary (where Jungle is the language of a remote tribe none of whose speakers speak English). The creation of such a dictionary would require a detailed interaction with the members of the tribe such as sequences of questions that would identify their words for *yes* and *no* as well as their words for particular objects such as rabbits. This dictionary work would actually not guarantee that the Jungle word that we translate as *rabbit* in English actually refers to *rabbit* and does not refer to *a part of the rabbit* or *an instance of rabbit-hood*, etc. Quine's discussion is mostly relevant to natural (as opposed to artificial/formal) languages. For the (artificial) language of Set Theory (i.e. of Mathematics) the issue of meaning can be, in principle, completely avoided. Nevertheless, the metalanguage needed to operate with the language of Set Theory is treated in our course as a natural language and its own meaning (that was not discussed in the book) requires further clarification.

Reference versus meaning. This issue goes back to Frege's breakthrough in the philosophy of language. Frege's famous example is: the "morning star" and the "evening star" were discovered at some point, to have the same reference (to refer to the same physical star). Now the sentence "The morning star is identical to the evening star" makes the claim that the two stars are one; and the meaning of this sentence is this claim. But this claim goes beyond the reference of its terms. So meaning and reference are not the same thing. Put differently, if meaning and reference were the same thing then the sentence above would be a tautology which it is not because it accounts for an empirical discovery. In our course references to things such as stars are ignored because we ignore non-linguistic reference. However linguistic reference is being considered in the form of metalanguage referring to language. Also meaning is being considered in the form of translations between object languages. The main difference between reference and meaning comes, in our course, from the fact that translations (in their simplest word for word form) attach constants to constants, predicates to predicates, etc., (hence they preserve logical categories) while linguistic reference attaches sentences, and even sequences of sentences, in object languages to constants in metalanguage, connectives and quantifiers in object language to functional symbols in metalanguage, etc. (hence it shifts logical categories). In the case of not-word-for-word translations logical categories are also shifted but only in the small and never in the large; for instance sentences in one language are always sent into sentences. Also we postulate that translations preserve reference; i.e. if L and L' have a reference and if P is a sentence in L whose translation in L' is P' then P and P' have the same reference.

About the phylogeny of reference and meaning: this is mostly an anthropological (rather than philosophical) problem. One modern answer (Cassirer 1951) involves the insights of the history of mythical thought, from its first stage of "momentary" deities (perceived as spontaneous apparitions accompanying concrete objects such as this or that tree) to more permanent deities (functioning as names for abstract concepts such as the general concept of storm, crop, etc.). Another modern answer (put forward by many including Bronowski, rejected by many, including Putnam) involves natural selection. The meaning of the concept of "cause,"

for instance, could have been fixed as follows. Say that hominid *A* throws a rock at hominid *B* and, as a result, hominid *B* dies. Hominid *C* witnesses the scene and his mental apparatus produces the following description of the events: “*The cause of death of hominid B was A’s intension to kill B with a rock*”. Let us also assume that another hominid, *D*, witnesses the same scene and *his* mental apparatus produces the following description of the events: “*The cause of death of hominid B was the property of B’s head to attract rocks present in A’s hand*”. Now hominid *C* will survive by being careful to avoid hominids such as *A*; then *C* will have offspring who will inherit his particular mental wiring. Hominid *D*, on the other hand, will probably die soon at the hands of the likes of *A*; he will have no offspring and his type of mental wiring will not be inherited by anybody. After generations most hominids will have a mental wiring similar to *C*’s; the category of “causality” with its more or less fixed meaning will have emerged in this way. This would explain not only the meaning and reference of the abstract term “causality” but also the origin of the a priori form of understanding (in Kant’s sense) of “causality.” Whether or not such an account has merit is beyond our scope here.

About the ontogeny of reference and meaning: the problem is how reference and meaning are fixed in a given individual. There are rival theories, for which we refer, for instance, to (Quine 1964) and (Chomsky 2006) respectively.

Grammatical analysis. Earlier we said that logical analysis of sentences in English is quite different from grammatical analysis. Let us take a quick look at the latter in the following simple example. Consider the following sentence in English:

“*The father of Socrates is a king.*”

The grammatical (as opposed to logical) categories here are:

- nouns: *Socrates, father, king*
- verbs: *is*
- determinators: *a, the*

The sentence (S) above is constructed from a noun phrase (NP) “*the father of Socrates*” followed by a verb phrase (VP) “*is a king.*” The noun phrase “*the father of Socrates*” is constructed from the noun phrase “*the father*” and the prepositional phrase (PP) “*of Socrates.*” The noun phrase “*the father*” is constructed from a determinator (D) “*the*” and a noun phrase which itself consists of a noun (N) “*father.*” The prepositional phrase “*of Socrates*” is constructed from a preposition (P) “*of*” and a noun phrase which itself consists of a noun, “*Socrates.*” The verb phrase “*is a king*” is constructed from a verb (V) “*is,*” and a noun phrase “*a king.*” The latter is constructed from a determinator (D) “*a,*” and a noun (N) “*king.*” One can represent the above grammatical analysis as an array:

<i>S</i>						
<i>NP</i>			<i>VP</i>			
<i>NP</i>	<i>PP</i>			<i>V</i>	<i>NP</i>	
<i>D</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>P</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>V</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>N</i>
the	father	of	Socrates	is	a	king

The above may be referred to as a *grammatical sentence formation*; such a formation is something quite different from the (logical) *formula/sentence formations* based on logical analysis. One can add edges to the array above as follows: each entry *X*

in a given row is linked by an edge to the closest entry Y in the previous row that is above or to the left of X . In this way we get an inverted tree. Such inverted trees are a basic tool in the work of Chomsky on generative grammar, for instance. Alternatively one can encode the information contained in a grammatical sentence formation as follows. One enriches English by adding separators $[_S$ and $]_S$ for sentences, $[_{NP}$ and $]_{NP}$ for noun phrases, etc., and one encodes the above sentence formation as a string of words in this enriched English:

$$[_S[_{NP}[_{NP}[_D\text{the}]_D[_N\text{father}]_N]_{NP}]_{NP}[_{PP}[_P\text{of}]_P[_N\text{Socrates}]_N]_{PP}]_{NP}[_{VP}\dots]_{VP}]_S.$$

Grammatical sentence formations are obtained by applying substitution rules symbolically written, for instance, as

$$\begin{aligned} S &\rightarrow NP VP \\ NP &\rightarrow NP PP \\ VP &\rightarrow V NP \\ NP &\rightarrow D NP \\ NP &\rightarrow N \\ PP &\rightarrow P NP \\ N &\rightarrow \text{father} \\ N &\rightarrow \text{Socrates} \\ &\text{etc.} \end{aligned}$$

More complicated rules are, of course, present in English. On the other hand very simple “super-rules” that generate these complicated rules in virtually all languages have been discovered. This way of looking at natural languages such as English has deep consequences in psychology and the philosophy of mind; however this approach does not seem appropriate for the study of languages such as Formal or other languages of interest to science and Mathematics. Mathematics requires logical (rather than grammatical) analysis.

“Self-defeating” philosophical positions. It has often been claimed that skepticism, nihilism, and historicism are self-defeating philosophical positions. However these claims can be refuted if one consistently applies the distinction between language and metalanguage.

Here are the details.

A person A who maintains that skepticism is a self-defeating philosophical position usually argues as follows: if the skeptic B says “I am a skeptic” then B should be skeptic about his/her own statement so his/her position cannot be upheld, hence is “self-defeating.” However a person C who accepts the distinction between languages and metalanguage could refute A as follows: “I am a skeptic,” says C , should be paraphrased as a collection \hat{S} of metasentences \hat{P} in the metalanguage \hat{L} (one for each constant P in \hat{L} which is the name of a sentence in a language L) of the form:

$$\hat{P} = \text{“}I \text{ am skeptical about } P\text{”}.$$

What A actually does, says C , is to claim that the string of symbols

$$\hat{\hat{P}} = \text{“}I \text{ am skeptical about } \hat{P}\text{”}$$

belongs to \hat{S} ; but this is an error on the part of A , says C , because \hat{P} is not the name of a sentence in L but the name of sentence in \hat{L} . So $\hat{\hat{P}}$ is not syntactically correct hence, according to C , A 's argument does not work.

Similarly it has been maintained that nihilism is a self-defeating philosophical position. (This was repeatedly used to make a case against Nietzsche, for instance.) A person A who maintains that nihilism is a self-defeating philosophical position usually argues as follows: if the nihilist B says “Nothing has value” then B should agree that his/her own opinion has no value which makes that opinion self-defeating. However a person C who accepts the distinction between languages and metalanguage could refute A as follows: “Nothing has value” should be paraphrased, says C, as a collection S of sentences \hat{c} in the language L (one for each constant c in L) of the form:

\hat{c} =“ c has no value”.

What A actually does, says C, is to claim that the string of symbols

$\hat{\hat{c}}$ =“ \hat{c} has no value”

belongs to S ; but this is an error on the part of A, says C, because \hat{c} is not a constant in L but a constant in \hat{L} . So $\hat{\hat{c}}$ is not syntactically correct hence, according to C, A’s argument does not work.

Similarly it has been maintained that historicism in philosophy is a self-defeating position. (This was repeatedly used to make a case against Hegel, Marx, Foucault, etc., for instance.) A person A who maintains that historicism in philosophy is a self-defeating position usually argues as follows: if the historicist B says “Every philosopher merely expresses the view of his/her society/class at one historical moment” then B should agree that his/her own opinion is an expression of his/her society/class at one historical moment which makes that opinion non-objective and hence self-defeating. However a person C who accepts the distinction between languages and metalanguage could refute A as follows: “Every philosopher merely expresses the position of his/her society/class at one historical moment” should be paraphrased, says C, as a collection \hat{S} of sentences \hat{P} in the metalanguage \hat{L} (one for each constant P in \hat{L} which is the name of a sentence in L) of the form:

\hat{P} =“*The sentence P merely reflects the position of its author’s society/class at one historical moment*”.

What A actually does, says C, is to claim that the string of symbols

$\hat{\hat{P}}$ =“*The sentence \hat{P} merely reflects the position of its author’s society/class at one historical moment*”

belongs to \hat{S} ; but this is an error on the part of A, says C, because \hat{P} is not the name of a sentence in L but the name of a sentence in \hat{L} . So $\hat{\hat{P}}$ is not syntactically correct hence, according to C, A’s argument does not work.

Appendix 2

In what follows we shall offer a series of remarks on the history of philosophy with special emphasis on the development of ideas relevant to Logic and Mathematics. Since we shall be using the word “logic” liberally in what follows we will use the words “first order Logic” to mean “Logic as presented in this course” and we will use the words “first order theory” to mean “a theory in the sense of first order Logic.” We also recall that philosophy considers questions about existence (ontology), knowledge (epistemology), and value (axiology). We will mostly ignore here axiology and concentrate on aspects of ontology and epistemology.

There are two ways to look at our remarks below.

1. One way is to view these remarks as offering a glimpse into ontologies and epistemologies other than the ones adopted in this course.
2. Another way is to view these remarks as guides into seeing each of the ontological systems below as a possible first order theory and each of the epistemological systems below as discourses in Metalanguage.

So the first view contrasts philosophical systems with first order theories while the second view suggests a reinterpretation of the ontological systems in terms of first order theories. According to the second view, the various words that these ontological systems operate with can be viewed as either constants or predicates or functions in a first order theory. (Examples of such words are: existence, attribute, substance, senses, experience, thinking, doubting, infinity, space, time, causality, necessity, freedom, quantity, quality, intuition, absolute, spirit, negation, universal law, human nature, alienation, justice, the good, beauty, etc.) Descriptions or even definitions for these words are given by the authors of these systems, basic assumptions are being postulated which can be viewed as axioms, and some deductions are carried out that can be viewed as “proofs of theorems.” No philosophical text (with the possible exception of Spinoza’s Ethics) attempts to follow this pattern rigorously. It was one of Leibniz’s dreams, however, and one of Gödel’s dreams as well, that philosophy can be made rigorous in this way. All of the above amounts to turning ontological systems into “mock metaphysics” expressed in first order (object) languages and theories. On the other hand, as already mentioned, one can turn the epistemologies of these philosophical systems into rules of Metalanguage; examples are the various classifications of sentences (judgements) into “analytic,” “synthetic,” “a priori,” “a posteriori,” (in Leibniz and Kant), the philosophies of logic in Hegel and Russell, the philosophy of language in Wittgenstein, the philosophy of science in Carnap, etc. Needless to say ontologies and epistemologies are not clearly separated in the history of philosophy so reinterpreting these as first order theories in object languages versus discourses in Metalanguage exhibits a certain

arbitrariness. It is for this reason that we will not attempt, in what follows, to reformulate the ontologies of various philosophies as first order theories; and we will not attempt to reformulate the corresponding epistemologies as discourses in Meta-language. However an attempt to do this in special cases would be an interesting exercise that we recommend to the reader.

Remarks on Aristotle. The syntax of first order Logic is close to (but does not coincide with) that presented in Aristotle's *Categories*. When analyzing a sentence like "Snow is white" first order Logic views "snow" as a "constant" and "is white" as a "predicate." Aristotle, however, refers to "snow" and "white" as both being "things," he calls "snow" a "subject," and he says that "white" is predicable of the subject "snow." One also says that "white" is an attribute of "snow" or that "snow" has the attribute "white." More generally the above analysis applies to sentences of the form " A is B ." Aristotle also says that some things A are "present in a subject" B by which he means what we would probably express as " A is a property of B ." (He insists that " A is present in B " not as a part in the whole because A is assumed to be "incapable of existence apart from B "; this latter concept is not syntactic but ontological.) So "whiteness" is not predicable of any subject (one cannot say that "this thing is whiteness"). Also whiteness is present in snow. (This is to be contrasted with Plato's theory of ideas. Plato would say that "whiteness" is an idea, it exists apart from snow and indeed its kind of existence is more robust than that of snow. Similarly, the objects of Mathematics, as well as Beauty, Justice, etc. are ideas existing independently and more robustly than the things of the sensible world.) Aristotle defines "substance" as a thing which is not predicable of any subject and is not present in any subject; for instance Socrates is a substance but whiteness is not. Substances have no contraries or variation in degrees. Other categories apart from substances are discussed such as: quantity, quality, priority/simultaneity, movement, etc. He says that quantity has no contrary: "small" and "big" are not contrary to each other because if A is bigger than B and B is bigger than C then B is both big (because bigger than B) and small (because smaller than A) so B would have two contradictory properties; this contrasts with the concept of relation in modern Logic and can be viewed (as Russell does) as a confusion between "is big" (a unary predicate) and "is bigger than" (a binary predicate/relation). A discussion of quantification (as in "all A are B ," "some A are B ," "no A is B ," etc) and syllogisms (as in "from A and B it follows that C ") is made in Aristotle's *Prior Analytics*. A detailed analysis of proofs (axioms, definitions, and various types of proofs, including proofs by contradiction) and a discussion of knowledge in general (causes, truth) is made in *Posterior Analytics*.

From the viewpoint of first order Logic Aristotle's language L_{Arist} contains constants such as "Socrates," "white," "whiteness," etc. One has binary predicates "is predicable of" and "is present in." One defines the unary predicate "is a substance" by saying that "for all x , x is a substance if and only if for all y different from x we have that x is not predicable of y and x is not present in y ." One can attempt to continue this type of analysis of Aristotle's system (and of other systems described below) by turning it into a "mock metaphysics" (see above) but we shall not pursue this any further.

Remarks on rationalism. This is mainly represented by Descartes, Spinoza, Leibniz, and can be viewed as the peak of the “classical metaphysics” originated by Aristotle. They based their ontologies on modified versions of Aristotle’s notion of substance. Motivated by different types of arguments (and sensibilities) they postulated different theories of substance as follows.

Descartes postulated that there exist two and only two substances called matter (which possesses the attribute of extension) and mind (which possesses the attribute of thinking). The two substances must interact (we know this from our day to day life) but the problem of how that happens (the mind-body problem) was never solved by Descartes: how can a non material thing (mind) move a material thing (the body)? (The only interaction admitted by Descartes is mechanical interaction by immediate contact/collision/pressure; but non-material things cannot produce movement by collision/pressure.) At one point Descartes tried to identify the place of the interaction of mind and matter in the pineal gland. (Descartes’ mechanistic theory of interaction was subsequently demolished by Newton’s theory of forces acting at a distance; Newton’s paradigm was viewed by his contemporaries, as well as by himself, as a reintroduction of the “occult sympathies” of medieval philosophy but the practical success of Newton’s theory was so overwhelming that it led to the dethroning of Descartes’ physics.) The existence of individual mind in Descartes is more certain than the existence of material bodies. However doubting plus the “cogito” can be used to “prove” that the individual mind exists; for a first order theory giving this see Example 6.2. There is a (somewhat problematic) deduction of the existence of God from the existence of individual mind (based on the postulated fact that the idea of perfection in mind must come from a being that has that perfection; without that being, it is maintained, the idea cannot occur because, it is implied, ideas are mirror images of beings). Finally from the existence of God the existence of the World is deduced.

Spinoza postulated that there exists only one substance (which possesses infinitely many attributes two of which are extension and thought; the rest of the attributes are not knowable by Man); he called this substance God and viewed objects and men as “wrinkles” in this substance (a view very much like that of contemporary theoretical physics). His Ethics is written in the form of Euclid’s Elements: the claims are Propositions for which proofs are provided.

Leibniz postulated that there exist infinitely many substances called monads or souls (which possess attributes such as perception and appetite but not extension). Hence monads have no parts; they can be visualized as geometric points. Each monad A perceives (more or less clearly) the other monads (the image in Leibniz is that of rays coming from all directions and converging to one geometric point, A) but no two monads interact. The apparent interaction of various parts of reality is due to a “pre-established harmony” of monads (the metaphor is that of the clocks that show the same time without interacting). No two monads have the same qualities (Leibniz’ principle of identity of indiscernibles). Some monads are more conscious than others. The souls of men are more conscious than the monads that compose the body of men. God is the most conscious monad. Space consists in the distribution of monads and does not exist independently of the monads; there is no empty space. (This is in deep contrast with Newton’s physics where empty space exists independently of the matter in it and functions like God’s “sensorium.”) The world we live in is the best of all possible worlds (a view ridiculed by Voltaire in

Candide, for instance). A world is “the best” if it allows the largest variety of things to co-exist: it has the largest amount of “compossibles.” So “the best” is defined in logical terms. In particular one can justify by this the presence of evil (since evil creates the possibility of good). Everything happens due to a reason (the principle of “sufficient reason”). Infinite chains of reasons can only be apprehended by God; Man’s inability to apprehend infinite chains of reasons creates the illusion of chance. Propositions (sentences) that are true can be divided into truths of reason (analytic) and truths of fact (synthetic). Analytic propositions are those which can be found to be true by virtue of analysis of the terms involved; an example is “All men are animals” which is true because “man” is defined as an animal with a specific list of properties. Analytic propositions follow from Logic only, independently of “facts.” Synthetic propositions are those which are not analytic; an example is “There is a dog under my table”; the truth of this cannot be found by analyzing the words “dog,” “table,” etc., but rather one needs to analyze the “facts” as well. Synthetic propositions do not appear as necessary (they are contingent) to Man but they appear as necessary to God who can apprehend the infinite chains of reasons for them to be true. There should exist a symbolic “calculus” that could decide all philosophical questions; Leibniz’ attempt at such a calculus can be viewed as a precursor of Mathematical Logic. It is no coincidence that Leibniz also invented the “calculus” of Mathematics (integration and derivation) as a general machinery for solving mathematical problems.

Remarks on empiricism. In opposition to rationalism which is implicitly based on the assumption that reason is the sole reliable source of knowledge (Descartes) classical British empiricism (Locke, Hume, Berkeley) held that the sole reliable source of knowledge are sensations (acquired by sight, hearing, smell, etc.)

Locke was the first to distinguish between primary qualities of objects (shape, movement, etc.) and secondary qualities (color, sound, smell, etc.); primary qualities were postulated to belong to the objects whereas secondary qualities were postulated to “appear” to us without being entirely “attributable” to objects. (This distinction was later abolished by Kant who postulated that there are no primary qualities. A similar view was actually expressed by Leibniz in correspondence but he did not elaborate on this.)

Hume was the first to subject causality to a careful analysis. His radical idea was that since causality (the claim that event A is the cause of event B) does not correspond to a “thing” that can be detected by our senses (that has a shape, sound, smell, etc.) one needs to view causality as a superfluous concept.

Berkeley pushed empiricism to its limit: absolute skepticism. Since the only knowledge we have comes from senses there is nothing real except what the senses are giving us: the “outside” reality is abolished.

Remarks on Kant. His system is a synthesis of rationalism and empiricism. Such a synthesis may be viewed as surprising because rationalism and empiricism seem, at first sight, incompatible; but in fact Kant’s synthesis also implied the rejection of various elements of both these doctrines. In particular Kant rejected both the classical metaphysics from Aristotle to the rationalists (e.g., their reliance on the concept of substance) and the skepticism/idealism of “extreme” empiricism (found, for instance in Berkeley). Kant, who was originally a Leibnizian, says that his reading of Hume woke him up from his “dogmatic slumber.” To explain

Kant's synthesis of rationalism and empiricism one can proceed as follows. Before Kant (e.g., in Leibniz) the division between analytic and synthetic propositions was taken to coincide with the division between a priori and a posteriori propositions. A priori propositions are those that are independent of experience. A posteriori propositions are those that depend on experience. Also recall from Leibniz that analytic propositions are those which can be found to be true by virtue of analysis of the terms involved while synthetic propositions are those which are not analytic. So the view before Kant was that a proposition is analytic if and only if it is a priori. Kant calls propositions by the name of judgements. Kant's thesis is that, although all analytic judgements are a priori it is not the case that all a priori judgements are analytic: there exist also synthetic a priori judgements. In fact Kant maintained that all judgements of geometry (respectively arithmetic) are synthetic a priori because, according to him, their truth is independent of experience but also depends on an extra-logical intuition of space (respectively time) which is, we would say, "wired into our brains." (The intuition of time is encapsulated in the sequence 1, 2, 3, ... which "measures" the passing of time.) Similarly, according to Kant, the laws of physics (and, implicitly, causality) are synthetic a priori because they are not purely logical (so they are synthetic) but they are universal (so a priori). Kant's explanation (in his Critique of Pure Reason or his Prolegomena) as to how synthetic a priori judgements are possible (and in particular why geometry, arithmetic, and physics agree with experience) is as follows. There is a "noumenal" world (of things as they are in themselves) and a "phenomenal" world (of things as they appear to us, i.e., of which we have an experience). Experience is constructed from perceptions (which "correspond," in an unknowable way, to noumena which are themselves unknowable) with the help of two procedures: one regulated by intuition and the other regulated by the categories of understanding; both are "wired in us". The forms of intuition are space and time. Among categories is causality. So space, time, and causality are "wired in us" and constitute some of the very conditions for the existence of experience itself; as a result experience is built based on the principles of geometry, arithmetic, and physical law and hence must conform to these automatically. Note that intuition and categories only apply to phenomena (as conditions for the existence of phenomena) and never to noumena. In particular judgements made about the World as a whole (viewed as a noumenon) or about God (viewed as a noumenon) lead to contradictions (antinomies): e.g., the problem of the finiteness of the World in time or space is an "ill posed" problem because time and space only apply to phenomena. The World as a whole and God are, for Kant, what he calls ideas and can be viewed as "limits" that can be approached but never attained by reason. As to categories, they are "parallel" to the forms of judgement (hence to syntactical concepts). Causality corresponds to hypothetical judgements (if...then...). Other categories are: unity, plurality, reality, negation, possibility, existence, etc., corresponding to universal judgements (for all $x...$), particular judgements (involving constants), affirmative judgements, negative judgements (it is not the case that...), problematical judgements (it is possible that...), existential judgements (there exists $x...$), etc., respectively. The forms of judgement essentially go back to Aristotle; Kant's original thesis is that they "correspond" to categories, hence to conditions of possibility for experience.

A standard argument against Kant's view on geometry (which in his time meant Euclidean geometry) is based on the discovery, after Kant's time, of non-Euclidean

geometries. The argument is that since there exist several incompatible geometries they cannot be all part of our intuition. However this argument does not seem to invalidate Kant. Indeed one can argue that our brains are wired consistently with the laws of Euclidean geometry while the non-Euclidean geometry of physics, although it provides an appropriate description of experience, apparently violates our intuition hence cannot be part of our intuition; we cannot “intuit” curved space except through embedding it into a higher dimensional Euclidean space. This would vindicate Kant.

Another argument against Kant’s view on geometry is that there are two types of geometries: one type is mathematical (all these geometries, Euclidean or not, are analytical and a priori) and the other type is physical (which is synthetic and a posteriori). This view (to be found in Russell and Carnap) assumes space is in the noumena (it assumes the objective reality of space) so this argument against Kant has actually nothing to do with the existence of non-Euclidean geometries but rather with the relation between space and noumena. The distinction between mathematical and physical geometries was already made (implicitly) by Gauss and (explicitly) by Hilbert, Poincaré, and Einstein (but not necessarily as a rejection of Kant).

Yet another argument made against Kant is that his view on the synthetic a priori nature of Mathematics appears today to be wrong in that Mathematics has been reduced today to Logic (so it is totally analytic). This argument misses an important aspect of Mathematics. Indeed, although Mathematics, viewed as a first order theory, seems to be entirely analytic it seems that, at the same time, Mathematical Practice (the invention/discovery and application of Mathematics) has an essential synthetic aspect: Mathematical Practice requires the Kantian “intuitions” and this (rather than analyticity) is, arguably, the essence of Mathematics. This seems to vindicate Kant’s view on Mathematics and (by similar arguments) his view on physics. But note that such a position needs an ontology that is more generous than that of Formalism.

Here is an argument against Kant’s view on causality (cf., for instance, Russell). Perceptions, according to Kant, are assumed, the argument goes, to be caused by noumena. But causality is a category and categories only apply to phenomena, a contradiction. This contradiction, Russell says, seems to not have been grasped by Kant. Yet there seems to be an easy way out of this contradiction by assuming that there are two (entirely different) types of causality: one that is a category and one that is a relation between noumena and perceptions; the two types of causality could/should be called by two different names and the contradiction disappears.

A propos of noumena and phenomena, the problem of free will in Kant is resolved as follows. Man can be viewed from two different points of view, as noumenon and as phenomenon. If viewed as phenomenon Man is subject to the law of causation (like every phenomenon) so Man is not free; but when viewed as noumenon he is not subject to the law of causation (no noumenon is) so Man is free. This concept of freedom, as something residing in noumenon (rather than in mind, e.g., in reason), played an essential role in the romantic conception of Man in the 19th century (cf. Goethe, Schiller, etc.) On the other hand Kant’s ethics (presented in his Critique of Practical Reason or his Metaphysics of Morals) is entirely “non-romantic”: a good action is defined as one that can be willed to become a universal law. The prescription “Do the Good” with Good defined in logical terms as above

is called by Kant the categorical imperative. This is to be contrasted with hypothetical imperatives which are of the form “If you want to go to Heaven then do the Good.” So the Good consists in obeying a rational, self-imposed, disinterested, logically necessary law and has nothing to do with our freedom as noumena or with the conditional “If... then....”.

Remarks on Hegel. Hegel’s Logic is both a Logic and an Ontology. It is posited that only one thing exists and that thing is referred to as the Absolute. However the Absolute is not a substance like Spinoza’s unique substance because the Absolute undergoes changes: its attributes change. This change can be said to introduce time in the picture and this is one of Hegel’s great contributions to philosophy. The Absolute seems to possess a mind/soul/spirit which is referred to as Geist. Geist thinks and evolves (towards self-awareness and self-knowledge) through thinking. It thinks through sentences. No sentence is entirely true or false because it can only reflect a part of the Absolute. The movement of the sentences follows the following pattern (Hegel’s dialectic). To every sentence which can be called “thesis” one can oppose another sentence called an “antithesis” (which is a form of negation of the thesis); they are both, in different ways, “provisionally true.” Then the “thesis” and the “antithesis” are “reconciled” into a third sentence called “synthesis.” The “synthesis” becomes a new thesis for which a new antithesis is found after which a new synthesis is found. (One can see the contrast with classical Logic where a sentence and its negation cannot be simultaneously “affirmed.” For Hegel there is no proof of an “eternal” sentence. There is only a quest, achieved by successive negations and syntheses, for more and more embracing judgements. Such a Logic must be contrasted with that employed by Mathematics viewed as a first order theory, which aims for “eternal” sentences. However Hegel’s Logic may apply to the Mathematical Practice (including the history/evolution of mathematical ideas.) The beginning of Logic starts with the thesis affirming Being. The antithesis affirms Nothingness. And the synthesis affirms Becoming. In this way concepts come into existence and acquire a more and more complex content. It is then claimed (cf. Hegel’s Philosophy of History) that the history of mankind runs a course that is parallel to that of Geist. Geist’s direction is towards self-consciousness. The history’s direction is towards “freedom.” In the early empires only one was free (the emperor); in classical Greece some were free (the non-slaves); in modern societies (constitutional monarchies of the 19th century, especially in Prussia) all men are free. However by “freedom” Hegel understands something close to Kant’s ethic concept of Good rather than Kant’s concept of noumenal freedom: as Russell puts it Hegel’s freedom is the freedom to obey the State. In fairness to Hegel, the State is viewed by him as the realization of the rational Good. Unlike Kant’s philosophy which was greatly influenced by the successes of mathematical physics of the 18th century and influenced in its turn the scientific thinking of the 19th and 20th centuries, Hegel’s Logic seems to be disconnected from, and of no relevance to, sciences and Mathematics viewed as first order theories. Hegel’s Logic arguably applies, however, to the history of Mathematics and sciences and more generally to history as a whole. Hegel’s dialectic, interpreted as an identity game that is being played between contraries does play a role in first order Logic but only at the stage where one sets up the definitions and axioms of a theory (cf. the discussion in Wang 1996); once axioms and definitions are fixed the resulting theories are viewed as “frozen for eternity” and immune to dialectic.

It is largely as a reaction to Hegel that Marx in mid 19th century developed dialectical materialism. Roughly speaking, he considered a variant of Hegel's system in which he replaced Hegel's Geist by Praxis (especially economics) while maintaining Hegel's dialectic method. Like Hegel, Marx applied his theory to history but not to science and Mathematics viewed as first order theories. History, according to Marx, is governed by a universal law: the direction of history is towards the freedom of Man from alienation; alienation, originally a Hegelian term, is used here in the sense of alienation from one own's nature. The nature of Man involves self-realization; this view is, in some sense, influenced by Romanticism. However the universal law referred to above is inspired by the science of the time, in particular by Darwin's theories. As noted by Russell, among others, Marx's materialist ontology is not a simple repetition of the naive Greek materialism (Democritus, for instance). In Marx the "really existent" is a relation between Nature and the intervention of Man.

Remarks on Nietzsche. His ontology is extravagant: the thesis of the Eternal Return (everything that happens will happen again infinitely many times, a thesis that he tried to justify "scientifically" by invoking an argument in the style of Poincaré's Recurrence Theorem) and the thesis of the Superman (an exalted/messianic vision of the future of Man as a free, audacious, and creative agent: the Man, or dominant Man, of the future is either a warrior aristocrat, or a genius artist, or a combination of these). His most important work is in axiology or rather in the negation of all axiology: cf. his work on the "revaluation of all values," an effort, in fact, to demolish (without any real effort to replace) all the values (the "idols," as he calls them) of our civilization including science, religion, and morality. A superb stylist and an unapologetic iconoclast, profoundly influential in the 20th century culture and sometimes grossly misinterpreted (his legacy hijacked by Nazi Germany). Uninterested in epistemology, and inconsequential in Logic or Mathematics.

Remarks on phenomenology. This includes work by Husserl, Heidegger, Sartre and others in the 20th century. With Heidegger and Sartre this led to their brands of existentialism. The starting idea is that since (accepting Kant) the noumenon is not accessible one should "bracket" it (Husserl's terminology) and concentrate on the phenomenon. So the main task of philosophy is to have consciousness analyze itself. A mathematical-like analysis of consciousness was undertaken by Husserl. An analysis of the various possible types of existence (with the implicit realization that not everything exists in the same way) was undertaken by Heidegger (his concept of Being and Dasein) and Sartre (being in itself and being for itself). For Sartre "being in itself" is, for instance, the being of a rock: in such a case, he says, essence precedes existence in the sense that what the rock "is" (its essence) dictates its fixed being in the world (its existence). On the other hand "being for itself" is the being of Man: in such a case, he says, existence precedes essence in the sense that what each man "is" (its essence) is dictated by man's free choices (which "are" his existence). Implicit in this doctrine is the absolute freedom of Man (within a situation, another basic concept in Sartre). Man can pretend to be non-free (i.e., entirely determined by situation): what results is "bad faith," a form of self-deception which, according to Sartre, is a betrayal of Man's true nature. All this discussion makes ontology have direct axiological implications. Note that one of

Sartre's basic epistemological assumptions is that Man's thoughts are all available to consciousness (and this is what makes Man responsible for choosing). This is to be contrasted with the psychoanalytic view (Freud) that most psychological events are not available to consciousness and therefore most Man's actions are not free. It is important to note that the concepts of freedom appearing in Kant, Hegel, Marx, Freud, Heidegger, and Sartre are all different. Sartre, in his later work, attempted a synthesis between Marxism and his own earlier existentialism.

Phenomenology and its corollary, existentialism, were the main sources of what today is called the "continental philosophy" (whose main representatives are French and German). A rather different kind of philosophy, referred to as "analytic philosophy," has its origins in logical positivism which we discuss next and whose main representatives are British and American.

Remarks on logical positivism. Another reaction to Hegel (more generally to German philosophy from Kant to Hegel) is that of logical positivism (logical empiricism) which is a return to issues of relevance to sciences and Mathematics viewed as first order theories. This includes, to various degrees, and not in complete agreement, independent or polemical work by Mach, Wittgenstein, Carnap, Ayer, Quine, etc., in the 20th century. According to most logical positivists propositions that are neither analytic nor empirically verifiable are nonsensical. Further, one identifies empirically verifiable propositions with a posteriori propositions so one is led to the claim that all synthetic a priori propositions are nonsensical: this is a complete rejection of Kant and also of classical metaphysics (who had also been rejected by Kant but on different grounds). In particular Wittgenstein's *Tractatus* qualified most of classical philosophy as nonsensical. (Wittgenstein, however, thought that the most important questions faced by Man are neither analytic nor empirically verifiable but "mystical." He concluded in the *Tractatus* that these questions cannot be addressed by philosophy.)

As an illustration here are some comments on Carnap's logical definition of cause, explanation, prediction. Consider the following sentences

1. $\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x))$
2. $P(a)$
3. $Q(a)$.

Clearly 1 and 2 imply 3. His example:

1. " $\forall x\forall y$ (if x takes y from a place then y disappears from that place)."
2. "Jones took the watch from the table."
3. "The watch disappeared from the table."

His next example:

1. " $\forall x\forall y$ (if x wants to borrow y then x takes y)."
2. "Jones wanted to borrow the watch."
3. "Jones took the watch (from the table)."

Carnap calls 2 and 3 facts and says 1 is an example of a universal law. (This is an empirical universal law; there are other universal laws called theoretical universal laws.) He says (by definition) that to find an explanation for fact 3 is to find a fact 2

and an universal law 1 that fit as above, i.e., $1 \wedge 2 \rightarrow 3$; one then calls 2 the cause of 3. He also says that 3 is a prediction from 2 based on 1. So the cause of “The watch disappeared from the table” is that “Jones took the watch from the table.” And the cause of “Jones took the watch from the table” is that “Jones wanted to borrow the watch.” The chain of causes may continue indefinitely provided universal laws are found. According to Carnap universal laws do not exist in nature, independently of our minds, e.g., expressing some natural necessity. Up to this point the position is the same as both Kant’s and Hume’s (who, on this point, agree). However, whereas Kant maintained that the universal laws are, as we would say today, “wired into our brains” and hence are immutable (so “universal”) preconditions of our experience, Carnap sees these laws as simply sentences involving a universal quantifier which fit into the above scheme and are provisionally adopted based on repeated empirical testing (observation of regularities in nature). For Carnap causality is not necessity in nature since necessity is neither empirically observable nor analytic so it is not allowed in discourse; this was also Hume’s argument and Carnap explicitly sides with Hume in this matter.

For an explanation to be a good explanation it needs to be the case that the fact 2 be empirically verifiable and that the universal law leads (starting from empirical verifiable facts 2) to as many empirically verifiable facts 3 as possible but not to their negation. So universal laws need to be few and simple: a proliferation of universal laws (or indefinitely complicated laws) is tantamount to no laws at all because every universal statement can be replaced by a “practically infinite” list of particular statements that could qualify as laws.

A variant of the verification principle referred to above was Popper’s requirement that every universal law (or system of such laws, e.g., scientific theories) must be “falsifiable” in the sense that it should be possible to imagine an empirical test that could in principle violate the law (or the system of laws in question). (There were significant differences between the position of Popper and the positions of the logical positivists, by the way; also Ayer (Ayer 1952) did not see Popper’s criterion as distinct from the verification criterion. But these historical details are here irrelevant.) According to Popper if an instance is empirically found when a universal sentence is false then the sentence needs to be rejected as a law. If the sentence is empirically verified every time this is being checked the sentence qualifies as a law and is provisionally accepted until new tests are made. But if there is no way to imagine an empirical test in which the sentence is false then the sentence does not qualify as a law. An example of bad explanation is:

1. “For all x if God wants x then x happens.”
2. “God wants the planets to revolve around the Sun.”
3. “The planets revolve around the Sun.”

1 plus 2 form a bad explanation of 3 for any of the following reasons:

- a) 2 is not empirically verifiable
- b) the sentence 1 does not qualify as a law because it is not falsifiable: one cannot imagine an empirical test that could find something that God wants but God cannot make happen.

The physical (quantitative) laws are the best universal laws from the point of view of the above criterion. As example of such a law is Newton’s universal law of gravitation that can be coupled with facts as follows:

1. “For every bodies x, y, z, \dots the trajectories of these bodies behave as if there was a force between each pair of them given by the formula F ”
2. “The Sun, Earth and Moon are bodies.”
3. “The trajectories of Sun, Earth and Moon are given by the functions S .”

The formula F is the usual formula in Newton’s theory:

$$\text{force} = \text{constant} \times \frac{\text{mass}_1 \times \text{mass}_2}{\text{distance}^2}$$

where “constant” is a universal constant (independent of the bodies involved). The law 1 above simply means that the trajectories satisfy a universal differential equation which is a consequence of the postulation of a hypothetical entity called force satisfying the formula F . “Force” is not an empirically verifiable/measurable entity; it is rather a concept used to deduce the universal differential equation. The trajectories are here assumed empirically measurable. The functions S are a specific solution of the 3 body problem. The remarkable fact about the law 1 is that it can be applied to any bodies whatsoever, e.g. to x the Earth and y an apple. The formula F above can be called a theoretical law as opposed to the law 1 which is an empirical law; what distinguishes them is that the law 1 only involves empirically observable/measurable entities whereas the “theoretical law” F involves the entity “force” which is not empirically observable/measurable. The distinction between empirical and theoretical laws is not clear cut, of course: for instance the empirical observation/measurement of trajectories may be rather indirect and depends itself on some background theory (about optical or radiation phenomena) with its own theoretical laws.

On a different note let us consider the following example analyzed by Carnap:

1. “For every iron rod x if x is heated then the Earth rotates.”

This is not a universal law NOT because the heating of a rod seems to have nothing to do with the rotation of the Earth but because it is not falsifiable: the Earth will rotate no matter what. On the other hand consider the sentence:

1. “For every iron rod x and any body y on which x lies if x is heated then y rotates.”

The latter qualifies as a law because it is in principle falsifiable by an experiment: for some heated x lying on some y , y might not rotate (as we, by the way, expect, although our expectation has nothing to do with falsifiability).

The view of logical positivism on natural law has some interesting consequences.

First note that logical positivism accepts free will. Indeed since the laws of nature do not imply necessity in nature (being simply parts of explanations of facts and/or principles allowing prediction) it follows that there is nothing objectively necessary about the behavior of Man. In particular Man has free will (where the free decisions are viewed as facts 3 explained/caused by psychological laws 1 and prior facts 2).

Secondly, it is interesting to mention here a physico-mathematical argument (found, for instance, in (Weyl 1963)) that seems to support the (somewhat puzzling) thesis that “physical laws must exist for tautological reasons.” Following

modern physics, Weyl argues, a physical law is a relation (not involving the space-time variables) between the values of some observable quantities f_1, f_2, \dots, f_n (that depend on space-time variables) and the values of their derivatives with respect to the space-time variables. Assume for simplicity that we only have one such quantity $f_1 = f = f(x, y, z, t)$ with x, y, z space variables and t the time variable; think of f as a scalar field. Then we have 5 functions

$$f, \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}, \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}$$

of 4 variables so there must be one functional relation

$$F\left(f, \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}, \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}\right) = 0$$

between these 5 functions (which does not involve space-time variables explicitly). (Indeed, if the Hessian of f is non-singular then, at least locally, one can take $F(y_0, y_1, y_2, y_3, y_4) = y_0 - G(y_1, y_2, y_3, y_4)$ where G is the composition of f with the inverse of the map $(t, x, y, z) \mapsto (\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}, \frac{\partial f}{\partial t})$.) One can interpret this functional relation as a “natural law” governing our scalar field f . The conclusion is that *any* scalar field obeys some “natural law” tautologically! This demystifies, in some sense the concept of “natural law”: there is no mystery in the fact that nature “obeys laws” for no matter how nature evolves in space-time there will be a “law” governing this evolution (which does not involve space-time variables so it is universal with respect to time and place). If there is a “miracle” it is not that there is a law F but that the law F is often found to be of a very simple nature. This simplicity, however, might be a consequence of the appropriate choice of the observable f . The latter argument was part of the early criticism against modern science: according to this criticism mathematical laws are found only because one isolates the phenomena to be studied from the whole of nature (in which case the function f will not reflect the complexity of nature). This kind of argument was invoked, for instance, by Goethe (in his theory of color) against Newton’s theory of color.

Bibliography

- [1] Aristotle. 2001. *The Basic Works of Aristotle*, Modern Library Classics.
- [2] Ayer, A. J. 1952. *Language, Truth, and Logic*. New York. Dover.
- [3] Badiou, A. 2009. *Logics of Worlds*. Bloomsbury, London, New York.
- [4] Cantor, G. 1955. *Contributions to the Founding of the Theory of Transfinite Numbers*. New York: Dover.
- [5] Carnap, R. 1966. *An Introduction to the Philosophy of Science*, Dover.
- [6] Cassirer, E. 1953. *Language and Myth*. New York: Dover.
- [7] Chomsky, N. 2006. *Language and Mind*. Cambridge University Press.
- [8] Cohen, P. 2008. *Set Theory and the Continuum Hypothesis*, Dover.
- [9] Gödel, K. 1992. *On formally undecidable propositions of Principia Mathematica and related systems*. New York: Dover.
- [10] Hegel, G.W.F. 1975. *Hegel's Logic: Being Part One of the Encyclopaedia of the Philosophical Sciences*. Oxford University Press.
- [11] Hilbert, D. 1994. *Foundations of Geometry*. La Salle: Open Court.
- [12] Hilbert, D., Bernays, P. 1934. *Grundlagen der Mathematik*. Berlin.
- [13] Kant, I. 1991. *Critique of Pure Reason*. London: J. M. Dent & Sons.
- [14] Manin, Yu. I. 2009. *A Course in Mathematical Logic for Mathematicians*. New York: Springer.
- [15] Putnam, H. 1971. *Philosophy of Logic*. New York, San Francisco, London: Harper and Row.
- [16] Putnam, H. 1981. *Reason, Truth, and History*, Cambridge Univ. Press.
- [17] Quine, W. V. 1964. *Word and Object*, MIT Press.
- [18] Quine, W. V. 1980. *From a Logical Point of View*, Harvard University Press.
- [19] Quine, W. V. 1986. *Philosophy of Logic*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press.
- [20] Russell, B. 1993. *Introduction to Mathematical Philosophy*. New York: Dover.
- [21] Tarski, A. 1995. *Introduction to Logic and to the Methodology of Deductive Sciences*, New York: Dover.
- [22] Wang, Hao. 1996. *A Logical Journey: from Gödel to Philosophy*, Cambridge, MIT Press.
- [23] Weyl, H. 1963. *Philosophy of Mathematics and Natural Sciences*. New York: Atheneum.
- [24] Wittgenstein, L. 2001. *Tractatus Logico-Philosophicus*. Routledge: Taylor and Francis.

Index

- Abel*, 21.1
- absolute value*, 19.7
- affine plane*, 27.1
- algebraic number*, 25.16
- alternating*, 24.3
- area*, 27.11
- basis*, 22.5
- bijective*, 9.18
- binomial coefficient*, 15.2
- Boolean algebra*, 11.8
- Boolean ring*, 11.16
- Boolean string*, 4.3
- bounded*, 10.15
- cardinality*, 13.9
- case by case*, 4.20
- category*, 32.4
- Cauchy*, 28.13
- choice*, 7.22
- circle*, 7.22
- closed*, 18.1
- combinations*, 15.8
- commutative diagram*, 9.15
- compact*, 18.23
- complex number*, 19.1
- composition*, 9.12
- congruent*, 20.13
- conic*, 27.22
- conjugate*, 19.9
- connected*, 18.19
- continuous*, 18.11
- contradiction*, 4.22
- contrapositive*, 4.19
- convergent*, 28.3
- converse*, 4.19
- correspondence*, 32.1
- cubic*, 27.24
- cyclic*, 21.18
- Dedekind*, 17.1
- definition*, 1.5
- derivative*, 31.4
- Desargues*, 27.8
- determinant*, 24.10
- differentiable*, 31.1
- dimension*, 22.12
- Dirichlet*, 26.6
- disjoint*, 7.21
- disquotation*, 2.8
- disk*, 19.11
- distance*, 27.13
- divergent*, 28.3
- divides*, 20.1
- empty set*, 7.18
- equivalence*, 10.26
- Euclid division*, 20.4
- Euclid Lemma*, 20.10
- Euclidean topology*, 18.4
- Euler*, 29.8
- even*, 12.16
- exponential*, 29.16
- extensionality axiom*, 7.16
- factorial*, 15.1
- fallacy*, 5.30
- Fermat*, 21.29
- field*, 11.14
- formation*, 3.2
- free occurrence*, 3.9
- function*, 9.1
- functor*, 32.25
- Fundamental Theorem of Algebra*, 25.13
- Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic*, 20.11
- Galois*, 25.7
- group*, 21.1
- Hilbert*, 27.4
- homomorphism*, 11.24
- identity*, 9.6
- image*, 9.31
- increasing*, 10.13
- induction*, 13.1
- inference*, 1.7
- infimum*, 10.15
- infinity*, 7.24
- injective*, 9.7
- integers*, 12.2
- intersection*, 8.17
- interval*, 17.15
- inverse image*, 9.31
- invertible*, 11.14
- irrational*, 17.3

- isomorphism*, 11.26
- kernel*, 21.14
- Kronecker symbol*, 23.2
- Lagrange*, 21.27
- limit*, 28.3
- line*, 27.1
- linear map*, 23.8
- linearly independent*, 22.3
- long division*, 25.15
- manifolds*, 18.33
- map*, 9.1
- matrix*, 21.8
- measure*, 11.36
- metadefinition*, 2.5
- metasentence*, 2.1
- model*, 33.5
- modus ponens*, 4.15
- monic*, 25.14
- multilinear*, 24.1
- Newton*, 6.8
- odd*, 12.16
- open*, 18.1
- operation*, 11.1
- order of a group*, 21.22
- order of group elements*, 21.21
- order relation*, 10.4
- pair*, 7.11
- Pappus*, 27.9
- partition*, 10.33
- permutations*, 15.9
- polynomial*, 25.1
- power set*, 7.20, 8.26
- prime*, 20.8
- primitive root*, 26.11
- product*, 8.32
- projective plane*, 10.47
- rational*, 14.1
- real*, 17.1
- recursion*, 16.2
- relation*, 10.1
- residue class*, 20.17
- restriction*, 9.14
- ring*, 11.9
- sentence*, 3.13
- separation axiom*, 7.12
- sequence*, 16.1
- series*, 29.1
- singleton axiom*, 7.10
- smooth*, 31.4
- subgroup*, 21.11
- surjective*, 9.8
- tautology*, 4.12
- text*, 1.12
- Three Cubics Theorem*, 27.28
- topology*, 18.1
- total order*, 10.7
- transcendental*, 25.16
- transpose*, 23.16
- union*, 7.17, 8.14
- vector*, 22.1
- well ordered*, 10.18